Draft

Florida Department of Transportation

Manual of Uniform Minimum Standards for Design, Construction and Maintenance for Streets and Highways

(Commonly known as the Florida Greenbook)

https://www.fdot.gov/roadway

FDOT Office
Office of Design
Topic # 625-000-015

Date of Publication
2018 Edition

USER REGISTRATION

Manual of Uniform Minimum Standards for Design, Construction and Maintenance for Streets and Highways

(Commonly known as the ***Florida Greenbook***)

2018 Edition

To: Florida Greenbook Users

The Department of Transportation utilizes a contact database that enables the Department to e-mail important information to registered users on topics selected by each user. The database allows a user to update their physical address, e-mail address, topics of interest, and any other information in their profile at any time.

All Florida Greenbook users must register their e-mail addresses in this contact database in order to receive updates, notices, design memos, or other important information concerning the Department's design manuals. Users must register at the following link:

http://www.fdot.gov/designsupport/ContactDatabase.shtm

New subscribers will need to create a new account. Once the information is registered, new subscribers will need to “Edit Interests.” The Florida Greenbook may be found under: Publications → Design → Roadway Design → Florida Greenbook”

TABLE OF CONTENTS

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

FLORIDA GREENBOOK COMMITTEE MEMBERS

2018

The Florida Greenbook Advisory Committee is composed of four professional engineers within each of the Department of Transportation's seven district boundaries as described in Section 336.045(2), Florida Statutes (F.S.).

> **Section 336.045, Florida Statutes. Uniform minimum standards for design, construction, and maintenance; advisory committees.**
>
> **(2)** An advisory committee of professional engineers employed by any city or any county in each transportation district to aid in the development of such standards shall be appointed by the head of the department. Such committee shall be composed of: one member representing an urban center within each district; one member representing a rural area within each district; one member within each district who is a professional engineer and who is not employed by any governmental agency; and one member employed by the department for each district.

Contact information for the Florida Greenbook Advisory Committee members can be found on the Florida Greenbook web page:

http://www.fdot.gov/roadway/FloridaGreenbook/FGB.shtm

The Florida Greenbook Advisory Committee Members at the time of publication are as follows:

DISTRICT 1

Bernie Masing, P.E.
District Design Engineer
FDOT - District 1

Andy Tilton, P.E.
Water Resource Director
Johnson Engineering, Inc.

Shane Parker, P.E.
Public Works Director
Hendry County

Alexandrea Davis-Shaw, P.E.
City Engineer
City of Sarasota

DISTRICT 2

Kathryn D. Thomas, P.E.
District Design Engineer
FDOT - District 2

Gene Howerton, P.E.
Vice President
Arcadis U.S., Inc.

Kenneth Dudley, P.E.
County Engineer
Taylor County

John Veilleux, P.E.
Supervising Engineer
City of Gainesville

DISTRICT 3

Rodney Chamberlain, P.E.
District Design Engineer
FDOT - District 3

Thomas C. Phillips (Chris), P.E,
County Engineer
Santa Rosa County

Rick Hall, P.E.
Hall Planning and Engineering, Inc.

Keith Bryant, P.E., P.T.O.E.
Public Works Director
Bay County

DISTRICT 4

Steve Braun, P.E.
District Design Engineer
FDOT - District 4

Richard B. Szpyrka, P.E.
Director of Public Works
Indian River County

Robert Behar, P.E.
President
R. J. Behar and Company, Inc.

Richard Tornese, P.E.
County Engineer
Broward County

DISTRICT 5

Marrio Bizzio, P.E.
District Design Engineer
FDOT - District 5

Billy Hattaway, P.E.,
Transportation Department Director
City of Orlando

Gail Woods, P.E.
Assistant Vice-President
TransSystems

Deborah I. Snyder, P.E., P.T.O.E.
Public Works Director
Sumter County

DISTRICT 6

Daniel Iglesias, P.E.
District Design Engineer
FDOT - District 6

Gaspar Miranda, P.E.
Assistant Director, Highway Engineering
Public Works Department
Miami-Dade County

Andres Garganta, P.E.
Vice President
WGI

Juvenal Santana, P.E.
Deputy Director
Department of Resilience and Public Works
City of Miami

DISTRICT 7

Allan Urbonas, P.E.
District Design Engineer
FDOT - District 7

Milton J. Martinez, P.E.
Chief Transportation Engineer
Transportation and Stormwater Services Department
City of Tampa

Margaret W. Smith, P.E.
Engineering Services Director/
County Engineer
Pasco County

Richard Diaz, Jr., P.E.
President
Diaz Pearson & Associates, Inc.

ASSOCIATE MEMBERS

Mark Massaro, P.E.
Director, Public Works Dept.
Orange County

Ramon D. Gavarrete, P.E.
County Engineer
Alachua County

Allen W. Schrumpf, P.E.
Senior Associate
DRMP, Inc.

Charles Ramdatt, P.E., P.T.O.E., AICP
City of Orlando

FACERS REPRESENTATIVE

Faith Alkhatib, P.E.
Public Works Director
Flagler County

COMMITTEE STAFF

Tim Lattner, P.E.
Director, Office of Design
FDOT - Central Office

Mary Anne Koos, CPM
Special Projects Coordinator
FDOT – Central Office

Michael Shepard, P.E., Chairperson
State Roadway Design Engineer
FDOT - Central Office

Jeremy Fletcher, P.E., P.S.M.
Quality Assurance Administrator
FDOT - Central Office

CHAPTER TECHNICAL ADVISORS

Gabrielle (Gabe) Matthews
Transit Planning Administrator
FDOT – Central Office

Chris Wigglesworth
Transit Planner
FDOT – Central Office

Christine Lofye, P.E.
Manager, Traffic Engineering Division
Orange County Public Works

Gevin McDaniel, P.E.
Roadway Design Standards Administrator
FDOT - Central Office

Derwood Sheppard, P.E.
Roadway Standard Plans Administrator
FDOT - Central Office

Frank Kreis, P.E.
District Bituminous Engineer
FDOT – District 3

Amy Harris, P.E.
Special Projects Manager
Traffic Engineering
Palm Beach County

Frank C. Yokiel, AICP
Orange County Public Works
Engineering Division

Luis A. Alván, Esq., P.E.
Senior Engineer
Orange County Public Works
Engineering Division

George Borchik, P.E.
District Roadway Design Engineer
FDOT – District 5

DeWayne Carver, AICP
State Bicycle/Pedestrian Coordinator
FDOT - Central Office

Benjamin J. Gerrell, P.E.
Quality Assurance Engineer
FDOT - Central Office

Andre Pavlov, P.E.
Assistant State Structures Design
Engineer
FDOT – Central Office

Alan S. El-Urfali, P.E.
State Traffic Services Program Manager
FDOT – Central Office

Catherine (Katey) Earp, P.E.
Drainage Design Engineer
FDOT - Central Office

Patrick Overton, P.E.
Pavement Design Engineer
FDOT - Central Office

Randy Spradling, P.E.
District Traffic Design Engineer
FDOT – District 1

Ed Cashman, P.E.
Standard Plans Engineer
FDOT - Central Office

William Corbett, P.E., P.T.O.E.
City Traffic Engineer
City of Cape Coral

2016 and 2017

In addition to the members noted previously, the following served on the Florida Greenbook Committee in 2014 and 2015.

DISTRICT 1

Ramon D. Gavarrete, P.E.
County Engineer/Utilities Director
Highlands County

Steven Neff, P.E.,
Public Works Director
City of Cape Coral

DISTRICT 2

Jimmy Pittman, P.E.
District Design Engineer
FDOT - District 2

David Cerlanek, P.E., P.T.O.E., C.P.M.
Asst. Public Works Director/Co. Engineer
Alachua County

DISTRICT 3

Jared Perdue, P.E.
District Design Engineer
FDOT - District 3

DISTRICT 4

Howard Webb, P.E.
Distrct Design Engineer
FDOT – District 4

George T. Webb, P.E.
County Engineer
Palm Beach County

DISTRICT 5

Annette Brennan, P.E.
District Design Engineer
FDOT - District 5

Richard Baier, P.E.
Public Works Director
Sumter County

Charles Ramdatt, P.E., P.T.O.E., AICP
Deputy Director of Public Works -
Transportation Engineer
City of Orlando

DISTRICT 6

Chris Tavella, P.E.
District Design Engineer
FDOT - District 6

DISTRICT 7

Richard Moss, P.E.
District Design Engineer
FDOT - District 7

CENTRAL OFFICE

Chester Henson, P.E.
State Traffic Standards Engineer
FDOT – Central Office

Rochelle Garrett, P.E.
District 7 Traffic Design Engineer
FDOT – District 7

Andre Goins, P.E.
State Rail Operations and Programs
Administrator

Rick Jenkins, P.E.
Drainage Design Engineer
FDOT – Central Office

CHAPTER SUBCOMMITTEES

The Chapter Chairs at the time of publication are as follows:

Chapter		**Chair**
1.	Planning	Rick Hall
2.	Land Development	Ricard Tornese
3.	Geometric Design	Andy Garganta
4.	Roadside Design	Robert Behar
5.	Pavement Design and Construction	Margaret Smith
6.	Lighting	Bernie Masing
7.	Rail-Highway Crossings	Daniel Iglesias
8.	Pedestrian Facilities	Mario Bizzio
9.	Bicycle Facilities	Mario Bizzio
10.	Maintenance and Resurfacing	Allan Urbonas
11.	Work Zone Safety	Daniel Iglesias
12.	Construction	John Veilleux
13.	Public Transit	Milton Martinez
14.	Design Exceptions and Variations	Howard Webb
15.	Traffic Calming	Billy Hattaway
16.	Residential Street Design	Margaret Smith
17.	Bridges and Other Structures	Keith Bryant
18.	Signing and Marking	Gail Woods
19.	Traditional Neighborhood Development	Rick Hall
20.	Drainage	Andy Tilton

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

PURPOSE

The purpose of this Manual is to provide uniform minimum standards and criteria for the design, construction, and maintenance of all transportation facilities off the State Highway System (SHS), roads, highways, bridges, sidewalks, curbs and curb ramps, crosswalks , bicycle facilities, underpasses, and overpasses used by the public for vehicular and pedestrian traffic as directed by ***Sections 20.23(3)(a), 316.0745, 334.044(10)(a),*** and ***336.045, F.S.***

The Florida Greenbook encourages context-based transportation planning and design. Context-based planning and design offers a diverse approach using existing tools in creative ways to improve the transportation system and meet the needs of users of all ages and abilities. This includes pedestrians, bicyclists, transit riders, motorists, and freight handlers. Planning and design of streets and highways must be based on the surrounding development patterns for existing and planned land development patterns. The approach also considers community needs, trade-offs between those needs, and alternatives to achieve multiple objectives. Context-based design principles help to promote safety, quality of life, and economic development.

In the following statutory excerpts, the term "Department" refers to the Florida Department of Transportation.

> **Section 20.23, F.S. Department of Transportation.** There is created a Department of Transportation which shall be a decentralized agency.
>
> **(3)(a)** The central office shall establish departmental policies, rules, procedures, and standards and shall monitor the implementation of such policies, rules, procedures, and standards in order to ensure uniform compliance and quality performance by the districts and central office units that implement transportation programs. Major transportation policy initiatives or revisions shall be submitted to the commission for review.
>
> **Section 316.0745, F.S. Uniform signals and devices. –**
>
> **(1)** The Department of Transportation shall adopt a uniform system of traffic control devices for use on the streets and highways of the state. The uniform system shall, insofar as is practicable, conform to the system adopted by the American Association of State Highway Transportation Officials and shall be revised from time to time to include changes necessary to conform to a uniform national system or to meet local and state needs. The Department of Transportation may call upon

representatives of local authorities to assist in the preparation or revision of the uniform system of traffic control devices.

Section 334.044, F.S. Department; powers and duties. The department shall have the following general powers and duties:

(10)(a) To develop and adopt uniform minimum standards and criteria for the design, construction, maintenance, and operation of public roads pursuant to the provisions of ***Section, 336.045, F.S***.

Section 336.045, F.S. Uniform minimum standards for design, construction, and maintenance; advisory committees.

(1) The department shall develop and adopt uniform minimum standards and criteria for the design, construction, and maintenance of all public streets, roads, highways, bridges, sidewalks, curbs and curb ramps, crosswalks, where feasible, bicycle ways, underpasses, and overpasses used by the public for vehicular and pedestrian traffic. In developing such standards and criteria, the department shall consider design approaches which provide for the compatibility of such facilities with the surrounding natural or manmade environment; the safety and security of public spaces; and the appropriate aesthetics based upon scale, color, architectural style, materials used to construct the facilities, and the landscape design and landscape materials around the facilities.

(2) An advisory committee of professional engineers employed by any city or any county in each transportation district to aid in the development of such standards shall be appointed by the head of the department. Such committee shall be composed of: one member representing an urban center within each district; one member representing a rural area within each district; one member within each district who is a professional engineer and who is not employed by any governmental agency; and one member employed by the department for each district.

(4) All design and construction plans for projects that are to become part of the county road system and are required to conform with the design and construction standards established pursuant to subsection (1) must be certified to be in substantial conformance with the standards established pursuant to subsection (1) that are then in effect by a professional engineer who is registered in this state.

These standards are intended to provide basic guidance for developing and maintaining a highway system with reasonable operating characteristics and a minimum number of hazards.

Standards established by this Manual are intended for use on all transportation facilities off the State Highway System (SHS). Certain projects off the SHS but on the National Highway System (NHS) utilizing federal funds may be required to follow additional design criteria. Please see ***Chapter 19*** of the Department's ***Local Agency Program Manual*** for further information. Information on roadways included in the NHS is found at the Department's website: ***National Highway System Maps***.

Standards are provided for the design of new construction and reconstruction projects as well as maintenance and resurfacing projects. It is understood that existing streets and highways may not conform to all minimum standards applicable to the design of new and reconstruction projects. For existing roads not being replaced or reconstructed, it is intended the requirements provided in ***Chapter 10 – Maintenance and Resurfacing*** are applied. For all projects, there may be practical reasons a certain standard is not met. A process is provided in ***Chapter 14 – Design Exceptions and Variations*** to address those situations.

The Federal Highway Administration's ***Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices, 2009 Edition (MUTCD),*** has been adopted by ***Rule 14 – 15.010, F.A.C*.**, and establishes a uniform system of traffic control devices. The ***Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (2009 Edition with Revision Numbers 1 and 2, May 2012, MUTCD)*** includes additional requirements.

When this Manual refers to guidelines and design standards given by current American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO) publications, these guidelines and standards shall generally be considered as minimum criteria. The Department may have standards and criteria that differ from the minimum presented in this Manual or by AASHTO for streets and highways under its jurisdiction. A county or municipality may substitute standards and criteria adopted by the Department for some or all portions of design, construction, and maintenance of their facilities. Department standards, criteria, and manuals must be used when preparing projects on the state highway system or the national highway system.

Criteria and standards set forth in other manuals, which have been incorporated by reference, shall be considered as requirements within the authority of this Manual.

This Manual is intended for use by qualified engineering practitioners for the communication of standards and criteria (including various numerical design values and use conditions). The design, construction, and maintenance references for the infrastructure features contained in this Manual recognize many variable and often complex process considerations. The engineering design process, and associated use of this Manual, incorporates aspects of engineering judgment, design principles, science, and recognized standards towards matters involving roadway infrastructure.

Users of this Manual are cautioned that the strict application of exact numerical values, conditions or use information taken from portions of the text may not be appropriate for all circumstances. Individual references to design values or concepts should not be used out of context or without supporting engineering judgment.

The contents of this Manual are reviewed annually by the Florida "Greenbook" Advisory Committee. Membership of this committee is established by the above referenced ***Section 336.045(2), F.S.*** Comments, suggestions, or questions may be directed to any committee member.

POLICIES AND OBJECTIVES

Specific policies governing the activities of planning, design, construction, reconstruction, maintenance, or operation of streets and highways are listed throughout this Manual. This manual uses a context-based design approach that considers the mobility, convenience, accessibility and safety of all road users; and places an emphasis on the most vulnerable users of a given transportation facility. Decisions should be predicated upon meeting the following objectives:

A. Specifies all users - Provide streets and highways with operating characteristics that support users of all ages and abilities.

- ✓ Incorporate appropriate context based design elements when planning and designing the transportation network.
- ✓ Draw on all sources of transportation funding to implement context based design.
- ✓ Seek input from a variety of local stakeholders when designing or revising transportation projects to promote equity and meet the diverse needs of system users.

B. Applies to all projects - Each transportation agency should establish and maintain a program to promote context based design in all activities on streets and highways under its jurisdiction.

- ✓ Planning, design, construction, and maintenance activities are all essential activities for implementing context-based design.

C. Procedure for exceptions and variations – When proposed design elements do not meet the criteria contained in this Manual, sufficient detail and justification of such deviations must be documented.

- ✓ Sufficient detail and explanation must be given to justify approval to those reviewing the request.
- ✓ Consider potential mitigation strategies that may reduce the adverse impacts to highway safety and traffic operations.

D. Creates a network - Design, operate, and maintain a transportation system that provides a highly connected and diverse network of streets that accommodate all intended modes of travel.

- ✓ Place a priority on connecting communities with economic and employment centers and visitor destinations.

- ✓ Prioritize non-motorized connectivity improvements to services, schools, parks, civic uses, regional connections, and commercial uses.

- ✓ Identify routes for freight traffic that provide access to industrial centers, warehouses, distribution centers (rail, freight, intermodal), and ports (airports, seaports, and space ports).

- ✓ Consider the “last mile” needs of freight handlers and transit riders.

- ✓ Seek opportunities to repurpose or add new rights of way to enhance connectivity for pedestrians, bicyclists, and transit or shift freight traffic to more appropriate corridors.

E. Adoptable by all agencies - A well-connected, diverse transportation system supports Florida’s existing and future economic development.

- ✓ Increase productivity by improving the accessibility of people and businesses to reach jobs, services, goods, and activities.

- ✓ Increase level of accountability for metropolitan, regional, and local agencies to demonstrate the need, economic impact, and return of transportation investments.

- ✓ Strengthen local policies, ordinances requiring new development or redevelopment to provide interconnected street networks with small blocks that connect with existing or planned streets on the perimeter.

- ✓ Support regional land use, economic development goals, and regional vision.

F. Latest and best design criteria - Provide uniformity and consistency in the design and operation of streets and highways.

- ✓ Strive to design and maintain facilities that are consistent with the local context, through single projects or incremental improvements over time.

- ✓ Document conditions that may preclude achieving full multi-modal design, such as environmental, historical or cultural constraints, limited right of way, or disproportionate cost.

- ✓ Anticipate needs of connected and autonomous vehicles and other emerging technologies.

G. Context-sensitive - Transportation investments should align with land use, and support a community's quality of life. A context-based approach helps communities and regions make sound decisions which support their long-term vision.

- ✓ Harmonize the transportation system with adjacent existing or proposed context such as neighborhoods, business districts, commercial areas, and public services (schools, parks, health, and entertainment centers).

- ✓ Design streets with a strong sense of place; use architecture, landscaping, streetscaping, public art, and signage to reflect the community, neighborhood, history, and natural setting.

- ✓ Highlight natural features such as waterways, trees, scenic views, slopes, and preserved lands and minimize impacts.

H. Establishes performance measures - Develop and maintain a transportation system that provides a safe environment.

- ✓ Understand that children, elderly adults, and persons with disabilities may require appropriate accommodations.

- ✓ Establish and maintain procedures for construction, maintenance, utility, and emergency operations that provide for safe operating conditions during these activities.

- ✓ Use existing street pavement widths as efficiently as possible to accommodate all modes of transportation, recognizing that allocating designated space by mode is preferred, but shared facilities may be the most practical solution in some cases.

I. Includes specific next steps for implementation.

- ✓ Understand the priorities and concerns by reaching out to stakeholders, collect data, synthesize issues and opportunities, and define context classifications.

- ✓ Define the project's purpose, needs and evaluation measures (i.e., person throughput, network completeness, street connectivity, access to jobs, housing, retail, public facilities).

- ✓ Define and evaluate alternatives.

Additional general and specific objectives related to various topics and activities are listed throughout this Manual. Where specific standards or recommendations are not available or applicable, the related objectives shall be utilized as general guidelines.

DEFINITIONS OF TERMS

The following terms shall, for the purpose of this Manual, have the meanings respectively ascribed to them, except instances where the context clearly indicates a different meaning. The ***Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (2009 Edition with Revision Numbers 1 and 2, May 2012, MUTCD)*** includes additional information on terms used in conjunction with the application of the ***MUTCD***.

Alley — A narrow right of way to provide access to the side or rear of individual land parcels.

Annual Average Daily Traffic (AADT) — The total volume of traffic on a highway segment for one year, divided by the number of days in the year. This volume is usually estimated by adjusting a short-term traffic count with weekly and monthly factors.

Average Daily Traffic (ADT) — The total traffic volume during a given time period (more than a day, less than a year) divided by the number of days in that time period.

Auxiliary Lane — A designated width of roadway pavement marked to separate speed change, turning, passing, and climbing maneuvers from through traffic.

Average Running Speed — For all traffic, or component thereof, the summation of distances divided by the summation of running times.

Bicycle Lane (Bike Lane) — A portion of a roadway that has been designated for preferential use by bicyclists by pavement markings, and if used, signs. They are one-way facilities that typically carry traffic in the same direction as adjacent motor vehicle traffic.

Boarding And Alighting (B&A) Area	A firm, stable, slip resistant surface that accommodates passenger movement on or off a transit vehicle.
Border Area	The border area provides space for roadside design components (e.g., signing, drainage features, sidewalks, and traffic control devices), a buffer between vehicles and pedestrians, and permitted public utilities. It also provides space for construction and maintenance of the facility.
Bridge	A structure, including supports, erected over a depression or an obstruction, such as water, a highway, or a railway, having a track or passageway for carrying traffic or other moving loads, and having a total span of more than 20 feet between undercopings of abutments.
Clear Zone	The unobstructed, traversable area beyond the edge of the traveled way for the recovery of errant vehicles. The clear zone includes shoulders and bicycle lanes.
Context Classification System	Broadly identifies the built environments in Florida, based upon existing and future land use characteristics, development patterns, network scale, and roadway connectivity of an area.
Corridor	A strip of land between two termini within which traffic, topography, environment, population, access management, and other characteristics are evaluated for transportation purposes.
Cross Slope	The transverse slope and/or superelevation described by the roadway section geometry.

Crosswalk

Portion of the roadway at an intersection included within the connections of lateral lines of the sidewalks on opposite sides of the highway, measured from the curbs or in the absence of curbs from the traversable roadway. Crosswalks may also occur at an intersection or elsewhere distinctly indicated for pedestrian crossing.

Design Hour Volume (DHV)

Traffic volume expected to use a highway segment during the design hour of the design year. The DHV is related to the AADT by the “K” factor. It includes total traffic in both directions of travel.

Directional Design Hour Volume (DDHV)

Traffic volume expected to use a highway segment during the design hour of the design year in the peak direction.

Design Speed

A selected speed used to determine the various geometric design features of the roadway. The selected design speed should be a logical one with respect to the topography, anticipated operating speed, adjacent land use, and functional classification of the highway.

Design User

Anticipated users of a roadway (including pedestrians, bicyclists, transit riders, motorists, and freight handlers) that form the basis for each roadway’s design.

Design Vehicle

A vehicle, with representative weight, dimensions, and operating characteristics, used to establish highway design controls for accommodating vehicles of designated classes.

Driveway

An access from a public way to adjacent property.

Expressway	A divided arterial highway for through traffic with full or partial control of access and generally with grade separations at major intersections.
Federal Aid Highway	A highway eligible for assistance under the United States Code Title 23 other than a highway classified as a local road or rural minor collector.
Freeway or Limited Access Highway	An expressway with full control of access.
Frontage Road or Street	A street or highway constructed adjacent to a higher classification street or other roadway network serving adjacent property or control access.
Grade Separation	A crossing of two roadways or a roadway and a railroad or pedestrian pathway at different levels.
High Speed	Speeds of 50 mph or greater.
High-Speed Rail	Intercity passenger rail service that is reasonably expected to reach speeds of at least 110 miles per hour.
Highway, Street, or Road	General terms, denoting a public way for purposes of traffic, both vehicular and pedestrian, including the entire area within the right of way. The term street is generally used for urban or suburban areas.
Intersection	The general area where two or more streets or highways join or cross.
Lateral Offset	The lateral distance from the edge of the traveled way or when applicable, face of curb, to a roadside object or feature.

Low Speed	Speeds less than or equal to 45 mph.
May	A permissive condition. Where "may" is used, it is considered to denote permissive usage.
Maintenance	A strategy of treatments to an existing roadway system that preserves it, retards future deterioration, and maintains or improves the functional condition.
New Construction	The construction of any public way (paved or unpaved) where none previously existed, or the act of paving any previously unpaved road, except as provided in Chapter 3, Section A of these standards.
Operating Speed	The rate of travel at which vehicles are observed traveling during free-flow conditions.
Paratransit	Comparable transportation service required by the ADA for individuals with disabilities who are unable to use fixed route transportation systems.
Pedestrian Access Route	A continuous and unobstructed path of travel provided for pedestrians with disabilities within or coinciding with a pedestrian circulation path.
Pedestrian Circulation Path	A prepared exterior or interior surface provided for pedestrian travel in the public right of way.
Preferential Lane	A street or highway lane reserved for the exclusive use of one or more specific types of vehicles or vehicles with at least a specific number of occupants.
Public Way	All public streets, roads, highways, bridges, sidewalks, curbs and curb ramps, crosswalks (where feasible), bicycle facilities, underpasses,

and overpasses used by the public for vehicular and pedestrian traffic.

Ramp

1) Includes all types, arrangements, and sizes of turning roadways that connect two or more legs at an interchange. 2) A combined ramp and landing to accomplish a change in level at a curb (curb ramp).

Reconstruction

Streets and highways that are rebuilt primarily along existing alignment. Reconstruction normally involves full-depth pavement replacement. Other work that would fall into the category of reconstruction would be adding lanes adjacent to an existing alignment, changing the fundamental character of the roadway (e.g., converting a two-lane highway to a multi-lane divided arterial) or reconfiguring intersections and interchanges.

Recovery Area

A clear zone that includes the total roadside border area, starting at the edge of the traveled way, available for safe use by errant vehicles.

Residential Streets

Streets primarily serving residential access to the commercial, social, and recreational needs of the community. These are generally lower volume and lower speed facilities than the primary arterial and collector routes of the local system "or as adopted by local government ordinance".

Resurfacing

Work to place additional layers of surfacing on highway pavement, shoulders, bridge decks and necessary incidental work to extend the structural integrity of these features for a substantial time period.

Right of Way A general term denoting land, property or interest therein, usually in a strip, acquired or donated for transportation purposes. More specifically, land in which the State, the Department, a county, a transit authority, municipality, or special district owns the fee or has an easement devoted to or required for use as a public road.

Roadway The portion of a street or highway, including shoulders, for vehicular use. A divided highway has two or more roadways.

Rural Areas Those areas outside of urban boundaries. Urban area boundary maps based upon the 2010 Census are located on the ***Department's Urban Area 1-Mile Buffer Maps.***

Shall or Must A mandatory condition. (When certain requirements are described with the "shall" or "must" stipulation, it is mandatory these requirements be met.)

Shared Roadway A roadway that is open to both bicycle, motor vehicle, street cars, and rail travel. This may be an existing roadway, street with wide curb lanes, or road with paved shoulders.

Shared Street Street that includes a shared zone where pedestrians, bicyclists, and motor vehicles mix in the same space. The design supports slower vehicle speeds and lower motor vehicle volumes. It lacks design elements that suggest motor vehicle priority or segregate modes; and includes elements that suggest a pedestrian priority (e.g. gathering areas, seating, lighting, art, special plantings).

Shared Use Path or Multi - Use Trail A facility with a firm, stable, slip-resistant surface physically separated from motorized vehicular traffic by an open space or barrier with minimal cross flow by motor vehicles. Users may include pedestrians, bicyclists, skaters, and others. Special design and approval is needed when travelers use vehicles such as golf carts or other motorized devices.

Should An advisory condition. Where the word "should" is used, it is considered to denote advisable usage, recommended but not mandatory.

Slope The relative steepness of the terrain, expressed as a ratio or percentage. Slopes may be categorized as positive (backslopes) or negative (foreslopes) and as parallel or cross slopes in relation to the direction of traffic. In this manual slope is expressed as a ratio of vertical to horizontal (V:H).

Surface Transportation System Network of highways, streets, and/or roads. Term can be applied to local system or expanded to desired limits of influence.

Traditional Neighborhood Development (TND) TND refers to the development or redevelopment of a neighborhood or town using traditional town planning principles. Projects should include a range of housing types and commercial establishments, a network of well-connected streets and blocks, civic buildings and public spaces, and include other uses such as stores, schools, and places of worship within walking distances of residences.

Traffic Pedestrians, bicyclists, motor vehicles, streetcars and other conveyances either singularly or together while using for purposes of travel any highway or private road open to public travel.

Traffic Lane Includes travel lanes, auxiliary lanes, turn lanes, weaving, passing, and climbing lanes.

Travel Lane A designated width of roadway pavement marked to carry through traffic and to separate it from opposing traffic or traffic occupying other traffic lanes. Generally, travel lanes equate to the basic number of lanes for a facility.

Traveled Way The portion of the roadway for the movement of vehicles, exclusive of shoulders and bicycle lanes.

Turning Roadway A connecting roadway for traffic turning between two intersection legs.

Urban Area A geographic region comprising, as a minimum, the area inside the United States Bureau of the Census boundary of an urban place with a population of 5,000 or more persons, expanded to include adjacent developed areas as provided for by Federal Highway Administration (FHWA) regulations. Urban area boundary maps based upon the 2010 Census are located on the Department's Urban Area 1-Mile Buffer Maps.

Urbanized Area A geographic region comprising, as a minimum, the area inside an urban place of 50,000 or more persons, as designated by the United States Bureau of the Census, expanded to include adjacent developed areas as provided for by Federal Highway Administration (FHWA) regulations. Urban areas with a population of fewer than 50,000 persons which are located within the expanded boundary of an urbanized area are not separately recognized.

Vehicle Every device upon, or by which any person or property is or may be transported or drawn upon a traveled way, excepting devices used exclusively upon stationary rails or tracks. Bicycles are defined as vehicles per Section 316.003, Florida Statutes.

Vertical Clearance Minimum unobstructed vertical passage space.

Very Low-Volume Road A road that is functionally classified as a local road and has a design average daily traffic volume of 400 vehicles per day or less.

Wide Outside Lane Through lanes that provide a minimum of 14 feet in width. This lane should always be the through lane closest to the curb or shoulder of the road when a curb is not provided.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

CHAPTER 1

PLANNING

TABLES

FIGURES

CHAPTER 1

PLANNING

A CONTEXT-BASED PLANNING AND DESIGN

In 1996, the Federal Highway Administration (FHWA) released guidance encouraging context-based transportation planning and design. Since then, many regional and local transportation agencies in Florida and throughout the U.S. have adopted context-based planning and design policies and practices. Context-based planning and design offers a flexible approach using existing tools in creative ways to address multimodal needs in different contexts. The approach also considers community needs, trade-offs between those needs, and alternatives to achieve multiple objectives.

The Florida Greenbook's Context-Based Design policy captures three core concepts:

- Serve the needs of transportation system users of all ages and abilities, including pedestrians, bicyclists, transit riders, motorists, and freight handlers.
- Design streets and highways based on local and regional land development patterns that reflect existing and future context.
- Promote safety, quality of life, and economic development.

This Context-Based approach builds on flexibility and innovation to ensure that all streets and highways are developed based on their context classification, as determined by the local jurisdiction to the maximum extent feasible. With a Context-Based approach, every non-limited access transportation project, including those on the Strategic Intermodal System (SIS), is uniquely planned and designed to serve the context of that roadway and the safety, comfort, and mobility of all users.

In a high-speed rural context, where higher truck traffic is anticipated, and walking and bicycling are infrequent, wider travel lanes with paved shoulders are appropriate. Shared use paths as part of a regional trail system or for access to schools or parks may also be needed. In urban contexts, where high volumes of pedestrians, bicyclists, and transit users are expected or desired, a roadway should include features such as wide sidewalks, bicycle facilities, transit stops, and frequent, pedestrian crossing opportunities.

Limited-access highways may incorporate elements of context-based design where they connect to the non-limited-access system.

B CLASSIFICATION

Designs for transportation projects are based on established design controls for the various elements of the project such as width, side slopes, horizontal and vertical alignment, drainage, accessibility and intersection considerations.

The design criteria presented in this manual are based on:

- Functional Classification
- Context Classification
- Design Speed

A determination of the functional and context-based design classification of each facility is required prior to the actual design.

B.1 Functional Classification

Functional classification is the grouping of highways by the character of service and connectivity they provide in relation to the total road network. Table 1 – 1 Functional Classification Types summarizes the primary characteristics of each functional classification.

Functional road classifications for Florida are defined in ***Section 334.03 F.S***. The ***AASHTO*** publication ***A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets (2011)*** presents an excellent discussion on highway functional classifications.

Table 1 – 1 Functional Classification Types

Functional Classification	Primary Characteristics
Limited Access Facilities	• Limited access • Through traffic movements • Primary freight routes • Guided by FHWA Design Standards for Highways (NHS)
Principal Arterial	• Through traffic movements • Longer distance traffic movements • Primary freight routes • Access to public transit • Pedestrian and bicycle travel
Minor Arterial	• Connections between local areas and network principal arterials • Connections for through traffic between arterial streets or highways • Access to public transit and through movements • Pedestrian and bicycle travel
Collector	• Carry traffic with trips ending in a specific area • Access to commercial and residential centers • Access to public transit • Pedestrian and bicycle travel
Local Roads	• Direct property access—residential and commercial • Pedestrian and bicycle travel

B.2 Context Classification

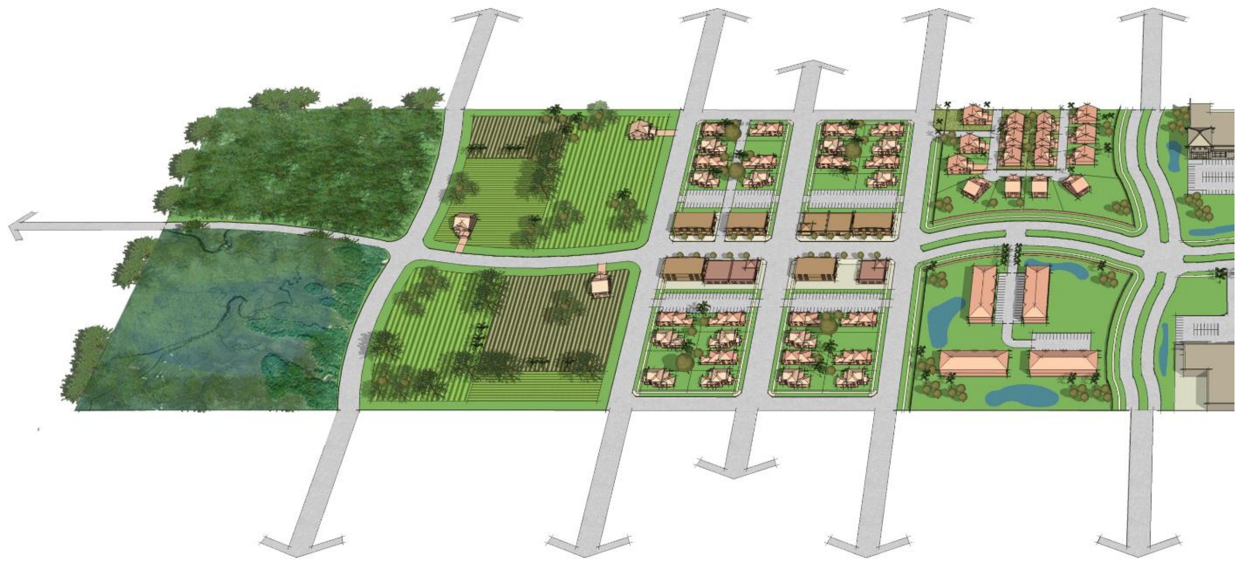
Projects are uniquely planned and designed to be in harmony with the surrounding land use characteristics and the intended uses of the street or highway. To this end, a context-based classification system comprising eight context classifications has been adopted. Figure 1 – 1 Context Classifications describes the context classifications that will determine key design criteria elements. Criteria for limited access facilities are independent of the adjacent land uses; therefore, context classifications shown in Figure 1 – 1 do not apply to these facilities.

Urban and rural are based on population density gathered from the most recent census and mapped as urban area boundaries. Urban areas are considered to have *dense* development patterns, while rural areas are considered to have *sparse* development patterns. The Department's ***Urban Area 1-Mile Buffer Maps*** identify urban and rural areas based on the census data and regional travel patterns.

Additional information on context classifications and guidance on the determination of the context classification is provided in the ***FDOT Context Classification Document***.

To meet local needs and travel demands, deviations in design criteria may be, appropriate for urban streets. ***Chapter 3 – Geometric Design, Chapter 8 – Pedestrian Facilities, Chapter 9 – Bicycle Facilities, Chapter 13 – Transit, Chapter 15 – Traffic Calming, Chapter 16 – Residential Street Design***, and ***Chapter 19 – Traditional Neighborhood Development*** provides additional information for the design of urban streets.

Figure 1 – 1 Context Classifications



C1 – Natural

Lands preserved in a natural or wilderness condition, including lands unsuitable for settlement due to natural conditions.

C2 – Rural

Sparsely settled lands; may include agricultural land, grassland, woodland, and wetlands.

C2T – Rural Town

Small concentrations of developed areas immediately surrounded by rural and natural areas; includes many historic towns.

C3R – Suburban Residential

Mostly residential uses within large blocks and a disconnected or sparse roadway network.

Figure 1 – 1 Context Classifications (continued)

C3C – Suburban Commerical

Mostly non-residential uses with large building footprints and large parking lots. Buildings are within large blocks and a disconnected or sparse roadway network.

C4 – Urban General

Mix of uses set within small blocks with a well-connected roadway network. May extend long distances. The roadway network usually connects to residential neighborhoods immediately along the corridor or behind the uses fronting the roadway.

C5 – Urban Center

Mix of uses set within small blocks with a well-connected roadway network. Typically concentrated around a few blocks and identified as part of the community, town, or city of a civic or economic center.

C6 – Urban Core

Areas with the highest densities and with building heights typically greater than four floors. Many are regional centers and destinations. Buildings have mixed uses, are built up to the roadway, and are within a well-connected transportation network.

B.3 Design Speed

See ***Chapter 3, Section C.1 Design Speed*** for information on establishing appropriate design speeds.

C CONSIDERATIONS FOR DESIGN

The following criteria should be considered and resolved in the initial planning and design of streets and highways. The criteria are not listed in order of priority, and the weighting of each criterion should be based on the context of a project, the available resources, and the users.

C.1 Safety

Functional and context classification play an important role in setting expectations and measuring outcomes for safety. Since agencies consider the type of street or highway in evaluating the significance of crash rates, classification can be used as part of evaluating relative safety and the implementation of safety improvements and programs.

C.2 Economic Constraints

In determining the benefit/cost ratio for any proposed facility, the economic evaluation should go beyond the actual expenditure of highway funds and the capacity and efficiency of the facility. Overall costs and benefits of various alternatives should include an evaluation of all known environmental, community, and social impacts and the quality and cost of the project.

Allocation of sufficient funds for obtaining the proper corridor and adequate right of way and alignment should receive the initial priority. Future acquisition of additional right of way and major changes in alignment are often economically prohibitive. This can result in substandard streets and highways that don't support the community's vision. Reconstruction or modification under traffic may be expensive, inconvenient, or hazardous to the user. This increase in costs, hazards, and inconvenience can be limited by initial development of quality facilities.

C.3 Access Requirements

Degree and type of access permitted on a given facility is dependent upon its intended function and context and should conform to the guidelines in ***Chapter 3 – Geometric Design***. Reasonable access control must be exercised to allow a street or highway to fulfill its function. The proper layout of the highway network and the utilization of effective land use controls (***Chapter 2 – Land Development***) can provide the basis for regulating access.

C.4 Measures of Level of Service

Level of service (LOS) is essentially a measure of the quality of the operating characteristics of a street or highway for each travel mode. Factors involved in determining the level of service include speed and safety, as well as travel time; traffic conflicts and interruptions; freedom to maneuver; convenience and comfort; and operating costs. Level of service is also dependent upon actual traffic volume and composition of traffic (motor vehicles, trucks, transit, bicyclists, and pedestrians).

The ***Highway Capacity Manual, 6th Edition*** provides further information on assessing the traffic and environmental effects of highway projects.

C.5 Maintenance Capabilities

Planning and design of streets and highways should include provisions for the performance of required maintenance. The planning of the expected maintenance program should be coordinated with the initial highway design to ensure maintenance activities may be conducted without excessive traffic conflicts or hazards.

C.6 Utility and Transit Operations

Utility accommodation within rights of way is generally considered to be in the public's best interest, since rights of way frequently offer the most practical engineering, construction, and maintenance solutions for utility service to businesses and residences. Utility and transit facility locations should be carefully chosen to optimize operations and safety of the transportation facility. Additional information on the design of transit facilities can be found in ***Chapter 13 – Transit***.

C.7 Emergency Response

Development of an effective emergency response program is dependent upon the nature of the highway network and the effectiveness of the operation of the system. Provisions for emergency access and communication should be considered in the initial planning and design of all streets and highways. Local emergency response personnel should be included in primary activities.

C.8 Environmental Impact

Construction and operation of streets and highways frequently produces an adverse effect upon the environment. Early consideration and resolution of environmental issues can avoid costly delays and modifications that may compromise the quality and efficiency of operation. Specific topics often encountered include the following:

- Air Quality
- Coastal Zone Resources
- Farmland
- Floodplains
- Hazardous Waste and Brownfields
- Noise
- Roadside vegetation
- Safe Drinking Water Act
- Water Quality
- Watersheds Management
- Wetlands
- Wild and Scenic Rivers and Wilderness Areas
- Wildlife and Threatened and Endangered Species
- Wildlife, Habitat and Ecosystems

C.9 Community and Social Impact

Quality and value of a community is directly influenced by the layout and design of streets and highways. Quality of the network determines the freedom and efficiency of movement. Inadequate design of the network and poor land use practices can lead to undesirable community separation and deterioration. Specific design of streets and highways has a large effect upon the overall aesthetic value which is important to the motorist and resident. When using federal funds for transportation projects, the following considerations should be addressed:

- Corridor Preservation
- Historical and Archaeological Preservation
- Scenic Byways
- ***Section 4 (f)*** (parks, refuges and historic sites)
- ***Section 6 (f)*** properties
- Visual Impacts

D OPERATION

The concept of operating the existing street and highway network as a system is essential to promote safety, efficiency, mobility, and economy. This requires comprehensive planning and coordination of all activities on each street and highway. These activities would include maintenance, construction, utility operations, public transit operations, traffic control, and emergency response operations. The behavior of travelers should be considered as an integral part of the operation of streets and highways. Coordination of the planning and supervision of each activity on each facility is necessary to achieve safety and efficient operation of the total system.

D.1 Policy

Each transportation agency with general responsibility for existing streets and highways should establish and maintain an operations department. Each existing street or highway should be assigned to the jurisdiction of the operations department. The operations department shall be responsible for planning, supervising, and coordinating all activities affecting the operating characteristics of the system under its jurisdiction.

D.2 Objectives

The primary objective of an operations department shall be to maintain or improve the operating characteristics of the system under its jurisdiction. These characteristics include safety, capacity, and level of service. The preservation of the function of each facility, which would include access control, is necessary to maintain these characteristics and the overall general value of a street or highway.

D.3 Activities

The achievement of these objectives requires the performance of a variety of coordinated activities by the operations department. The following activities should be considered as minimal for promoting the safe and efficient operation of a system.

D.3.a Maintenance and Reconstruction

Maintaining or upgrading the quality of existing facilities is an essential factor in preserving desirable operating characteristics. The planning and execution of maintenance and reconstruction activity on existing facilities must be closely coordinated with all other operational activities and, therefore, should be under the general supervision of the operations department.

All maintenance work should be conducted in accordance with the requirements of ***Chapter 10 – Maintenance and Resurfacing***. The priorities and procedures utilized should be directed toward improvement of the existing system. The standards set forth in this Manual should be used as guidelines for establishing maintenance and reconstruction objectives. All maintenance and reconstruction projects should be planned to minimize traffic control conflicts and hazards.

D.3.b Work Zone Safety

An important responsibility of the operations department is the promotion of work zone safety on the existing system. The planning and execution of maintenance, construction, and other activities shall include provisions for the safety of motorists, bicyclists, pedestrians, and workers. All work shall be conducted in accordance with the requirements presented in ***Chapter 11 – Work Zone Safety***.

D.3.c Traffic Control

Traffic engineering is a vital component of highway operations. The planning and design of traffic control devices should be carried out in conjunction with the overall design of the street or highway and highway user. The devices and procedures utilized for traffic control should be predicated upon developing uniformity throughout the system and compatibility with adjacent jurisdictions.

A primary objective to be followed in establishing traffic control procedures is the promotion of safe, orderly traffic flow. The cooperation of police agencies and coordination with local transit providers is essential for the achievement of this objective. Traffic control during maintenance, construction, utility, or emergency response operations should receive special consideration.

D.3.d Emergency Response

The emergency response activities (i.e., emergency maintenance and traffic control) of the operations department should be closely coordinated with the work of police, fire, ambulance, medical, and other emergency response agencies. The provisions for emergency access and communications should be included in the initial planning for these activities.

D.3.e Coordination and Supervision

Coordination and supervision of activities on the system should include the following:

- Supervision and/or coordination of all activities of the operations department and other agencies to promote safe and efficient operation
- Coordination of all activities to provide consistency within a given jurisdiction
- Coordination with adjacent jurisdictions to develop compatible highway systems
- Coordination with other transportation modes to promote overall transportation efficiency

D.3.f Inspection and Evaluation

The actual operation of streets and highways provides valuable experience and information regarding the effectiveness of various activities. Each operations department should maintain a complete inventory of its system and continuously inspect and evaluate the priorities, procedures, and techniques utilized in all activities on the existing system under its jurisdiction. Activities by other agencies, as well as any agency, should be subjected to this supervision.

Promotion of transportation safety should be aided by including a safety office (or officer) as an integral part of the operations department. Functions of this office would include the identification and inventory of hazardous locations and procedures for improving the safety characteristics of highway operations.

Results of this inspection and evaluation program should be utilized to make the modification necessary to promote safe and efficient operation. Feedback for modifying design criteria should be generated by this program. Experience and data obtained from operating the system should be utilized as a basis for recommending regulatory changes. Cooperation of legislative, law enforcement, and regulatory agencies is essential to develop the regulation of vehicles, driver behavior, utility, emergency response activities, and the access land use practices necessary for the safe and efficient operation of the highway system.

E REFERENCES FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES

Design criteria are established for transportation projects to ensure that they provide safe, economical, and fully functional multimodal transportation facilities. Various Department publications contain information on procedures, criteria, and standards for guiding and controlling design and construction activities. There are many local, state, and federal laws and rules that may impact the design of a project. These laws and rules are referenced in the publications when the Department is aware of them.

For situations where specific design standards or criteria cannot be found in the Department publications, current approved technical publications such as ***AASHTO's Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets (2011)*** should be used as design guidelines. Local agencies must ensure that project designs meet or exceed the referenced design criteria and that the standards developed from acceptable guidelines are appropriate for the proposed facility.

The following publications provide further information and guidance for Roadway and Bridge/Structure designs:

- FDOT Design Manual, (Topic No. 625-000-002)
  http://www.fdot.gov/roadway/FDM/

- Standard Plans for Road and Bridge Construction(Topic No. 625-010-003)
  http://www.fdot.gov/design/standardplans/

- FDOT Standard Specifications for Road and Bridge Construction
  https://www.fdot.gov/programmanagement/Specs.shtm

- Project Development and Environment Manual Part 1 and Part 2 (Topic No. 650-000-001)
  http://www.fdot.gov/environment/pubs/pdeman/pdeman1.shtm

- AASHTO Highway Safety Manual, 1st Edition (AASHTO Bookstore HSM-1)
  https://bookstore.transportation.org/

- Standard Highway Signs (FHWA)
  http://mutcd.fhwa.dot.gov/ser-shs_millennium.htm

- Highway Functional Classification: Concepts, Criteria and Procedures, 2013 Edition (FHWA)
  http://www.fhwa.dot.gov/planning/processes/statewide/related/highway_functional_classifications/section00.cfm

- Quality/Level of Service Handbook (FDOT, 2013)
  http://www.fdot.gov/planning/systems/programs/sm/los/default.shtm

- Manual on Uniform Traffic Studies (Topic No. 750-020-007)
  http://www.dot.state.fl.us/trafficoperations/Operations/Studies/MUTS/muts.shtm

- Surveying Procedure (Topic No. 550-030-101)
  http://www.dot.state.fl.us/surveyingandmapping/doc_pubs.shtm

- Right of Way Mapping Procedure (Topic No. 550-030-015)
  http://www.dot.state.fl.us/surveyingandmapping/doc_pubs.shtm

CHAPTER 2
LAND DEVELOPMENT

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

CHAPTER 2

LAND DEVELOPMENT

A INTRODUCTION

A major portion of street and highway construction and reconstruction is a result of land development for residential, commercial, industrial, and public uses. The general land use layout influences, and is controlled by, connections to adjacent road networks with different transportation modes. Techniques, principles, and general layout used for any development also dictate the resulting internal road network. The arrangement and space allocations for this network may determine whether safe, efficient, and economical streets and highways are constructed or reconstructed.

Land development practices should promote high quality street networks that provide interconnectivity and access control. The street network shall be designed for the safety of all road users – pedestrians, bicyclists, transit, and motor vehicle operators and passengers.

The design of the street network and features should be consistent with the desired context and meet the criteria in this Manual. Context based street design incorporates the following elements:

- Streets are sized and detailed to equitably serve the needs of the intended road users.
- Building size and character spatially define streets and squares.
- Compact form reduces requirements for energy, infrastructure, and automobile use.
- Public transit is supported through a high level of connectivity and attractive facilities (stops, shelters, hubs).

Some development patterns, such as conventional suburban, do not promote the creation of a high quality, accessible street network. To promote the creation of context-sensitive high quality interconnected streets:

- Design for desired/target speeds.
- Design desirable geometry to achieve sufficient sight distance and appropriate cross section (not too wide or too narrow for the context).
- Provide sufficient right of way and space allocations for stormwater, utilities, pedestrian features, and lighting, etc.
- Provide reasonable control of access.

Two of the more recent alternatives to the conventional suburban development patterns include Traditional Neighborhood Development (TND) and Transit Oriented Development (TOD). For more information, refer to ***21st Century Land Development Code***.

Development controls are needed to aid in the establishment of safe streets and highways that will retain their efficiency and economic worth. Provisions for adequate alignment, right of way, setbacks, expansion, and access control are essential.

There may be legal, social, and economic challenges in land use controls. Proper coordination among the public, various governmental bodies, and public transit and highway agencies can provide solutions to many of these challenges. Implementation of responsible land use and development regulations along with intergovernmental respect for the goals and objectives of each, will promote a high-quality long term transportation network.

B OBJECTIVES

Provisions for vehicular and pedestrian safety are important objectives to be considered in land development. Other land development objectives, related to surface transportation, should include the promotion of smooth traffic flow, efficiency, economy, aesthetics, and environmental compatibility of the transportation network.

General objectives for land development that should be followed to promote good highway design include the following:

- Ensure the function of each street and highway meets its intended purpose and context
- Provide for logical and energy efficient interconnected street network and flow patterns
- Reduce trip lengths
- Encourage the appropriate vehicular speed
- Reduce traffic conflicts to a minimum and eliminate confusion
- Apply safe geometric design principles
- Promote bicycle and pedestrian use through connectivity and access
- Provide for future modifications and expansion
- Provide for aesthetic and environmental compatibility
- Develop economic design, construction, and maintenance strategies
- Provide for public transit facilities
- Provide accessibility for persons with disabilities

C PRINCIPLES AND GUIDELINES

There are many variables involved in land development; therefore, specific standards and requirements for land use and road network layouts cannot always be applied. Use of sound principles and guidelines can, however, aid in meeting the objectives of a better road network. Proper planning and design of the development layout are necessary to provide a satisfactory road network and to allow for the construction of safe roadways. The following principles and guidelines should be utilized in the design of the road network, in the control of access, and in the land use controls and space allocation that would affect vehicular and pedestrian use.

C.1 Development Types and Area Types

C.1.a Conventional Suburban Design

This development type was common practice through the 20th century. It is characterized by automobile-dominant design, segregated land uses, and roadways that are often designed primarily for the use of the automobile. The street patterns channel local traffic onto collector streets and roads to reach most destinations. Although destinations are oftentimes adjacent to one another, this conventional suburban design does not typically connect to them directly. This makes walking an inefficient form of transportation in this development type.

C.1.b Traditional Neighborhood Design (TND)

This development type is a development alternative that promotes a strong integration of land use and transportation. For further information on TND, refer to Chapter 19 of this Manual.

C.1.c Transit–Oriented Design (TOD)

This development type is defined as a compact, mixed use area within one half mile of a transit stop or station that is designed to maximize walking trips and access to transit. They also are characterized by streetscapes and an urban form oriented to pedestrians to promote walking trips to stations and varied other uses within station areas. Further information on TOD can be found on the Department’s website: http://www.fltod.com/.

Transit-supportive planning and development rethinks land-use and development patterns so that communities may be effectively served by a balanced transportation system. Transit-supportive development enables citizens to use a variety of transportation modes for at least one or more of their daily trips between home, work, shopping, school, or services. These concepts are often called new urbanism to distinguish that form of urban design practice.

For more information on Conventional Suburban, TND and TOD, refer to the ***21st Century Land Development Code*** and *Traditional* ***Neighborhood Development Handbook***.

C.2 Network Design

The general layout of the road network establishes the traffic flow patterns and conflicts, thereby determining the basic safety and efficiency criteria. The design of the road network should be based on the following principles:

- The layout of street and highway systems should be logical and easily understood by the user.
- The design and layout of all streets and highways should clearly indicate their function.
- Local circulation patterns should be compatible with adjacent areas.
- Flow patterns should be designed to interconnect neighborhoods while discouraging through motorized traffic on local street networks.
- Elements in the local circulation should be adequate to avoid the need for extensive traffic controls.
- Typically, some streets are designed to accommodate a higher speed than the posted speed, which may cause enforcement problems and can have a negative safety impact on the circulation within an urban or residential network. In other situations, controlling speed levels is important in areas of concentrated pedestrian activities, areas with narrow right of way, areas with numerous access points, and on-street parking. Local authorities may elect to use traffic calming design features which are presented in ***Chapter 15 – Traffic Calming***.
- The internal circulation should be sufficient to provide reasonable travel distance for local trips.

- The road network should be compatible with other transportation modes such as mass transit and pedestrian and bicycle facilities. Conflicts between different modes (particularly with pedestrian and bicycle traffic) should be kept to a minimum.
- The road network layout should be designed to reduce conflicts with pedestrians, eliminate substantial speed differentials and hazardous turning and crossing maneuvers.
- Generally the number of intersections should meet user needs, support development patterns, and traffic flow and connectivity requirements.
- Roundabouts should be evaluated for installation at new intersections. Consideration should be given to redesigning existing intersections as roundabouts. For further information on roundabouts, refer to the ***National Cooperative Highway Research Project (NCHRP)*** ***672*** and ***674***.
- One-way streets are an option to consider where feasible.
- Streets should be designed to limit vehicle speeds (length, width, alignment, and intersections).
- The network should be designed to reduce the number of crossings and left turn maneuvers that are required.

C.3 Access Control

The standards and requirements presented in ***Chapter 3 – Geometric Design***, are necessary to maintain safe and efficient streets and highways. Failure to provide adequate control of access has seriously damaged many existing roadways. Unrestricted access to major collectors and arterials has dramatically reduced their capacity and general economic value. The safety characteristics of these facilities have similarly been diminished by significantly increasing the number of vehicular, pedestrian, and bicycle traffic conflicts.

The utilization of proper control over access is one of the most effective and economical means for maintaining the safety and utility of streets and highways. The procedures and controls used for land development significantly affect access control. The following principles should be utilized in the formation of land use controls for limiting access:

- The standards presented in ***Chapter 3 – Geometric Design, C.8 Access Control***, should provide the basis for establishing land development criteria for control of access.
- The use of an arterial or major collector as an integral part of the internal circulation pattern on private property should be prohibited.
- The intersection of private roads and driveways with arterials or major collectors should be strictly controlled.
- Access to sites which generate major traffic (vehicular, pedestrian, and bicycle), should be located to provide the minimum conflict with other traffic. These generators include schools, shopping centers, business establishments, industrial areas, entertainment facilities, etc.
- Commercial strip development, with the associated proliferation of driveways, should be eliminated. Vehicular and pedestrian interconnections should be encouraged.
- The function of all streets and highways should be preserved by the application of the appropriate access controls.
- The spacing and location of access points should be predicated upon reducing the total traffic and pedestrian conflict.
- Hazardous maneuvers should be restricted by access controls. For example, crossing and left turn maneuvers may be controlled by continuous median separation. Pedestrian access should be allowed at appropriate intervals. Medians with waiting space for pedestrians crossing the street are often necessary.

C.4 Land Use Controls and Space Allocation

The provisions for adequate space and proper location of various activities is essential to promote safety and efficiency. The following guidelines should be utilized in land use:

- Adequate corridors and space should be considered for utilities. Utility locations should be carefully chosen to minimize interference with the operation of the streets, highways, and sidewalks.
- Adequate space for drainage facilities should be provided. Open drainage facilities should be located well clear of the traveled way.

- Design for pedestrian and bicycle facilities should comply with ***Chapter 8 – Pedestrian Facilities*** and ***Chapter 9 – Bicycle Facilities***.
- Adequate space should be provided for off-street and side-street parking. This is essential in commercial and industrial areas.
- Right of way and setback requirements should be adequate to provide ample sight distance at all intersections.
- Sufficient space should be allocated for the development of adequate intersections, including accessibility for disabled individuals.
- Space allocation for street lighting (existing or planned) should be incorporated into the initial plan. Supports for this lighting should be located outside of the required clear zone unless they are clearly of breakaway type, or are guarded by adequate protective devices. Lighting plans should provide for well-lit, safe waiting and walking areas and shall conform with the provisions of ***Chapter 6 – Lighting***.
- Sufficient right of way should be provided for future widening, modification, or expansion of the highway network.
- Adequate corridors for future freeways, High Occupancy Vehicle (HOV) lanes, arterials, or major collectors should be provided.
- Adequate space for desired or required greenways should be provided.
- Adequate space for appropriate public transit facilities should be provided.

D COORDINATION

There are many demands that can conflict with the development of safe and efficient streets and highways. Meeting the demand for access can negatively impact the capacity of a roadway. Pressure to limit the amount of land dedicated for streets and highways inhibits the construction of an adequate road system. Coordination between highway agencies and other governmental bodies can assist in improving the procedures used in land development. Proper coordination should be solicited from legislative bodies, courts, planning and zoning departments, and transit and other governmental agencies to aid in developing a well-designed highway network. Coordination with transit planners, developers, engineers, architects, contractors, and other private individuals should be a continuous process.

The ***Florida Metropolitan Planning Organization Advisory Council (MPOAC)*** is a statewide transportation planning and policy organization created by the Florida Legislature pursuant to ***Section 339.175(11), Florida Statutes***, to augment the role of individual MPOs in the cooperative transportation planning process. The MPOAC assists MPOs in carrying out the urbanized area transportation planning process by serving as the principal forum for collective policy discussion. Further information on the MPOAC, including links to MPOs, can be found at http://www.mpoac.org/.

E CONTROL TECHNIQUES

The implementation of a sound highway transportation plan requires certain controls. A logical network design, adequate access controls, and proper land use controls are dependent upon and foster proper land development practices. Techniques that may be utilized to establish these necessary controls include the following:

E.1 Right of Way Acquisition

The acquisition of sufficient right of way is essential to allow for the construction of adequate streets and highways as specified in Chapter 3 – Geometric Design and Chapter 4 – Roadside Design. The provision of adequate space for clear roadside, sight distance, drainage facilities, buffer zones, intersections, transit, sidewalks, frontage roads, and future expansion is also necessary to develop and maintain safe streets and highways.

E.2 Regulatory Authority

The regulatory authority of state and local highway agencies (and other related agencies) should be sufficient to implement the necessary land use controls. The following general regulatory requirements and specific areas of control should be considered as minimum:

E.2.a General Regulatory Requirements

The necessary elements for achieving the following transportation goals should be incorporated into all land use and zoning ordinances:

- General highway transportation plans should be created and implemented.
- Determination and acquisition of transportation corridors for future expansions is essential.
- Development plans clearly showing all street and highway layouts, transit facilities, pedestrian and bicycle facilities, and utility corridors should be required. The execution of these plans should be enforceable.
- Development plans, building permits, and zoning should be reviewed by the appropriate agency.

- A safety check of proposed streets and highways should be a required step in the review and acceptance of all development plans.

E.2.b Specific Control

Specific areas of control necessary to develop adequate and efficient roadways include the following:

- Land use control and development regulations
- Control of access
- Driveway design
- Street and highway layouts
- Location of vehicular and pedestrian generators
- Location of transit, pedestrian, and bicycle facilities
- Right of way and setback requirements for sight distances and clear zone
- Provisions for drainage

E.3 Contracts and Agreements

Where land purchase or regulatory authority is not available or appropriate, the use of contractual arrangements or agreements with individuals can be beneficial. Negotiations with developers, builders, and private individuals should be used, where appropriate, to aid in the implementation of the necessary controls.

E.4 Education

Education of the public, developers, and governmental bodies can be beneficial in promoting proper land development controls. The need for future planning, access control, and design standards should be clearly and continuously emphasized. Successful solidification of the cooperation of the public and other governmental bodies depends upon clear presentation of the necessity for reasonable land development controls.

F REFERENCES FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES

- 21st Century Land Development Code
  https://www.planning.org/publications/book/9026709/

- Florida Transportation Plan
  http://floridatransportationplan.com/

- Florida Growth Management and Comprehensive Planning Laws (DOE)
  http://www.floridajobs.org/community-planning-and-development

- 1000 Friends of Florida
  http://www.1000fof.org/

- Florida Metropolitan Planning Organization Advisory Council (MPOAC)
  http://www.mpoac.org/

- Understanding Sprawl, A Citizen's Guide
  http://www.davidsuzuki.org/publications/resources/2003/understanding-sprawl-a-citizens-guide/

- Traditional Neighborhood Development Handbook
  http://www.fdot.gov/roadway/FloridaGreenbook/TND-Handbook.pdf

CHAPTER 3
GEOMETRIC DESIGN

TABLES

FIGURES

CHAPTER 3

GEOMETRIC DESIGN

A INTRODUCTION

Geometric design is defined as the design or proportioning of the visible elements of the street or highway. The geometry of the street or highway is of central importance since it provides the framework for the design of other highway elements. In addition, the geometric design establishes the basic nature and quality of the vehicle path, which has a primary effect upon the overall safety characteristics of the street or highway.

The design of roadway geometry must be conducted in close coordination with other design elements of the street or highway. These other elements include pavement design, roadway lighting, traffic control devices, transit, drainage, and structural design. The design should consider safe roadside clear zones, pedestrian safety, emergency response, and maintenance capabilities.

The safety characteristics of the design should be given primary consideration. The initial establishment of sufficient right of way and adequate horizontal and vertical alignment is not only essential from a safety standpoint, but also necessary to allow future upgrading and expansion without exorbitant expenditure of highway funds.

The design elements selected should be reasonably uniform but should not be inflexible.

The minimum standards presented in this chapter should not automatically become the standards for geometric design. The designer should consider use of a higher level, when practical, and consider cost-benefits as well as consistency with adjacent facilities. Reconstruction and maintenance of facilities should, where practical, include upgrading to these minimum standards.

In restricted or unusual conditions, it may not be possible to meet the minimum standards. In such cases, the designer shall obtain an exception in accordance with ***Chapter 14 – Design Exceptions*** from the reviewing or permitting organization. However, every effort should be made to obtain the best possible alignment, grade, sight distance, and proper drainage consistent with the terrain, the development, safety, and fund availability. The concept of road users has expanded in recent years creating additional considerations for the designer.

In making decisions on the standards to be applied to a particular project, the designer must also address the needs of pedestrians, bicyclists, elder road and transit users, people with disabilities, freight movement and other users and uses. This is true for both urban and rural facilities.

The design features of urban local streets are governed by practical limitations to a greater extent than those of similar roads in rural areas. The two dominant design controls are: (1) the type and extent of urban development and its limitations on rights of way and (2) zoning or regulatory restrictions. Some streets primarily are land service streets in residential areas. In such cases, the overriding consideration is to foster a safe and pleasing environment. Other streets are land service only in part, and features of traffic and public transit service may be predominant.

The selection of the type and exact design details of a particular street or highway requires considerable study and thought. When specific criteria are not provided in this Manual and reference is made to guidelines and design details given by current American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO) publications, these guidelines and standards should generally be considered as minimum criteria. For the design of recreational roads, local service roads, and alleys, see ***A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets (AASHTO, 2011)***, also known as the ***AASHTO Greenbook (2011)*** and other publications.

Right of way and pavement width requirements for new construction may be reduced for the paving of certain existing unpaved streets and very low volume rural roads provided all the conditions listed below are satisfied:

- The road is functionally classified as a local road.
- The 20-year projected ADT is less than or equal to 400 vehicles per day and the design year projected peak hourly volume is 100 vehicles per hour or less. Note: The design year may be any time within a range of the present to 20 years in the future, depending on the nature of the improvement.
- The road has no foreseeable probability of changing to a higher functional classification through changes in land use, extensions to serve new developing land areas, or any other use which would generate daily or hourly traffic volumes greater than those listed above.
- There is no reasonable possibility of acquiring additional right of way without:
- Incurring expenditures of public funds in an amount which would be excessive compared to the public benefits achieved

- Causing substantial damage or disruption to abutting property improvements to a degree that is unacceptable considering the local environment

B OBJECTIVES

The major objective in geometric design is to establish a vehicle path and environment providing a reasonable margin of safety for the motorist, transit, bicyclist, and pedestrian under the expected operating conditions and speed. It is recognized that Florida's design driver is aging, and tourism is our major industry. This gives even more emphasis on simplicity and easily understood geometry. The design of street or highway features should consider the following:

- Provide the most simple geometry attainable, consistent with the physical constraints
- Provide a design that has a reasonable and consistent margin of safety at the expected operating speed
- Provide a design that is safe at night and under adverse weather conditions
- Provide a facility that is adequate for the expected traffic conditions and transit needs
- Allow for reasonable deficiencies in the driver, such as:
  - Periodic inattention
  - Reduced skill and judgment
  - Slow reaction and response
- Provide an environment that minimizes hazards, is as hazard free as practical, and is "forgiving" to a vehicle that has deviated from the travel path or is out of control.

C DESIGN ELEMENTS

C.1 Design Speed

Design speed is a selected speed used to determine the various geometric design features of the street or highway. Selection of an appropriate design speed must consider the anticipated operating speed, topography, existing and future adjacent land use, and functional classification. Consideration must also be given to pedestrian and bicycle usage.

Many critical design features such as sight distance and curvature are directly related to, and vary appreciably with, design speed. For this reason, the selected design speed should be consistent with the speeds that drivers are likely to expect on a given street or highway facility. The design speed shall not be less than the expected posted or legal speed limit. Once the design speed is selected, all pertinent highway features should be related to it to obtain a balanced design.

Above minimum design criteria for specific design elements such as flatter curves and longer sight distances should be used where practical, particularly on high speed facilities. On lower speed facilities, use of above minimum values may encourage travel at speeds higher than the design speed.

The design speed utilized should be consistent over a given section of street or highway. Required changes in design speed should be effected in a gradual fashion. When isolated reductions in design speed cannot reasonably be avoided, appropriate speed signs should be posted.

Minimum and maximum values for design speed are given in Table 3 – 1 Minimum and Maximum Design Speed.

High speed facilities are defined as those facilities with design speeds 50 mph and greater. Low speed facilities are defined as those facilities with design speeds 45 mph and less. The posted speed shall be less than or equal to the design speed.

The ***AASHTO Greenbook (2011)*** provides additional information on design speed.

Table 3 – 1 Minimum and Maximum Design Speed (mph)

Facility[1]		AADT (vpd)	Terrain	Design Speed (mph)
Freeways	Rural	All	Level and Rolling	70
	Urban	All	Level and Rolling	50 – 70[2]
Arterials	Rural	All	Level	60 – 70
			Rolling	50 – 70
	Urban	All	All	30 – 60[3]
Collectors	Rural	≥ 400	Level	60 – 65 (50 mph min for AADT 400 to 2000)
			Rolling	50 – 65 (40 mph min for AADT 400 to 2000)
		< 400	Level	40 – 60
			Rolling	30 – 60
	Urban	All	All	30 – 50[3]
Local	Rural	≥ 400	Level	50 – 60
			Rolling	40 – 60
		< 400	Level	30 – 50
			Rolling	20 – 40
	Urban	All	All	20 – 30[4]

Footnotes:

1. Urban design speeds are applicable to streets and highways located within designated urban boundaries as well as those streets and highways outside designated urban boundaries yet within small communities or urban like developed areas. Rural design speeds are applicable to all other rural areas.
2. A design speed of 70 mph should be used for urban freeways when practical. Lower design speeds should only be used in highly developed areas with closely spaced interchanges. For these areas a minimum design speed of 60 mph is recommended unless it can be shown lower speeds will be consistent with driver expectancy.
3. Lower speeds apply to central business districts and in more developed areas while higher speeds are more applicable to outlying and developing areas.
4. Since the function of urban local streets is to provide access to adjacent property, all design elements should be consistent with the character of activity on and adjacent to the street, and should encourage speeds generally not exceeding 30 mph.

C.2 Design Vehicles

A "design vehicle" is a vehicle with representative weight, dimensions, and operating characteristics, used to establish street and highway design controls for accommodating vehicles of designated classes. For the purpose of geometric design, the design vehicle should be one with dimensions and minimum turning radii larger than those of almost all vehicles in its class. Design vehicles are listed in Table 3 – 2 Design Vehicles*.* One or more of these vehicles should be used as a control in the selection of geometric design elements. In certain industrial (or other) areas, special service vehicles may have to be considered in the design. Fire equipment and emergency vehicles should have reasonable access to all areas. Additional information on the maximum width, height and length of vehicles in Florida can be found in ***Section 316.515, F.S. Motor Vehicles; Maximum width, height, length.***

If a significant number or percentage (5 percent of all the total traffic) of vehicles of those classes larger than passenger vehicles are likely to use a particular street or highway, that class should be used as a design control. The design of arterial streets and highways should normally be adequate to accommodate all design vehicles. The decision as to which of the design vehicles (or other special vehicles) should be used as a control is complex and requires careful study. Each situation must be evaluated individually to arrive at a reasonable estimate of the type and volume of expected traffic.

- Design criteria significantly affected by the type of vehicle include:
- Horizontal and vertical clearances
- Alignment
- Lane widening on curves
- Shoulder width requirements
- Turning roadway and intersection radii
- Intersection sight distance
- Acceleration criteria

Particular care should be taken in establishing the radii at intersections, so vehicles may enter the street or highway without encroaching on adjacent travel lanes or leaving the pavement. It is acceptable for occasional trucks or buses to make use of both receiving lanes, especially on side streets.

Table 3 – 2 Design Vehicles

Design Vehicle		Dimensions (feet)					
Type	Symbol	Wheelbase	Overhang		Overall Length	Overall Width	Height
			Front	Rear			
Passenger Car	P	11	3	5	19	7	4.3
Single Unit Truck	SU-30	20	4	6	30	8	11-13.5
Single Unit Truck – 3 Axle	SU-40	25	4	10.5	39.5	8	11-13.5
City Transit Bus	CITY-BUS	25	7	8	40	8.5	10.5
Conventional School Bus (65 passenger)	S-BUS 36	21.3	2.5	12.0	35.8	8.0	10.5
Articulated Bus	A-BUS	22+19.4=41.4	8.6	10	60	8.5	11
Motor Home	MH	20	4	6	30	8	12
Car & Camper Trailer	P/T	11+5+17.7=33.7**	3	12	48.7	8	10
Car & Boat Trailer	P/B	11+5+15=31**	3	8	42	8	---
Intermediate Semitrailer	WB-40	12.5+25.5=38	3	4.5	45.5	8	13.5
Intermediate Semitrailer	WB-50	14.6+35.4=50	3	2	55	8.5	13.5
Interstate Semitrailer***	WB-62	19.5+41=60.5	4	4.5	69	8.5	13.5
Florida Interstate Semitrailer***	WB-62FL	19.5+41=60.5	4	9	73.5	8.5	13.5
Interstate Semitrailer***	WB-67	21.6+45.4=67	4	2.5	73.5	8.5	13.5
"Double-Bottom"-Semitrailer/Trailer Combination	WB-67D	11+23+10*+22.5= 66.5	2.3	3.0	72.3	8.5	13.5

Source: 2011 AASHTO Greenbook, Design Controls and Criteria, Table 2-1b.

* Distance between rear wheels of front trailer and front wheels of rear trailer

** Distance between rear wheels of trailer and front wheels of car

*** The term “Interstate” does not imply the vehicle is restricted to interstate and limited access highways only.

The minimum turning radii of design vehicles is presented in Table 3 – 3 Minimum Turning Radii of Design Vehicles. The principal dimensions affecting design are the minimum centerline turning radius, the out-to-out track width, the wheelbase, and the path of the inner rear tire. The speed of the turning vehicle is assumed to be less than 10 mph.

The boundaries of the turning path of each design vehicle for its sharpest turns are established by the outer trace of the front overhang and path of the inner rear wheel. This sharpest turn assumes that the outer front wheel follows the circular arc defining the minimum centerline turning radius as determined by the vehicle steering mechanism.

Figures illustrating the minimum turning radii for a variety of vehicles along with additional information can be found in the ***AASHTO Greenbook (2011), Chapter 2 – Design Controls and Geometrics.***

Table 3 – 3 Minimum Turning Radii of Design Vehicles

Design Vehicle		Dimensions In Feet		
Type	Symbol	Minimum Design Turning Radius	Centerline Turning* Radius	Minimum Inside Radius
Passenger Car	P	23.8	21.0	14.4
Single Unit Truck	SU-30	41.8	38.0	28.4
Single Unit Truck – 3 Axle	SU-40	51.2	47.4	36.4
City Transit Bus	CITY-BUS	41.6	37.8	24.5
Conventional School Bus (65 passenger)	S-BUS 36	38.6	34.9	23.8
Articulated Bus	A-BUS	39.4	35.5	21.3
Motor Home	MH	39.7	36.0	26.0
Car & Camper Trailer	P/T	32.9	30.0	18.3
Car & Boat Trailer	P/B	23.8	21.0	8.0
Intermediate Semitrailer	WB-40	39.9	36.0	19.3
Intermediate Semitrailer	WB-50	45	41	17.0
Interstate Semitrailer	WB-62	44.8	41.0	7.4
Florida Interstate Semitrailer***	WB-62FL	44.8	41.0	7.4
"Double-Bottom"-Semitrailer/Trailer Combination	WB-67D	44.8	40.9	19.1

Source: 2011 AASHTO Greenbook, Design Controls and Criteria, Table 2-2b.

* The turning radius assumed by a designer when investigating possible turning paths and is set at the centerline of the front axle of a vehicle. If the minimum turning path is assumed, the CTR approximately equals the minimum design turning radius minus one-half the front width of the vehicle.

C.3 Sight Distance

The provision for adequate horizontal and vertical sight distance is an essential factor in the development of a safe street or highway. An unobstructed view of the upcoming roadway is necessary to allow time and space for the safe execution of passing, stopping, intersection movements, and other normal and emergency maneuvers. It is also important to provide as great a sight distance as possible to allow the driver time to plan for future actions. The driver is continuously required to execute normal slowing, turning, and acceleration maneuvers. If he can plan in advance for these actions, traffic flow will be smoother and less hazardous. Unexpected emergency maneuvers will also be less hazardous if they are not combined with uncertainty regarding the required normal maneuvers. The appropriate use of lighting (***Chapter 6 – Lighting***) may be required to provide adequate sight distances for night driving.

Future obstruction to sight distance that may develop (e.g., vegetation) or be constructed should be taken into consideration in the initial design. Areas outside of the road right of way that are not under the highway agency's jurisdiction should be considered as points of obstruction. Planned future construction of median barriers, guardrails, grade separations, or other structures should also be considered as possible sight obstructions.

C.3.a Stopping Sight Distance

Safe stopping sight distances shall be provided continuously on all streets and highways. The factors, which determine the minimum distance required to stop, include:

- Vehicle speed
- Driver's total reaction time
- Characteristics and conditions of the vehicle
- Friction capabilities between the tires and the roadway surface
- Vertical and horizontal alignment of the roadway

It is desirable that the driver be given sufficient sight distance to avoid an object or slow-moving vehicle with a natural, smooth maneuver rather than an extreme or panic reaction.

The determination of available stopping sight distance shall be based on a height of the driver's eye equal to 3.50 feet and a height of obstruction to be avoided equal to 2.0 feet. It would, of course, be desirable to use a height of obstruction equal to zero (coincident with the roadway surface) to provide the driver with a more positive sight condition. Where horizontal sight distance may be obstructed on curves, the driver's eye and the obstruction shall be assumed to be located at the centerline of the traffic lane on the inside of the curve.

The stopping sight distance shall be no less than the values given in Table 3 – 4 Minimum Stopping Sight Distance for level and rolling roadways.

Table 3 – 4 Minimum Stopping Sight Distance

Design Speed (mph)	Stopping Sight Distance (feet)						
	Level (≤ 2%)	Downgrades			Upgrades		
		3%	6%	9%	3%	6%	9%
20	115	116	120	126	109	107	104
25	155	158	165	173	147	143	140
30	200	205	215	227	200	184	179
35	250	257	271	287	237	229	222
40	305	315	333	354	289	278	269
45	360	378	400	427	344	331	320
50	425	446	474	507	405	388	375
55	495	520	553	593	469	450	433
60	570	598	638	686	538	515	495
65	645	682	728	785	612	584	561
70	730	771	825	891	690	658	631

Source: 2011 AASHTO Greenbook, Table 3-1 Stopping Sight Distance on Level Roadways and Table 3-2 Stopping Sight Distance on Grades.

C.3.b Decision Sight Distance

Decision sight distance is the distance needed for a driver to detect an unexpected or otherwise difficult to perceive information source or condition in a roadway environment that may be visually cluttered. It allows the driver to recognize the condition or its potential threat, select an appropriate speed and path, and initiate and complete complex maneuvers. Minimum stopping distance does not provide sufficient space or time for the driver to make decisions regarding complex situations requiring more than simple perception-reaction process

Examples of critical locations where additional sight distance is needed include interchange and intersection locations, where unusual or unexpected maneuvers are needed, changes in typical sections such as toll plazas or lane drops, and areas of concentrated demand where there is visual noise from competing sources of information, such as roadway elements, traffic, traffic control devices and advertising signs.

The decision sight distances in Table 3 – 5 Decision Sight Distance may be used (1) to provide values for sight distances that may be appropriate at critical locations, and (2) to serve as criteria for evaluating the suitability of the available sight distances at these locations. If it is not practical to provide decision sight distance because of horizontal or vertical curvature or if relocation of decision points is not practical, special attention should be given to using appropriate traffic control devices providing advance warning of the conditions that are likely to be encountered.

Table 3 – 5 Decision Sight Distance

Design Speed (mph)	Decision Sight Distance (feet)				
	Level Avoidance Maneuver				
	A	B	C	D	E
20	130	305	300	355	410
25	170	395	375	445	515
30	220	490	450	535	620
35	275	590	525	625	720
40	330	690	600	715	825
45	395	800	675	800	930
50	465	910	750	890	1030
55	535	1030	865	980	1135
60	610	1150	990	1125	1280
65	695	1275	1050	1220	1365
70	780	1410	1105	1275	1445

Source: 2011 AASHTO Greenbook, Table 3 - 3 Decision Sight Distance

Notes:
1. Avoidance Maneuver A: Stop on rural road – t = 3.0 s
2. Avoidance Maneuver B: Stop on urban road – t = 9.1 s
3. Avoidance Maneuver C: Speed/path/direction change on rural road – t varies between 10.2 and 11.2 s
4. Avoidance Maneuver D: Speed/path/direction change on suburban road – t varies between 12.1 and 12.9 s
5. Avoidance Maneuver E: Speed/path/direction change on urban road – t varies between 14.0 and 14.5 s

The sight distance on a freeway preceding the approach nose of an exit ramp should exceed the minimum by 25 percent or more. A minimum sight distance of 1000 feet, measured from the driver's eye to the road surface is a desirable goal. There should be a clear view of the exit terminal including the exit nose.

C.3.c Passing Sight Distance

The passing maneuver, which requires occupation of the opposing travel lane, is inherently dangerous. The driver is required to make simultaneous estimates of time, distance, relative speeds, and vehicle capabilities. Errors in these estimates result in frequent and serious crashes.

Streets or highways with two or more travel lanes in a given direction are not subject to requirements for safe passing sight distance. Two-lane, two-way highways should be provided with safe passing sight distance for as much of the highway as feasible. The driver demand for passing opportunity is high and serious limitations on the opportunity for passing reduces the capacity and safe characteristics of the highway.

The distance traveled after the driver's final decision to pass (while encroaching into the opposite travel path) is that which is required to pass and return to the original travel lane in front of the overtaken vehicle. In addition to this distance, the safe passing sight distance must include the distance traveled by an opposing vehicle during this time period, as well as a reasonable margin of safety. Due to the many variables in vehicle characteristics and driver behavior, the passing sight distance should be as long as is practicable.

The determination of passing sight distance shall be based on a height of eye equal to 3.50 feet and a height of object passing equal to 3.50 feet. Where passing is permitted, the passing sight distance shall be no less than the values given in Table 3 – 6 Minimum Passing Sight Distances.

.

Table 3 – 6 Minimum Passing Sight Distance

(For application of passing sight distance, use an eye height of 3.50 feet and an object height of 3.50 feet above the road surface)											
Design Speed (mph)	20	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60	65	70
Minimum Passing Sight Distance (feet)	400	450	500	550	600	700	800	900	1000	1100	1200

Source: 2011 AASHTO Greenbook, Table 3-4 Passing Sight Distance for Design of Two-Lane Highways.

C.3.d Intersection Sight Distance

Sight distances for intersection movements are given in the general intersection requirements (C.9 Intersection Design, this chapter).

C.4 Horizontal Alignment

C.4.a General Criteria

The standard of alignment selected for a particular section of street or highway should extend throughout the section with no sudden changes from easy to sharp curvature. Where sharper curvature is unavoidable, a sequence of curves of increasing degree should be utilized.

Winding alignment consisting of sharp curves is hazardous, reduces capacity, and should be avoided. The use of as flat a curve as possible is recommended. Flatter curves are not only less hazardous, but also frequently less costly due to the shortened roadway.

Maximum curvature should not be used in the following locations:

- High fills or elevated structures. The lack of surrounding objects reduces the driver's perception of the roadway alignment.
- At or near a crest in grade.
- At or near a low point in a sag or grade.
- At the end of long tangents.

- At or near intersections, transit stops, or points of ingress or egress.
- At or near other decision points.

The "broken back" arrangement of curves (short tangent between two curves in the same direction) should be avoided. This is acceptable only at design speeds of 30 mph or less. This arrangement produces unexpected and hazardous situations.

When reversals in alignment are used and superelevation is required, a sufficient length of tangent between the reverse curves is required for adequate superelevation transition.

Compound curves should be avoided, especially when curves are sharp. They tend to produce erratic and dangerous vehicle operations. When compound curves are necessary, the radius of the flatter curve should not be more than 50 percent greater than the sharper curve.

The transition between tangents and curves should normally be accomplished by the use of appropriate straight-line transitions or spirals. This is essential to assist the driver in maintaining his vehicle in the proper travel path.

C.4.b Maximum Deflections in Alignment without Curves

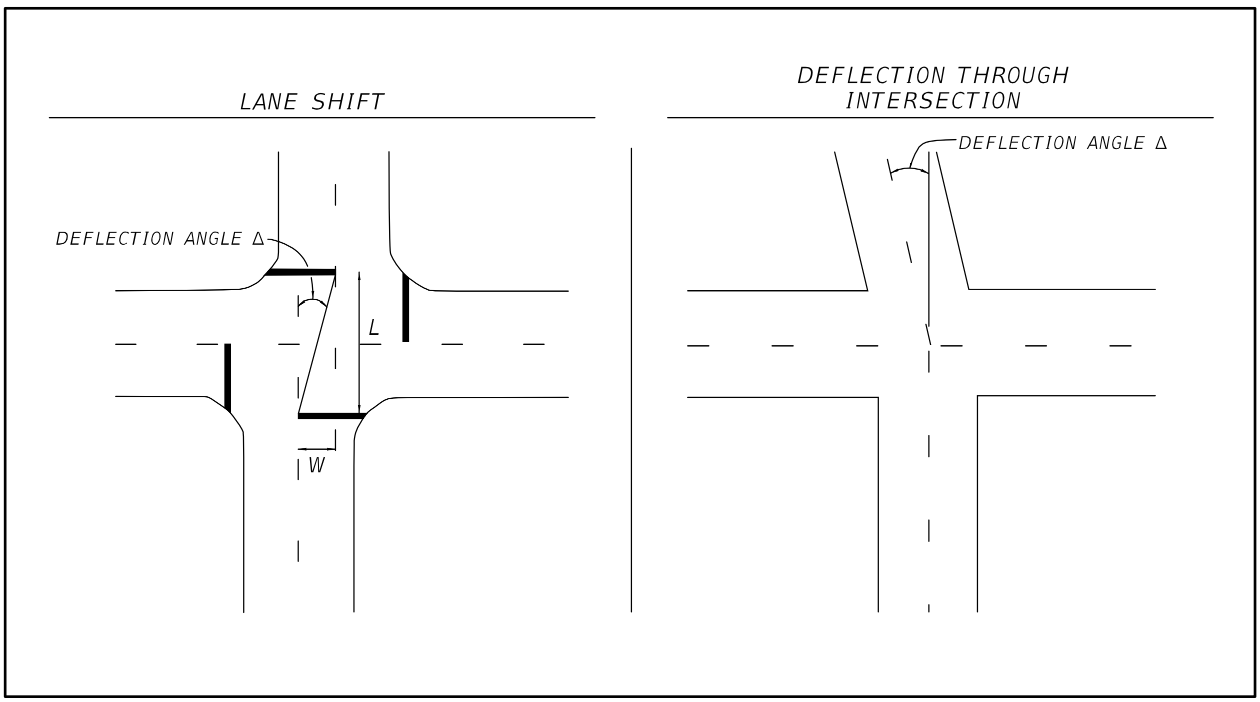
The point where tangents intersect is known as the point of intersection (PI). Although the use of a PI with no horizontal curve is discouraged, there may be conditions where it is necessary. The maximum deflection criteria without a horizontal curve are as follows:

- Flush shoulder and curbed roadways with design speed 40 mph and less is 2^{o} 00’ 00”.
- Flush shoulder roadways with design speed 45 mph and greater is 0^{o} 45’ 00”.
- Curbed roadways with design speed 45 mph and greater is 1^{o} 00’ 00”.
- High speed curbed roadways with design speed 50 mph and greater is 0^{o} 45’ 00”.

Although deflections thru intersections are discouraged, there may be conditions where it is necessary. The maximum deflection angles at intersections to be used in establishing the horizontal alignment are given in Table 3 – 7 Maximum Deflection Angle Through Intersection.

Table 3 – 7 Maximum Deflection Angle Through Intersection

Design Speed (mph)					
≤ 20	25	30	35	40	45
16° 00’	11° 00’	8° 00’	6° 00’	5° 00’	3° 00’



Notes 1. The deflection angle used is not to cause a lane shift (W) of more than 6 feet from stop bar to stop bar.

Curves on main roadways should be sufficiently long to avoid the appearance of a kink. Gently flowing alignment is generally more pleasing in appearance, as well as, superior from a safety standpoint. Flatter curvature with shorter tangents is preferable to sharp curves connected by long tangents; i.e., avoid using minimum horizontal curve lengths. Table 3-8 Minimum Lengths of Horizontal Curves provides minimum horizontal curve lengths that should be used in establishing the horizontal alignment.

Table 3 – 8 Minimum Lengths of Horizontal Curves

Curve Length Based on Design Speed										
Design Speed (mph)	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60	65	70
Arterials, Collectors (Length in feet = 15 x Design Speed, but not less than 400 feet)	400	450	525	600	675	750	825	900	975	1050
Freeways - Mainline (Length in feet = 30 x Design Speed)	--	--	--	--	--	1500	1650	1800	1950	2100

Curve Length Based on Deflection Angle					
Deflection Angle (degrees)	5^o	4^o	3^o	2^o	1^o
Curve Length (feet)	500	600	700	800	900

Notes:

1. Horizontal curve length should be the greater of the lengths based on design speed and length based on deflection angle.
2. If the curve lengths for arterials and collectors cannot be attained, provide the greatest attainable length possible, but not less than 400 feet.
3. If the curve lengths for mainline freeways cannot be attained, provide the greatest attainable length possible, but not less than the lengths used for arterials and collectors.
4. Curve length shall provide for full superelevation within the curve of not less than 200 ft. (Rural) or 100 ft. (Urban).

Compound curves are sometimes used for turning roadways at intersections. For turning roadways and intersections a ratio of 2:1 (where the flatter radius precedes the sharper radius in the direction of travel) is acceptable. The arc lengths of compound curves for turning roadways when followed by a curve of one half radius or preceded by a curve of double radius should be as shown in Table 3 – 9 Length of Compound Curves on Turning Roadways.

Table 3 – 9 Length of Compound Curves on Turning Roadways

Radius (feet)	**100**	**150**	**200**	**250**	**300**	**400**	**≥ 500**
Desirable Arc Length (feet)	65	70	100	120	150	180	200
Minimum Arc Length (feet)	40	50	65	85	100	120	150

C.4.c Superelevation

In the design of street and highway curves, it is necessary to establish a proper relationship between curvature of the roadway and design speed. The use of superelevation (rotation of the roadway about its axis) is employed to counteract centrifugal force and allow drivers to comfortably and safely travel through curves at the design speed.

The terms Rural and Urban used in this section reflect the location of the project. In addition to the criteria provided below, additional information regarding superelevation given in the Department's FDOT Design Manual, and ***A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets (AASHTO, 2011)***, may be considered.

C.4.c.1 Rural Highways, Urban Freeways and High Speed Urban Highways

The superelevation rates for high speed (50 mph or greater) roadways are provided in Table 3 – 10 Superelevation Rates for Rural Highways, Urban Freeways and High Speed Urban Highways (e max =0.10)***.*** These rates are based on Method 5 from the ***2011 AASHTO Greenbook*** using a maximum rate of 0.10 foot per foot of roadway width. Table 3 – 10 also provides the minimum radius required for normal crown without superelevation.

C.4.c.2 Low Speed Urban Roadways

For low speed (45 mph and less) roadways in urban areas, various factors combine to make superelevation difficult, if not impractical, in many built-up areas. Such factors include:

- Wide pavement areas
- Need to meet grade of adjacent property
- Surface drainage considerations
- Frequency of cross streets, alleys, and driveways

Superelevation rates for low speed urban roadways therefore rely more heavily on side friction than rates used for high speed roadways and the maximum superelevation rate is set at 0.05 foot per foot. Separate criteria are provided for low speed Local Roads vs. low speed Arterials and Collectors as follows:

Low Speed Urban Arterials and Collectors: Superelevation rates for low speed urban arterials and collectors are provided in Table 3 – 11 Superelevation Rates for Low Speed Arterials and Collectors (emax = 0.05). These rates are based on the Department's superelevation criteria for low speed arterials and collectors. Table 3 – 11 also provides the minimum radius required for normal crown without superelevation.

Low Speed Local Roads: Minimum radii for design superelevation rates for low speed local roads are provided in Table 3 – 12 Minimum Radii (feet) for Design Superelevation Rates, Low Speed Local Roads (emax = 0.05). These rates are based on Method 2 from the 2011 AASHTO Greenbook. Table 3 – 12 also provides the minimum radius required for normal crown (-0.02 ft/ft) without superelevation.

Table 3 – 10 Superelevation Rates for Rural Highways, Urban Freeways and High Speed Urban Highways (e max = 0.10)

Tabulated Values

Degree of Curve *D*	Radius *R* (ft.)	Design Speed (mph) 30	35	40	45	50	55	60	65	70
0° 15'	22,918	NC	NC	NC	NC	NC	NC	NC	NC	NC
0° 30'	11,459	NC	NC	NC	NC	NC	NC	RC	RC	RC
0° 45'	7,639	NC	NC	NC	NC	RC	RC	0.023	0.025	0.028
1° 00'	5,730	NC	NC	NC	RC	0.021	0.025	0.030	0.033	0.037
1° 15'	4,584	NC	NC	RC	0.022	0.026	0.031	0.036	0.041	0.046
1° 30'	3,820	NC	RC	0.021	0.026	0.031	0.037	0.043	0.048	0.054
	*R_NC									
2° 00'	2,865	RC	0.022	0.028	0.034	0.040	0.048	0.055	0.062	0.070
	*R_RC									
2° 30'	2,292	0.021	0.028	0.034	0.041	0.049	0.058	0.067	0.075	0.085
3° 00'	1,910	0.025	0.032	0.040	0.049	0.057	0.067	0.077	0.087	0.096
3° 30'	1,637	0.029	0.037	0.046	0.055	0.065	0.075	0.086	0.095	0.100
4° 00'	1,432	0.033	0.042	0.051	0.061	0.072	0.083	0.093	0.099	Dmax = 3° 30'
5° 00'	1,146	0.040	0.050	0.061	0.072	0.083	0.094	0.098	Dmax = 4° 15'	
6° 00'	955	0.046	0.058	0.070	0.082	0.092	0.099	Dmax = 5° 15'		
7° 00'	819	0.053	0.065	0.078	0.089	0.098	Dmax = 6° 30'			
8° 00'	716	0.058	0.071	0.084	0.095	0.100				
9° 00'	637	0.063	0.077	0.089	0.098	Dmax = 8° 15'				
10° 00'	573	0.068	0.082	0.094	0.100					
11° 00'	521	0.072	0.086	0.097	Dmax = 10° 15'					
12° 00'	477	0.076	0.090	0.099						
13° 00'	441	0.080	0.093	0.100						
14° 00'	409	0.083	0.096	Dmax = 13° 15'						
15° 00'	382	0.086	0.098							
16° 00'	358	0.089	0.099							
18° 00'	318	0.093	Dmax = 17° 45'							
20° 00'	286	0.097								
22° 00'	260	0.099								
24° 00'	239	0.100								
		Dmax = 24° 45'								

* NC/RC and RC/e Break Points (Radius in feet)

Break Points	Design Speed (mph) 30	35	40	45	50	55	60	65	70
R_{NC}	3349	4384	5560	6878	8337	9949	11709	13164	14714
R_{RC}	2471	3238	4110	5087	6171	7372	8686	9783	10955

e = NC *if* R ≥ R_{NC} e = RC *if* R < R_{NC} *and* R ≥ R_{RC}

NC = Normal Crown (-0.02) RC = Reverse Crown (+0.02)

R_{NC}= Minimum Radius for NC R_{RC} = Minimum Radius for RC

Rates for intermediate D and R’s are to be interpolated.

Draft

Table 3 – 11 Superelevation Rates for Low Speed Arterials and Collectors (e_{max} = 0.05)

Tabulated Values					
Degree of Curve *D*	Radius *R* (ft.)	Design Speed (mph)			
		30	35	40	45
2° 00'	2,865	NC	NC	NC	NC
2° 15'	2,546				
2° 45'	2,083				NC
3° 00'	1,910				RC
3° 45'	1,528			NC	
4° 00'	1,432			RC	
4° 45'	1,206				
5° 00'	1,146		NC		
5° 15'	1,091		RC		
5° 30'	1,042				
5° 45'	996				
6° 00'	955				RC
6° 15'	917				0.022
6° 30'	881				0.024
6° 45'	849				0.027
7° 00'	819	NC			0.030
7° 15'	790	RC			0.033
7° 30'	764				0.037
7° 45'	739				0.041
8° 00'	716			RC	0.045
8° 15'	694			0.022	0.050
8° 30'	674			0.025	Dmax = 8° 15'
8° 45'	655			0.027	
9° 00'	637			0.030	
9° 30'	603			0.034	
10° 00'	573			0.040	
10° 30'	546		RC	0.047	
11° 00'	521		0.023	Dmax = 10° 45'	
11° 30'	498		0.026		
12° 00'	477		0.030		
13° 00'	441		0.036		
14° 00'	409	RC	0.045		
15° 00'	382	0.023	Dmax = 14° 15'		
16° 00'	358	0.027			
17° 00'	337	0.032			
18° 00'	318	0.038			
19° 00'	302	0.043			
20° 00'	286	0.050			
		Dmax = 20° 00'			

NC = Normal Crown (-0.02) RC = Reverse Crown (+0.02)

Rates for intermediate D and R's are to be interpolated.

Table 3 – 12 Minimum Radii (feet) for Design Superelevation Rates
Low Speed Local Roads (e_{max} = 0.05)

e - ft/ft	Design Speed (mph)							
	10	15	20	25	30	35	40	45
0.05	16	41	83	149	240	355	508	675
0.045	16	41	85	152	245	363	520	692
0.04	16	42	86	154	250	371	533	711
0.035	16	42	87	157	255	380	547	730
0.03	16	43	89	160	261	389	561	750
0.025	16	43	90	163	267	398	577	771
0.02	17	44	92	167	273	408	593	794
0.015	17	45	94	170	279	419	610	818
0.01	17	45	95	174	286	430	627	844
0.005	17	46	97	177	293	441	646	871
0	18	47	99	181	300	454	667	900
-0.01	18	48	103	189	316	480	711	964
-0.02	19	50	107	198	333	510	762	1038
-0.03[1]	19	52	111	208	353	544	821	1125
-0.04[1]	20	54	116	219	375	583	889	1227
-0.05[1]	20	56	121	231	400	628	970	1350

1. Negative superelevation values beyond -0.02 feet per foot should be used only for unpaved surfaces such as gravel, crushed stone, and earth.

C.4.d Maximum Curvature/Minimum Radius

Where a directional change in alignment is required, every effort should be made to utilize the smallest degree (largest radius) curvature possible. The use of the maximum degree of curvature should be avoided when possible. Design speed maximum degree of curvature or minimum radius for the maximum superelevation rates are provided in Tables 3 – 10 Superelevation Rates for Rural Highways, Urban Freeways and High Speed Urban Highways, 3 – 11 Superelevation Rates for Low Speed Arterials and Collectors, and 3 – 12 Minimum Radii (feet) for Design Superelevation Rates Low Speed Local Roads. The use of sharper curvature would call for superelevation beyond the limit considered practical or for operation with tire friction beyond safe or comfortable limits or both. The maximum degree of curvature or minimum radius is a significant value in alignment design.

C.4.e Superelevation Transition (superelevation runoffs plus tangent runoff)

Superelevation runoff is the general term denoting the length of street or highway needed to transition the change in cross slope from a section with the adverse crown removed (level) to the fully superelevated section, or vice versa. Tangent runoff is the general term denoting the length of street or highway needed to accomplish the change in cross slope from a normal cross section to a section with the adverse crown removed, or vice versa.

The standard superelevation transition places 80% of the transition on the tangent and 20% on the curve. In transition sections where the travel lane(s) cross slope is less than 1.5 %, one of the following grade criteria should be applied:

- Maintain a minimum profile grade of 0.5%, or
- Maintain a minimum edge of pavement grade of 0.2% (0.5% for curbed roadways).

When superelevation is required for curves in opposite directions on a common tangent (reverse curves), a suitable distance is required between the curves. This suitable tangent length should be determined as follows:

- 80% of the transition for each curve should be located on the tangent.
- The suitable tangent length is the sum of the two 80% distances, or greater.
- Where alignment constraints dictate a less than desirable tangent length between curves, an adjustment of the 80/20 superelevation transition treatment is allowed (where up to 50% of the transition may be placed on the curve).

Superelevation transition slope rates used to compute transition lengths are provided in Table 3 –13 Superelevation Transition Slope Rates. The 2011 AASHTO Greenbook provides additional information on superelevation transition design.

The Department's ***Standard Plans for Road and Bridge Construction*** provide additional information on superelevation transitions for various sections and methods for determining length of transition.

Table 3 – 13 Superelevation Transition Slope Rates

Number of Lanes in One Direction	High Speed Roadways				Low Speed Roadways		
	Design Speed (mph)				Design Speed (mph)		
	25-40	45-50	55-60	65-70	25-35	40	45
1-Lane & 2-Lane	1:175	1:200	1:225	1:250	1:100	1:125	1:150
3-Lane	---	1:160	1:180	1:200			
4-Lane or more	---	1:150	1:170	1:190			

High Speed Roadways:

1. The length of superelevation transition is to be determined by the relative slope rate between the travel way edge of pavement and the profile grade, except that the minimum length of transition is 100 feet.
2. For additional information on transitions, see the ***Standard Plans***, ***Index 000-510***.

Low Speed Roadways:

1. The length of superelevation transition is to be determined by the relative slope rate between the travel way edge of pavement and the profile grade, except that the minimum length of transition is 50 feet for design speeds 25-35 mph and 75 ft. for design speeds 40-45.
2. A slope rate of 1:125 may be used for 45 mph under restricted conditions.
3. For additional information on transitions, see ***Standard Plans***, ***Index 000-511***.

Spiral curves may be used to transition from the tangent to the curve. Where the spiral curve is employed, its length is used to make the entire superelevation transition. For additional information on the use of spiral curves, see the ***2011 AASHTO Greenbook***.

C.4.f Sight Distance on Horizontal Curves

Where there are sight obstructions (such as walls, cut slopes, buildings, and longitudinal barriers) on the inside of curves or the inside of the median lane on divided highways and their removal to increase sight distance is impractical, a design may need adjustment in the normal highway cross section or alignment. With sight distance for the design speed as a control, make the appropriate adjustments to provide adequate stopping sight distance. Figure 3 – 1A Horizontal Sight Line Offset Distances for Stopping Sight Distance on Horizontal Curves and Figure 3 – 1B Diagram Illustrating Components for Determining Horizontal Sight Distance show the horizontal sight line offsets needed for clear sight areas that satisfy stopping sight distance criteria presented in Table 3 – 3 Minimum Stopping Sight Distances for horizontal curves of radii on flat grades.

Figure 3 – 1A Horizontal Sight Line Offset Distances for Stopping Sight Distance on Horizontal Curves

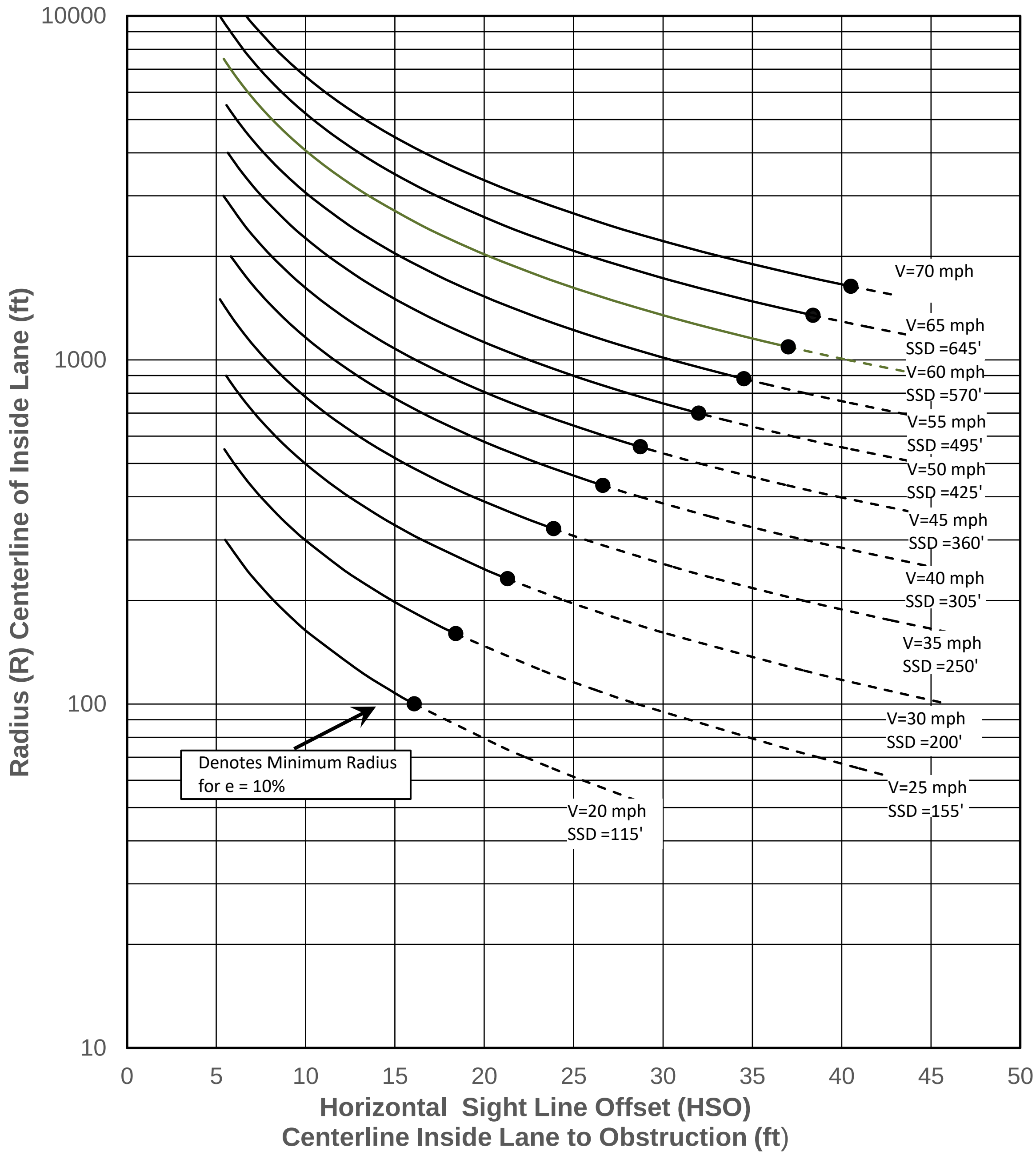
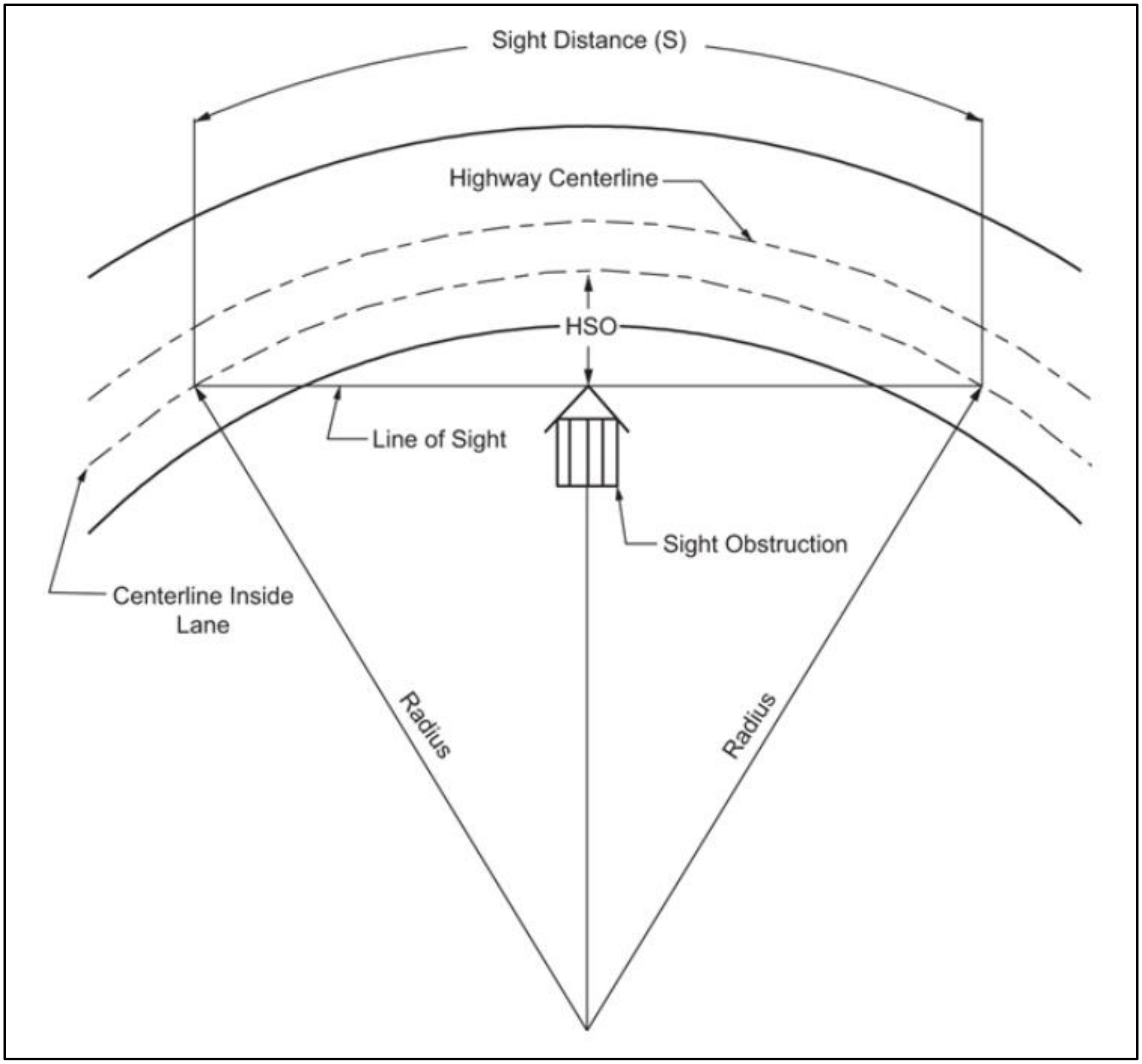


Figure 3 – 1B Diagram Illustrating Components for Determining Horizontal Sight Distance



HSO – Horizontal Sight Distance

Source: 2011 AASHTO Greenbook, Figure 3 – 23. Diagram Illustrating Components for Determining Horizontal Sight Distance

Table 3 – 14 Horizontal Curvature

Lateral Clearance from Edge of Traveled Way to Obstruction For Maximum Curvature (Degrees), Based on Line of Sight On Inside Lane (Lateral Clearance = $M_{\text{Inside Lane}}$ – 6') Based on e_{MAX} = 0.10		
Design Speed (mph)	**Maximum Curvature**	**Clearance (feet)**
20	57° 45’	11
25	36° 15’	13
30	24° 45'	16
35	17° 45'	19
40	13° 30'	21
45	10° 15'	23
50	8° 15'	27
55	6° 30'	29
60	5° 15'	31
65	4° 15'	33
70	3° 30'	35

C.4.g Lane Widening on Curves

The traveled way should be widened on sharp curves due to the increased difficulty for the driver to follow the proper path. Trucks and transit vehicles experience additional difficulty due to the fact that the rear wheels may track considerably inside the front wheels thus requiring additional width. Adjustments to traveled way widths for mainline and turning roadways are given in Tables 3 – 15A Calculated and Design Values for Traveled Way Widening on Open Highway Curves (Two-Lane Highways, One-Way or Two-Way and 3 – 15B Adjustments or Traveled Way Widening Values on Open Highway Curves (Two-Lane Highways, One-Way or Two-Way. A transition length shall be introduced in changing to an increased/decreased lane width. This transition length shall be proportional to the increase/decrease in traveled way width in a ratio of not less than 50 feet of transition length for each foot of change in lane width.

Table 3 – 15ACalculated and Design Values for Traveled Way Widening on Open Highway Curves (Two-Lane Highways, One-Way or Two-Way)

Radius of Curve (feet)	Roadway width = 24 feet. Design Speed (mph)							Roadway width = 22 feet. Design Speed (mph)							Roadway width = 20 feet. Design Speed (mph)						
	30	35	40	45	50	55	60	30	35	40	45	50	55	60	30	35	40	45	50	55	60
7000	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.7	0.7	0.8	0.8	0.9	1.0	1.0	1.7	1.7	1.8	1.8	1.9	2.0	2.0
6500	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.1	0.7	0.8	0.8	0.9	1.0	1.0	1.1	1.7	1.8	1.8	1.9	2.0	2.0	2.1
6000	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.1	0.1	0.7	0.8	0.9	0.9	1.0	1.1	1.1	1.7	1.8	1.9	1.9	2.0	2.0	2.1
5500	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.1	0.1	0.2	0.8	0.9	0.9	1.0	1.1	1.1	1.2	1.8	1.9	1.9	2.0	2.1	2.1	2.2
5000	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.1	0.1	0.2	0.3	0.9	0.9	1.0	1.1	1.1	1.2	1.3	1.9	1.9	2.0	2.1	2.1	2.2	2.3
4500	0.0	0.0	0.1	0.1	0.2	0.3	0.4	0.9	1.0	1.1	1.1	1.2	1.3	1.4	1.9	2.0	2.1	2.1	2.2	2.3	2.4
4000	0.0	0.1	0.2	0.2	0.3	0.4	0.5	1.0	1.1	1.2	1.2	1.3	1.4	1.5	2.0	2.1	2.2	2.2	2.3	2.4	2.5
3500	0.1	0.2	0.3	0.4	0.5	0.5	0.6	1.1	1.2	1.3	1.4	1.5	1.5	1.6	2.1	2.2	2.3	2.4	2.5	2.5	2.6
3000	0.3	0.4	0.4	0.5	0.6	0.7	0.8	1.3	1.4	1.4	1.5	1.6	1.7	1.8	2.3	2.4	2.4	2.5	2.6	2.7	2.8
2500	0.5	0.6	0.7	0.8	0.9	1.0	1.1	1.5	1.6	1.7	1.8	1.9	2.0	2.1	2.5	2.6	2.7	2.8	2.9	3.0	3.1
2000	0.7	0.9	1.0	1.1	1.2	1.3	1.4	1.7	1.9	2.0	2.1	2.2	2.3	2.4	2.7	2.9	3.0	3.1	3.2	3.3	3.4
1800	0.9	1.0	1.1	1.3	1.4	1.5	1.6	1.9	2.0	2.1	2.3	2.4	2.5	2.6	2.9	3.0	3.1	3.3	3.4	3.5	3.6
1600	1.1	1.2	1.3	1.5	1.6	1.7	1.8	2.1	2.2	2.3	2.5	2.6	2.7	2.8	3.1	3.2	3.3	3.5	3.6	3.7	3.8
1400	1.3	1.5	1.6	1.7	1.9	2.0	2.1	2.3	2.5	2.6	2.7	2.9	3.0	3.1	3.3	3.5	3.6	3.7	3.9	4.0	4.1
1200	1.7	1.8	1.9	2.1	2.2	2.4	2.5	2.7	2.8	2.9	3.1	3.2	3.4	3.5	3.7	3.8	3.9	4.1	4.2	4.4	4.5
1000	2.1	2.3	2.4	2.6	2.7	2.9	3.0	3.1	3.3	3.4	3.6	3.7	3.9	4.0	4.1	4.3	4.4	4.6	4.7	4.9	5.0
900	2.4	2.6	2.7	2.9	3.1	3.2		3.4	3.6	3.7	3.9	4.1	4.2		4.4	4.6	4.7	4.9	5.1	5.2	
800	2.7	2.9	3.1	3.3	3.5	3.6		3.7	3.9	4.1	4.3	4.5	4.6		4.7	4.9	5.1	5.3	5.5	5.6	
700	3.2	3.4	3.6	3.8	4.0			4.2	4.4	4.6	4.8	5.0			5.2	5.4	5.6	5.8	6.0		
600	3.8	4.0	4.2	4.4	4.6			4.8	5.0	5.2	5.4	5.6			5.8	6.0	6.2	6.4	6.6		
500	4.6	4.9	5.1	5.3				5.6	5.9	6.1	6.3				6.6	6.9	7.1	7.3			
450	5.2	5.4	5.7					6.2	6.4	6.7					7.2	7.4	7.7				
400	5.9	6.1	6.4					6.9	7.1	7.4					7.9	8.1	8.4				
350	6.8	7.0	7.3					7.8	8.0	8.3					8.8	9.0	9.3				
300	7.9	8.2						8.9	9.2						9.9	10.2					
250	9.6							10.6							11.6						
200	12.0							13.0							14.0						

Source: 2011 AASHTO Greenbook, Table 3 – 26b Calculated and Design values for Traveled Way Widening on Open Highway Curves.

Notes: 1. Values shown are for WB-62 design vehicle and represent widening in feet. For other design vehicles, use adjustments in Table 3-15B.

2. Values less than 2.0 feet may be disregarded, For 3-lane roadways For 3-lane roadways, multiply above values by 1.5.

For 4-lane roadways, multiply above values by 2.

Table 3 – 15B Adjustments for Traveled Way Widening Values on Open Highway Curves (Two-Lane Highways, One-Way or Two-Way)

Radius of Curve (FEET)	Design Vehicle						
	SU-30	WB-40				WB-67	WB-67D
7000	-1.2	-1.2				0.1	-0.1
6500	-1.3	-1.2				0.1	-0.1
6000	-1.3	-1.2				0.1	-0.2
5500	-1.3	-1.2				0.1	-0.2
5000	-1.3	-1.3				0.1	-0.2
4500	-1.4	-1.3				0.1	-0.2
4000	-1.4	-1.3				0.1	-0.2
3500	-1.5	-1.4				0.1	-0.3
3000	-1.6	-1.4				0.1	-0.3
2500	-1.7	-1.5				0.2	-0.4
2000	-1.8	-1.6				0.2	-0.5
1800	-1.9	-1.7				0.2	-0.5
1600	-2.0	-1.8				0.2	-0.6
1400	-2.2	-1.9				0.3	-0.6
1200	-2.4	-2.1				0.3	-0.8
1000	-2.7	-2.3				0.4	-0.9
900	-2.8	-2.4				0.4	-1.0
800	-3.1	-2.6				0.5	-1.1
700	-3.4	-2.9				0.6	-1.3
600	-3.8	-3.2				0.7	-1.5
500	-4.3	-3.6				0.8	-1.8
450	-4.7	-3.9				0.9	-2.0
400	-5.2	-4.3				1.0	-2.3
350	-5.8	-4.7				1.1	-26
300	-6.6	-5.4				1.3	-3.0
250	-7.7	-6.3				1.6	-3.6
200	-9.4	-7.6				2.0	-4.6

Source: 2011 AASHTO Greenbook, Table 3 - 27 Adjustments for Traveled Way Widening Values on Open Highway Curves.

Notes:
1. Adjustments are applied by adding to or subtracting from the values in Table 3-15A.
2. Adjustments depend only on radius and design vehicle; they are independent of traveled way width and design speed.
3. For 3-lane roadways, multiply above values by 1.5.
4. For 4-lane roadways, multiply above values by 2.0.

C.5 Vertical Alignment

C.5.a General Criteria

The selection of vertical alignment should be predicated to a large extent upon the following criteria:

- Obtaining maximum sight distances
- Limiting speed differences (particularly for trucks and buses) by reducing magnitude and length of grades
- A "hidden dip" which would not be apparent to the driver must be avoided.
- Steep grades and sharp crest vertical curves should be avoided at or near intersections.
- Flat grades and long gentle vertical curves should be used whenever possible.

C.5.b Grades

The grades selected for vertical alignment should be as flat as practical, and should not be greater than the value given in Table 3 – 16 Maximum Grades in Percent.

For streets and highways requiring long upgrades, the maximum grade should be reduced so the speed reduction of slow-moving vehicles (e.g., trucks and buses) is not greater than 10 mph. The critical lengths of grade for these speed reductions are shown in Figure 3 – 2 Critical Length Versus Upgrade. Where reduction of grade is not practical, climbing lanes should be provided to meet these speed reduction limitations.

The criteria for a climbing lane and the adjacent shoulder are the same as for any travel lane except that the climbing lane should be clearly designated by the appropriate pavement markings. Entrance to and exit from the climbing lane shall follow the same criteria as other merging traffic lanes; however, the climbing lane should not be terminated until well beyond the crest of the vertical curve. Differences in superelevation should not be sufficient to produce a change in pavement cross slope between the climbing lane and through lane in excess of 0.04 feet per foot.

Recommended minimum gutter grades:

Rolling terrain - 0.5%   Flat terrain - 0.3%

Table 3 – 16 Maximum Grades (in Percent)

Type of Roadway		**Level Terrain**											**Rolling Terrain**										
		Design Speed (mph)											**Design Speed (mph)**										
		20	**25**	**30**	**35**	**40**	**45**	**50**	**55**	**60**	**65**	**70**	**20**	**25**	**30**	**35**	**40**	**45**	**50**	**55**	**60**	**65**	**70**
Freeway[1]		---	---	---	---	---	---	4	4	3	3	3	---	---	---	---	---	---	5	5	4	4	4
Arterial	Rural	---	---	---	---	5	5	4	4	3	3	3	---	---	---	---	6	6	5	5	4	4	4
	Urban	---	---	8	7	7	6	6	5	5	---	---	---	---	9	8	8	7	7	6	6	---	---
Collector[2]	Rural	7	7	7	7	7	7	6	6	5	---	---	10	10	9	9	8	8	7	7	6	---	---
	Urban	9	9	9	9	9	8	7	7	6	---	---	12	12	11	10	10	9	8	8	7	---	---
Local[3]	Rural	8	7	7	7	7	7	6	6	5	---	---	11	11	10	10	10	9	8	7	6	---	---

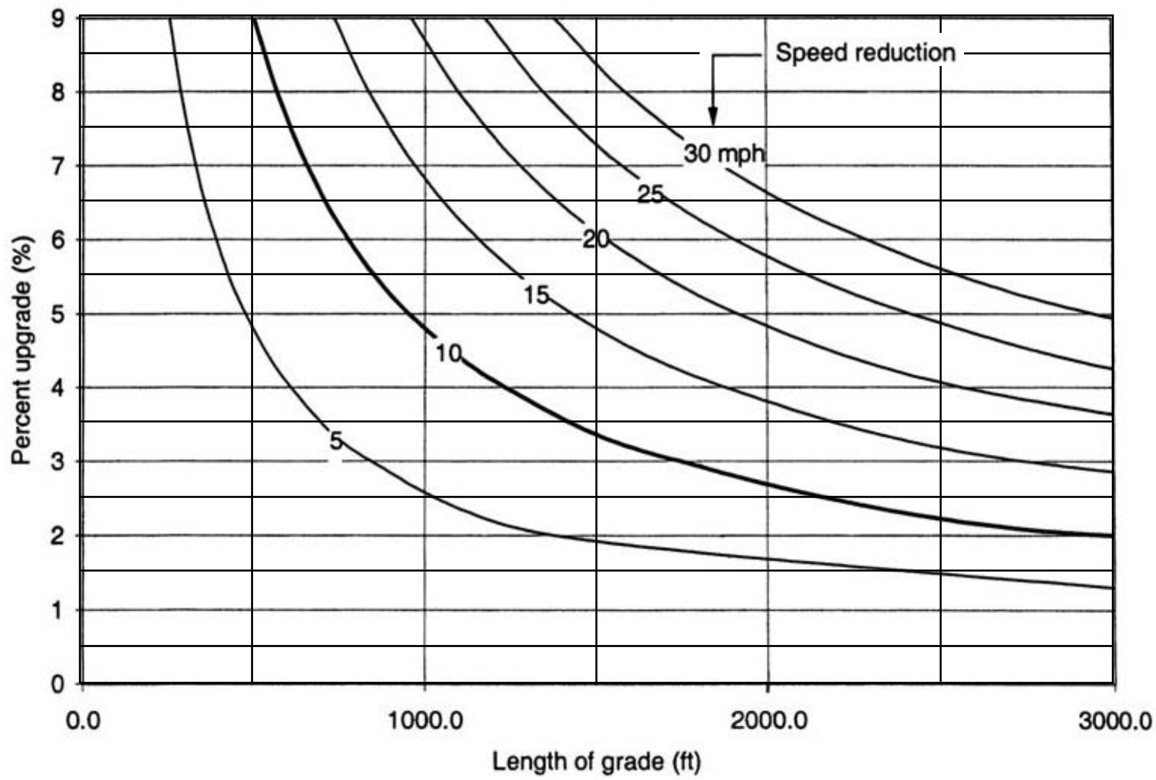
Source: 2011 AASHTO Greenbook, Tables 5–2, 6–2, 6–8, 7–2, 7–4, 8–1.

Notes: 1. Grades 1% steeper than the value shown may be provided in urban areas with right of way constraints.

2. Short lengths of grade (≤ 500 feet in length), one-way downgrades, and grades on low volume collectors may be up to 2% steeper than the grades shown above.

3. Residential street grade should be as level as practical, consistent with surrounding terrain, and less than 15%. Streets in commercial or industrial areas should have grades less than 8%, and flatter grades should be encouraged.

Figure 3 – 2 Critical Length Versus Upgrade



Critical Lengths of Grade for Design, Assumed Typical Heavy Truck of 200 lb/hp, Entering Speed = 70 mph

Source: 2011 AASHTO Greenbook, Figure 3-28.

C.5.c Vertical Curves

Changes in grade should be connected by a parabolic curve (the vertical offset being proportional to the square of the horizontal distance). Vertical curves are required when the algebraic difference of intersecting grades exceeds the values given in Table 3 – 17 Maximum Change in Grade Without Using Vertical Curve. Table 3 – 18 Rounded K Values for Minimum Lengths Vertical Curves provides additional information.

The length of vertical curves on a crest, as governed by stopping sight distance, is obtained from Figure 3 – 3 Length of Crest Vertical Curve (Stopping Sight Distance). The minimum length for passing sight distance on crest vertical curves shall be based on the K-values as shown in Table 3 – 19 Design Controls for Crest Vertical Curves (Passing Sight Distance). The minimum length of a sag vertical curve on open road conditions, as governed by vehicle headlight capabilities, is obtained from Figure 3 - 4 Length of Sag Vertical Curve (Headlight Sight Distance)*.*

Wherever feasible, curves longer than the minimum should be considered to improve both aesthetic and safety characteristics.

Table 3 – 17 Maximum Change in Grade Without Using Vertical Curve

Design Speed (mph)	**20**	**25**	**30**	**35**	**40**	**45**	**50**	**55**	**60**	**65**	**70**
Maximum Change in Grade in Percent	1.20	1.10	1.00	0.90	0.80	0.70	0.60	0.50	0.40	0.30	0.20

Table 3 – 18 Rounded K Values for Minimum Lengths Vertical Curves (Stopping Sight Distance)

(Based upon an eye height of 3.50 feet and an object height of 2 feet above the road surface)

L = KA
L = Length of Vertical Curve, A = Algebraic Difference of Grades in Percent

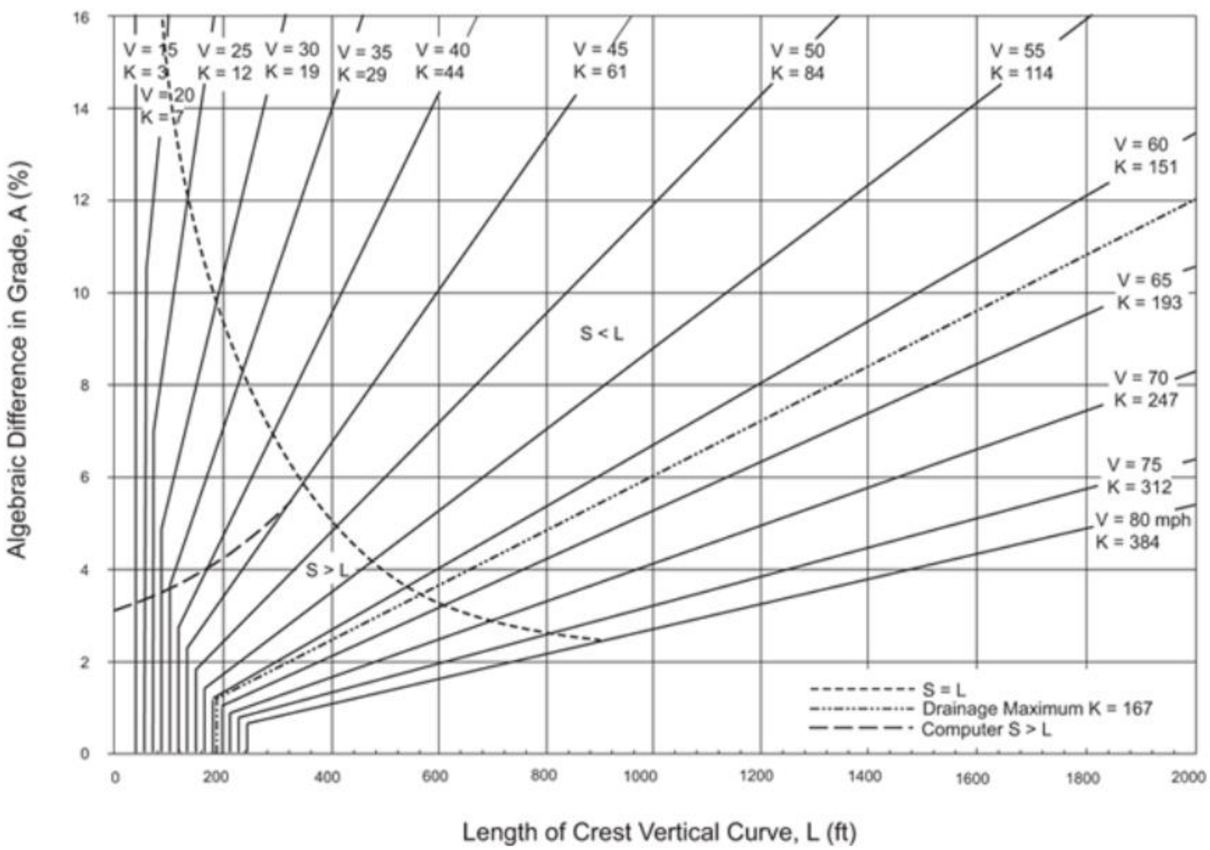
Design Speed (mph)	20	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60	65	70
K Values for Crest Vertical Curves	7	12	19	29	44	61	84	114	151	193	247
K Values for Sag Vertical Curves	17	26	37	49	64	79	96	115	136	157	181

- The length of vertical curve must never be less than three times the design speed of the highway.
- Curve lengths computed from the formula L = KA should be rounded upward when feasible.
- The minimum lengths of vertical curves to be used on collectors, arterials and freeways are shown in the table below:

Minimum Lengths for Vertical Curves
on Collectors, Arterials, and Freeways (feet)

Design Speed (mph)	50	60	70
Crest Vertical Curves (feet)	300	400	500
Sag Vertical Curves (feet)	200	300	400

Figure 3 – 3 Length of Crest Vertical Curve (Stopping Sight Distance)



Source: Figure 3-43 Design Controls for Crest Vertical Curves – Open Road Conditions, 2011 AASHTO Greenbook

Lengths of crest vertical curves are computed from the formulas:

When S is less than L, $L=AS^2/2158$

When S is greater than L, $L=2S – (2158/A)$

A = Algebraic Difference In Grades In Percent
S = Sight Distance
L = Minimum Length of Vertical Curve In Feet

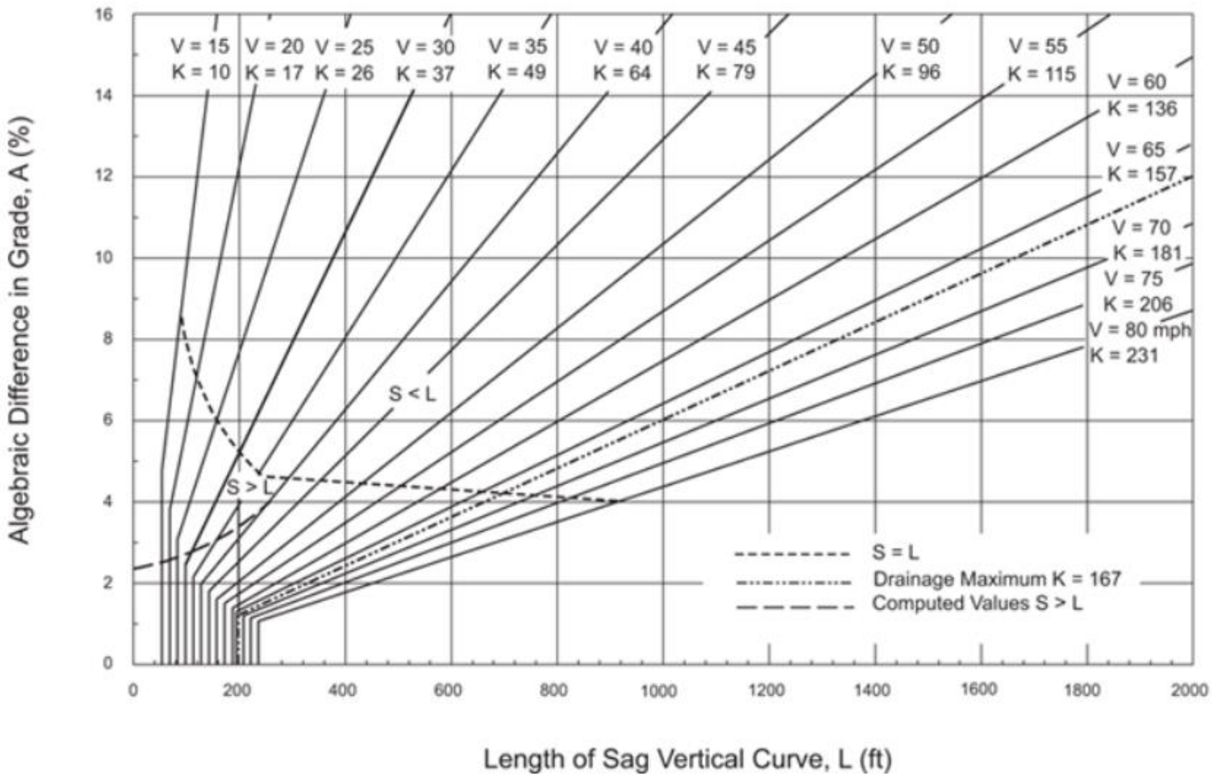
Table 3 - 19 Design Controls for Crest Vertical Curves (Passing Sight Distance)

Based upon an eye height of 3.50 feet and an object height of **3.5** feet above the road surface.)		
L = KA L = Length of Vertical Curve, A = Algebraic Difference of Grades in Percent		
Design Speed (mph)	Passing Sight Distance (feet)	Rate of Vertical Curvature, K[a]
20	400	57
25	450	72
30	500	89
35	550	108
40	600	129
45	700	175
50	800	229
55	900	289
60	1000	357
65	1100	432
70	1200	514
[a] Rate of vertical curvature, K, is the length of curve per percent algebraic difference in intersecting grades (A), K = L/A**.**		

Source: Table 3-35 Design Controls for Crest Vertical Curves Based on Passing Sight Distance, 2011 AASHTO Greenbook.

For further information on both crest and sag vertical curves, see Section 3.4.6 Vertical Curves of the ***AASHTO Greenbook (2011).***

Figure 3 – 4 Length of Sag Vertical Curve (Open Road Conditions)



Source: Figure 3-44 Design Controls for Sag Vertical Curves – Open Road Conditions, 2011 AASHTO Greenbook.

Lengths of sag vertical curves are computed from the formulas:

When S is less than L, $L=AS^2/(400 + 3.5S)$

When S is greater than L, $L=2S – ((400 + 3.5S)/A)$

L = Length of Sag Vertical Curve, feet
A = Algebraic Difference in Grades, percent
S = Light Beam Distance, feet

C.6 Alignment Coordination

Horizontal and vertical alignment should not be designed independently. Poor combinations can spoil the good points of a design. Properly coordinated horizontal and vertical alignment can improve appearance, enhance community values, increase safety, and encourage uniform speed. Coordination of horizontal and vertical alignment should begin with preliminary design, during which stage adjustments can be readily made.

Proper combinations of horizontal alignment and profile can be obtained by engineering study and consideration of the following general controls:

- Curvature and grades should be in proper balance. Tangent alignment or flat curvature with steep grades and excessive curvature with flat grades are both poor design. A logical design is a compromise between the two conditions. Wherever feasible the roadway should "roll with" rather than "buck" the terrain.
- Vertical curvature superimposed on horizontal curvature, or vice versa, generally results in a more pleasing facility, but it should be analyzed for effect on driver's view and operation. Changes in profile not in combination with horizontal alignment may result in a series of disconnected humps to the driver for some distance.
- Sharp horizontal curvature should not be introduced at or near the top of a pronounced crest vertical curve. Drivers cannot perceive the horizontal change in alignment, especially at night. This condition can be avoided by setting the horizontal curve so it leads the vertical curve or by making the horizontal curve longer. Suitable design can be made by using design values well above the minimums.
- Sharp horizontal curvature should not be introduced at or near the low point of a pronounced sag vertical curve to prevent an undesirable distorted appearance. Vehicle speeds are often high at the bottom of grades and erratic operation may result, especially at night.
- On divided highways, variation of the median width and the use of independent vertical and horizontal alignment should be considered. Where right of way is available, a superior design without significant additional costs can result from the use of independent alignment.
- Horizontal alignment and profile should be made as flat as possible at interchanges and intersections where sight distance along both highways is important. Sight distances above the minimum are desirable at these locations.

- Alignment should be designed to enhance scenic views for the motorists.
- In residential areas, the alignment should be designed to minimize nuisance to the neighborhood.

C.7 Cross Section Elements

The design of the street or highway cross section should be predicated upon the design speed, terrain, adjacent land use, classification, and the type and volume of traffic expected. The cross section selected should be uniform throughout a given length of street or highway without frequent or abrupt changes. See ***Chapter 4 – Roadside Design*** for design criteria for roadside design, clear zone, lateral offset, and roadside ditches located within the clear zone.

C.7.a Number of Lanes

The number of travel lanes is determined by several interrelated factors such as capacity, level of service, and service volume. Further information on determining the optimum number of travel lanes can be found in ***A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets (AASHTO, 2011***), and the ***Highway Capacity Manual (TRB, 2010***).

C.7.b Pavement

The paved surface of roadways shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the requirements set forth in ***Chapter 5 - Pavement Design and Construction***.

C.7.b.1 Pavement Width

Minimum lane widths for travel lanes, speed change lanes, turn lanes and passing lanes are provided in Table 3 – 20 Minimum Lane Widths. The table applies to both divided and undivided facilities. For Information on parking lanes, see Section C.7.h Parking of this Chapter.

On existing multilane curbed streets where there is insufficient space for a separate bicycle lane, consideration should be given to using unequal-width lanes. In such cases, the wider lane is located on the outside (right). This provides more space for large vehicles that usually occupy that lane, provides more space for bicycles, and allows drivers to keep their vehicles at a greater distance from the right edge. See ***Chapter 9 – Bicycle Facilities.***

Table 3 – 20 Minimum Lane Widths

Facility		ADT (vpd)	Design Speed (mph)	Lane Width – (feet)		
				Travel Lanes[1]	Turn Lanes[6] (LT/RT/MD)	Passing Lanes
Freeway	Rural	All	All	12	--	--
	Urban	All	All	12	--	--
Arterial	Rural	All	All	12[8]	12[9]	12[9]
	Urban	All	≥ 50	12	12	12
		All	≤ 45	11[3, 4]	11[3, 4, 7]	11[3, 4]
Collector	Rural	> 1500	All	12[8]	12[8]	12[9]
		401 to 1500	All	11[3, 4]	11[3, 4]	--
		≤ 400	≥ 50	11	11[7]	--
			≤ 45	10	10	--
	Urban	All	All	11[2, 3, 4]	11[2, 7]	--
Local	Rural	> 1500	All	12[8]	12[9]	12[9]
		401 to 1500	All	11[3, 4]	11[3, 4]	--
		≤ 400	≥ 55	11[3]	11[3, 4]	--
			45 to 50	10	10	--
			≤ 40	9	9	--
	Urban	All	All	10[2, 5]	10[8]	--
See Footnotes on next page						

Footnotes

1. A minimum traveled way width equal to the width of two adjacent travel lanes (one way or two way) shall be provided on all rural facilities.
2. In industrial areas and where truck volumes are significant, 12’ lanes should be provided, but may be reduced to 11’ where right of way is constrained.
3. In constrained areas where truck volumes are low and speeds are < 35 mph, 10’ lanes may be used.
4. On roadways with a transit route, a minimum of 11’ outside lane width is required.
5. In residential areas where right of way is severely limited, 9’ may be used.
6. Turn lane width in raised or grass medians shall not exceed 14’. Two-way left turn lanes should be 11 – 14’ wide and may only be used on 3- and 5-lane typical sections with design speeds ≤ 40 mph. On projects with right of way constraints, the minimum width may be reduced to 10’. Two-way left turn lanes shall include sections of raised or restrictive median for pedestrian refuge.
7. Turn Lane width should be same as Travel Lane width. May be reduced to 10’ where right of way is constrained.
8. Turn Lane width should be same as Travel Lane width. May be reduced to 9’ where truck volumes are low.
9. For design speeds below 50 mph, lane widths of 11 feet are acceptable.

C.7.b.2 Traveled Way Cross Slope (not in superelevation)

The selection of traveled way cross slope should be a compromise between meeting the drainage requirements and providing for smooth vehicle operation. The recommended traveled way cross slope is 0.02 feet per foot. When three lanes in each direction are necessary, the outside lane should have a cross slope of 0.03 feet per foot. The cross slope shall not be less than 0.015 feet per foot or greater than 0.04 feet per foot. The change in cross slope between adjacent through travel lanes should not exceed 0.04 feet per foot.

C.7.c Shoulders

The primary functions of a shoulder are to provide emergency parking for disabled vehicles and an alternate path for vehicles during avoidance or other emergency maneuvers. In order to fulfill these functions satisfactorily, the shoulder should have adequate stability and surface characteristics. The design and construction of shoulders shall be in accordance with the requirements given in ***Chapter 5 - Pavement Design and Construction.***

Shoulders should be provided on all streets and highways incorporating open drainage. The absence of a contiguous emergency travel or storage lane is not only undesirable from a safety standpoint, but also is disadvantageous from an operations viewpoint. Disabled vehicles that must stop in a through lane impose a severe safety hazard and produce a dramatic reduction in traffic flow. Shoulders should be free of abrupt changes in slope, discontinuities, soft ground, or other hazards that would prevent the driver from retaining or regaining vehicle control.

Paved outside shoulders are required for rural high speed multilane highways and freeways. They provide added safety to the motorist, public transit and pedestrians, for accommodation of bicyclists, reduced shoulder maintenance costs, and improved drainage

C.7.c.1 Shoulder Width

A shoulder is the portion of the roadway contiguous with the traveled way that accommodates stopped vehicles, emergency use, and provides lateral support of subbase, base and surface courses. In some cases, the shoulder may also accommodate pedestrians or bicyclists. Shoulders may be surfaced either full or partial width and include turf, gravel, shell, and asphalt or concrete pavements.

The minimum width of outside and median shoulders is provided in Table 3 – 21 Minimum Shoulder Widths for Flush Shoulder Highways. Shoulders for two-lane, two-way highways are based upon traffic volumes. Shoulder widths for multi-lane highways are based upon the number of travel lanes in each direction. Where bicyclists or pedestrians are to be accommodated on the shoulder, a minimum usable width of 4 feet is required (5 feet if adjacent to a barrier). On approaches to narrow bridges where the paved shoulder is reduced, the Department's ***Standard Plans Index 700-106*** provides information on signing and marking the approaching shoulder.

Table 3 – 21 Minimum Shoulder Widths for Flush Shoulder Highways

Two Lane Undivided

Design Speed (mph)	Average Daily Traffic (2 – Way)		
	0 - ≤400	401 - 750	>750 -
All	2 feet	6 feet	8 feet

Multilane Divided

Number of Lanes Each Direction	Shoulder Width (feet)			
	Outside		Median	
	Roadway	Bridge	Roadway	Bridge
2	8 (min.)	8	4 (min.)	4
3 or more	10 (min.)	10	6 (min.)	6

C.7.c.2 Shoulder Cross Slope

The shoulder serves as a continuation of the drainage system; therefore, the shoulder cross slope should be somewhat greater than the adjacent traffic lane. The cross slope of shoulders should be within the range given in Table 3 – 22 Shoulder Cross Slope.

Table 3 – 22 Shoulder Cross Slope

	Shoulder Type		
	Paved	**Gravel or Crushed Rock**	**Turf**
Shoulder Cross Slope (Percent)	2 to 6%	4 to 6%	6 to 8%

Notes: 1. Existing shoulder cross slope (paved and unpaved) ≤ 12% may remain.

Source – 2011 AASHTO Greenbook, Section 4.4.3 Shoulder Cross Sections.

Whenever possible, shoulders should be sloped away from the traveled way to aid in their drainage. The combination of shoulder cross slope and texture should be sufficient to promote rapid drainage and to avoid retention of surface water. The maximum algebraic difference between the traveled way and adjacent shoulder should not be greater than 0.07 feet per foot. Shoulders on the outside of superelevated curves should be rounded (vertical curve) to avoid an excessive break in cross slope and to divert a portion of the drainage away from the adjacent traveled way.

C.7.d Sidewalks

The design of sidewalks is affected by many factors, including traffic characteristics, pedestrian volume, roadway type, and other design elements. ***Chapter 8 - Pedestrian Facilities*** of this Manual and ***A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets (AASHTO, 2011)***, present the various factors that influence the design of sidewalks and other pedestrian facilities.

Sidewalks should be constructed in conjunction with new construction and major reconstruction in or within one mile of an urban area. As a general rule, sidewalks should be constructed on both sides of the roadway. Exceptions may be made where physical barriers (e.g., a canal paralleling one side of the roadway) would substantially reduce the expectation of pedestrian use of one side of the roadway. Also, if only one side is possible, sidewalks should be available on the same side of the road as transit stops or other pedestrian generators.

The decision to construct a sidewalk in a rural area should be based on engineering judgment, after observation of existing pedestrian traffic and expectation of additional demand, should a sidewalk be made available.

Sidewalks should be constructed as defined in this Manual. ***Chapter 8 – Pedestrian Facilities, Chapter 10 – Maintenance and Resurfacing*** and ***Section C.10.a.3 – Sidewalks and Curb Ramps*** of this chapter provide additional detailed information***.*** ***AASHTO's Guide for the Planning, Design and Operation of Pedestrian Facilities (2004)***, and ***Section 4.17.1 Sidewalks*** of ***AASHTO's Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets (2011)*** provide additional information.

The ***Highway Capacity Manual, Volume 3, Chapter 23, Off-Street Pedestrian and Bicycle Facilities*** ***(2010)*** includes further information on how optimal widths can be determined.

Curb ramps shall be provided at all intersections with curb (***Section 336.045 (3), Florida Statutes***). Each crossing should have separate curb ramps, perpendicular with the curb, and landing within the crosswalk.. In addition to the design criteria provided in this chapter, the ***2006 Americans with Disabilities Act Standards for Transportation Facilities*** as required by 49 C.F.R 37.41 or 37.43 and the ***2012 Florida Accessibility Code for Building Construction*** as required by 61G20-4.002 impose additional requirements for the design and construction of pedestrian facilities.

C.7.e Medians

Median separation of opposing traffic lanes provides a beneficial safety feature and should be used wherever feasible. Separation of the opposing traffic also reduces the problem of headlight glare, thus improving safety and comfort for night driving. When sufficient width of medians is available, some landscaping is also possible.

The use of medians often aids in the provision of drainage for the roadway surface, particularly for highways with six or more traffic lanes. The median also provides a vehicle refuge area, improves the safety of pedestrian crossings, provides a logical location for left turn auxiliary lanes, and provides the means for future addition of traffic lanes and mass transit. In many situations, the median strip aids in roadway delineation and the overall highway aesthetics.

Median separation is required on the following streets and highways:

- Freeways
- All streets and highways, rural and urban, with 4 or more travel lanes and with a design speed of 40 mph or greater

Median separation is desirable on all other multi-lane roadways to enhance pedestrian crossings.

The nature and degree of median separation required is dependent upon the design speed, traffic volume, adjacent land use, and the frequency of access. There are basically two approaches to median separation. The first is the use of horizontal separation of opposing lanes to reduce the probability of vehicles crossing the median into incoming traffic. The second method is to attempt to limit crossovers by introducing a positive median barrier structure.

In rural areas, the use of wide medians is not only aesthetically pleasing, but is often more economical than barriers. In urban areas where space and/or economic constraints are severe, the use of barriers is permitted to fulfill the requirements for median separation.

Uncurbed medians should be free of abrupt changes in slope, discontinuities, soft ground, or other hazards that would prevent the driver from retaining or regaining control of the vehicle. Consideration should be given to increasing the width and decreasing the slope of medians on horizontal curves. The requirements for a hazard free median environment are given in ***Chapter 4 - Roadside Design***, and shall be followed in the design and construction of medians.

C.7.e.1 Type of Median

A wide, gently depressed median is the preferred design. This type allows a reasonable vehicle recovery area and aids in the drainage of the adjacent shoulders and travel lanes. Where space and drainage limitations are severe, narrower medians, flush with the roadway, or raised medians, are permitted. Raised medians should be used to support pedestrian crossings of multi-laned streets and highways.

C.7.e.2 Median Width

The median width is defined as the horizontal distance between the inside (median) edge of travel lanes of the opposing roadways. The selection of the median width for a given type of street or highway is primarily dependent on design speed and traffic volume. Since the probability of crossover crashes is decreased by increasing the separation, medians should be as wide as practicable. Median widths in excess of 30 feet to 35 feet reduce the problem of disabling headlight glare from opposing traffic.

The minimum permitted widths of freeway medians are given in Table 3 – 23 Minimum Median Width. Where the expected traffic volume is heavy, the widths should be increased over these minimum values. Median barriers shall be used on freeways when these minimum values are not attainable.

The minimum permitted median widths for multi-lane rural highways are also given in Table 3 – 23 Minimum Median Width. On urban streets, the median widths shall not be less than the values given in Table 3 – 23. Where median openings or access points are frequent, the median width should be increased.

The minimum median widths given in these Tables may have to be increased to meet the requirements for cross slopes, drainage, and turning movements (C.9 Intersection Design, this chapter). The median area should also include adequate additional width to allow for expected additions of through lanes and left turn lanes. Where the median width is sufficient to produce essentially two separate, independent roadways, the left side of each roadway shall meet the requirements for roadside clear zone. Changes in the median width should be accomplished by gently flowing horizontal alignment of one or both of the separate roadways.

Table 3 – 23 Minimum Median Width

Type of Facility	**Width (feet)**
Freeways	
Freeways, Without Barrier	---
Design Speed ≥ 60 mph	60
Design Speed < 60 mph	40
All, With Barrier, All Design Speeds	26 [1]
Arterial and Collectors	
Design Speed ≥ 50 mph	40
Design Speed ≤ 45 mph	22 [2]
Paved and Painted for Left Turns	See Table 3 – 17 Minimum Lane Widths

Median width is the distance between the inside (median) edge of the travel lane of each roadway.

Footnotes:

1. Based on 2 ft. wide, concrete median barrier and 12 ft. shoulder.
2. On projects where right of way is constrained, the minimum width may be reduced to 19.5 ft. for design speeds = 45 mph, and to 15.5 ft. for design speeds ≤ 40 mph.

C.7.e.3 Median Slopes

A vehicle should be able to traverse a median without turning over and with sufficient smoothness to allow the driver a reasonable chance to control the vehicle. The transition between the median slope and the shoulder (or pavement) slope should be smooth, gently rounded, and free from discontinuities.

The median cross slope should not be steeper than1:6 (preferably not steeper than 1:10). The depth of depressed medians may be controlled by drainage requirements. Increasing the width of the median, rather than increasing the cross slope, is the proper method for developing the required median depth.

Longitudinal slopes (median profile parallel to the roadway) should be shallow and gently rounded at intersections of grade. The longitudinal slope, relative to the roadway slope, shall not exceed a ratio of 1:10 and preferably 1:20. The change in longitudinal slope shall not exceed 1:8 (change in grade of 12.5 %).

C.7.e.4 Median Barriers

See ***Chapter 4 – Roadside Design*** for criteria on median barriers. The ***AASHTO Roadside Design Guide*** provides additional information and guidelines on the use of median barriers.

C.7.f Islands

An island is a defined area between traffic lanes used for control of vehicle movements. Most islands combine two or more of these primary functions:

1. Channelization — To control and direct traffic movement, usually turning;

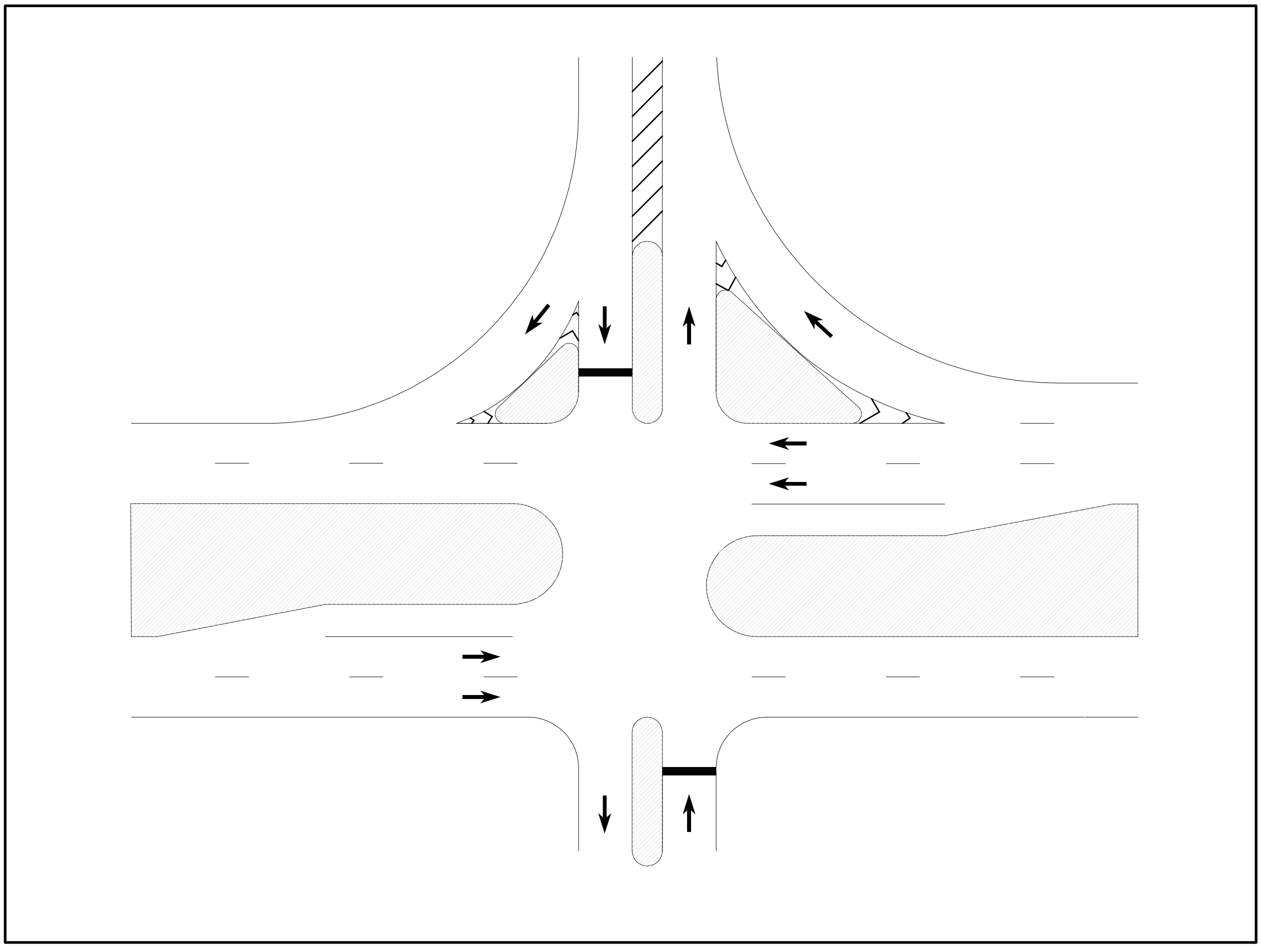
2. Division — To divide opposing or same direction traffic streams, usually through movements; and

3. Refuge — To provide refuge for pedestrians.

Islands generally are either elongated or triangular in shape and situated in areas unused for vehicle paths. Islands should be located and designed to offer little obstruction to vehicles and be commanding enough that motorists will not drive over them. The placement of mast arms in channelizing islands is discouraged. Mast arms are not permitted in median islands.

The dimensions and details depend on the intersection design as illustrated in Figure 3 – 5 General Types and Shapes of Islands and Medians. They should conform to the general principles that follow.

Figure 3 – 5 General Types and Shapes of Islands and Medians



Curbed islands are sometimes difficult to see at night. Where curbed islands are used, the intersection should have fixed–source lighting or appropriate delineation. Under certain conditions, painted, flush medians and islands or traversable type medians may be preferable to the raised curb type islands. These conditions include the following:

- Lightly developed areas that will not be considered for access management;
- Intersections where approach speeds are relatively high;
- Areas where there is little pedestrian traffic;
- Areas where fixed-source lighting is not provided;
- Median or corner islands where signals, signs, or luminaire supports are not needed; and
- Areas where extensive development exists and may demand left-turn lanes into many entrances.

Painted islands may be used at the traveled way edge. At some intersections, both curbed and painted islands may be desirable. All pavement markings should be reflectorized. The use of thermoplastic striping, raised dots, spaced and raised retroreflective markers, and other forms of long-life markings also may be desirable. See ***Section 9.6.3*** of the ***2011 AASHTO Greenbook*** and the ***MUTCD, Part 3*** for additional information on the design and marking of islands.

The central area of large channelizing islands in most cases has a turf or other vegetative cover. As space and the overall character of the highway determine, low plant material may be included, but it should not obstruct sight distance. Ground cover or plant growth, such as turf, vines, and shrubs, can be used for channelizing islands and provides excellent contrast with the paved areas, assuming the ground cover is cost-effective and can be properly maintained. The Department's ***Design Manual, Chapter 212 Intersections*** provides additional information on designing landscaping in medians or at intersections.

Small curbed islands may be mounded, but where pavement cross slopes are outward, large islands should be depressed to avoid draining water across the pavement. For small curbed islands and in areas where growing conditions are not favorable, some type of paved surface may be used on the island.

Careful consideration should be given to the location and type of plantings. Plantings, particularly in narrow islands, may create problems for maintenance activities. Plantings and other landscaping features in channelization areas may constitute roadside obstacles and should be consistent with the requirements in Section C.9.b Sight Distance. The ***AASHTO* Roadside Design Guide** ***(2011)*** provides additional information on landscaping of islands.

C.7.f.1 Channelizing Islands

Channelizing islands may be of many shapes and sizes, depending on the conditions and dimensions of the intersection. A common form is the corner triangular shape that separates right-turning traffic from through traffic. Central islands may serve as a guide around which turning vehicles operate.

Channelizing islands should be placed so that the proper course of travel is immediately obvious, easy to follow, and of unquestionable continuity. Where islands separate turning traffic from through traffic, the radii of curved portions should equal or exceed the minimum for the turning speeds expected. Curbed islands generally should not be used in rural areas and at isolated locations unless the intersection is lighted and curbs are delineated.

Islands should be sufficiently large to command attention, with 100 ft^2 preferred. The smallest curbed corner island should have an area of at least 50 ft^2 for urban and 75 ft^2 for rural intersections. A corner triangular island should be at least 15 feet on a side (12 ft. minimum) after the rounding of corners.

While mast arms are discouraged in channelizing islands, when they are used the minimum lateral offset as shown in Chapter 4, Roadside Design Table 4 – 2 Lateral Offset shall be provided. Mast arm foundation diameters vary from 3.5 feet to 5.0 feet. The minimum lateral offset for 45 mph and less should be based on minimum offset to a hazard from curb face – 4 feet standard, 1.5 feet absolute minimum.

Details of curbed corner island designs used in conjunction with turning roadways are shown in Figures 3 – 6 Channelization Island for Pedestrian Crossings (Curbed), 3 – 7 Details of Corner Island for Turning Roadways (Curbed) and 3 – 8 Details of Corner Island for Turning Roadways (Flush Shoulder). The approach corner of each curbed island is designed with an approach nose treatment.

Further information on the pavement markings that can be used with islands can be found in the Department's ***Standard Plans, Index 711-001***.

Figure 3 – 6 Channelization Island for Pedestrian Crossings (Curbed)

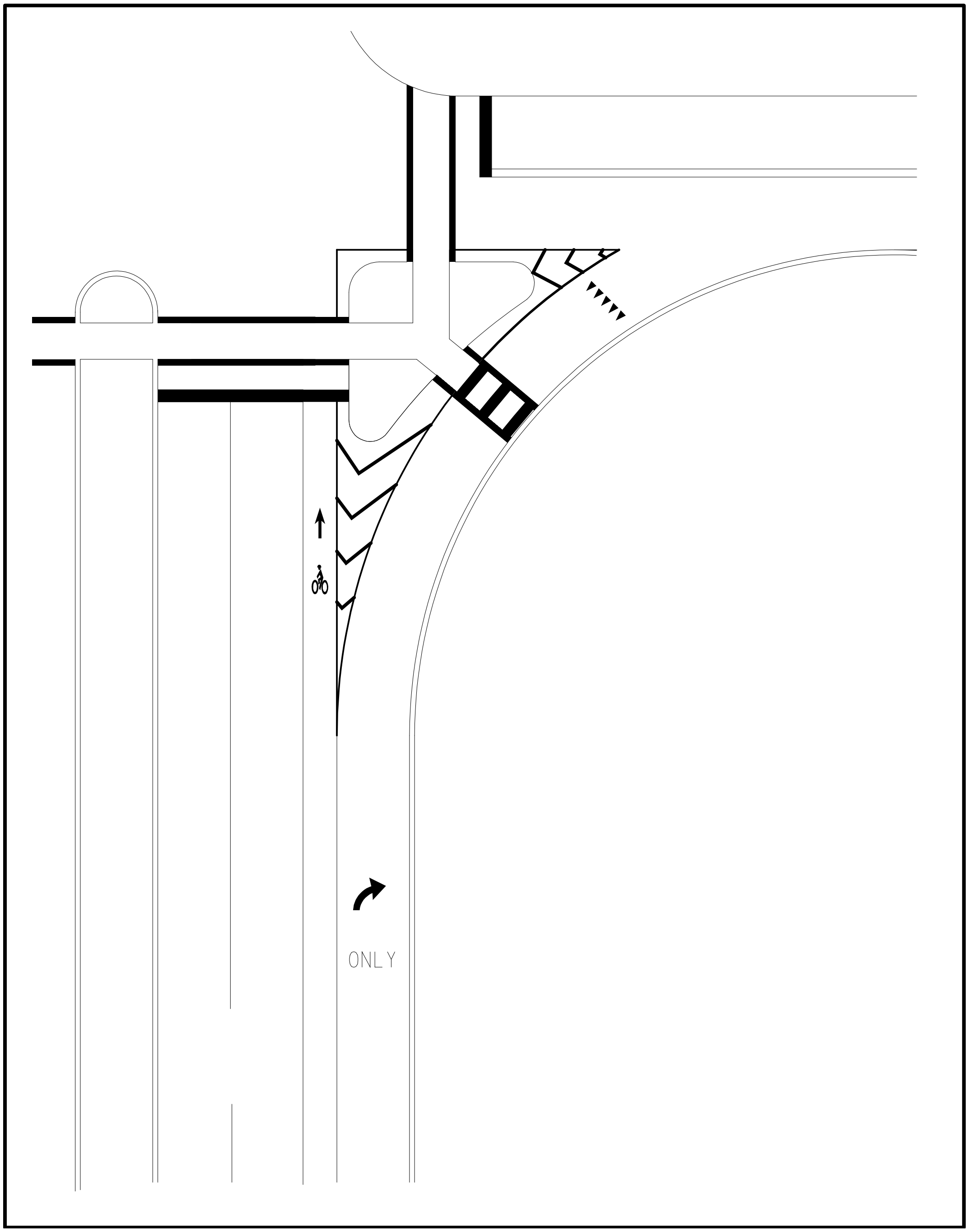
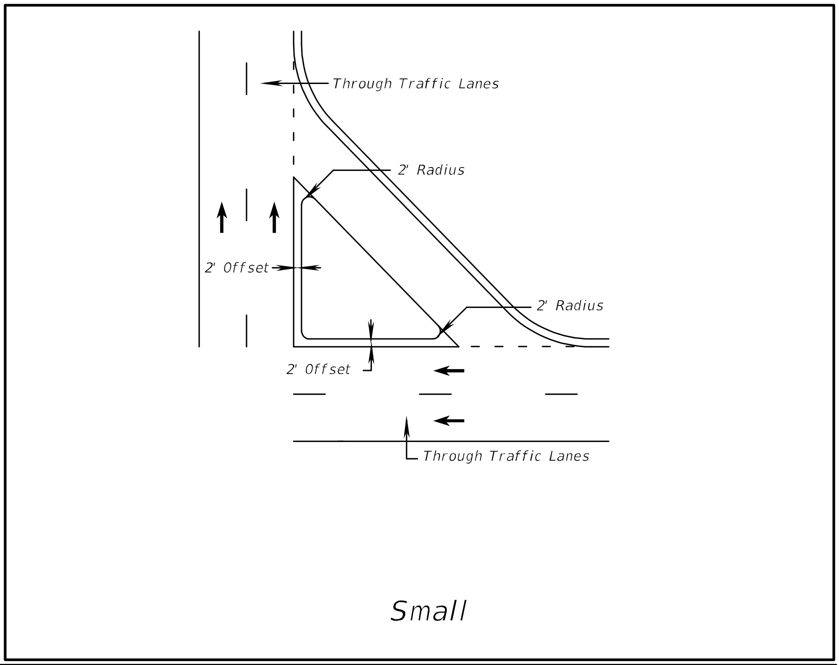


Figure 3 – 7 Details of Corner Island for Turning Roadways (Curbed)



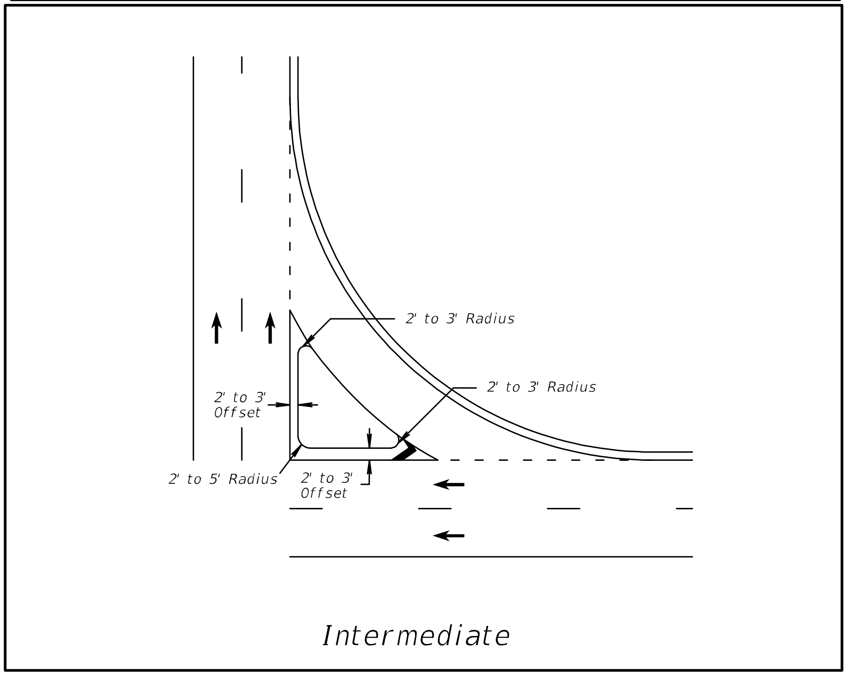
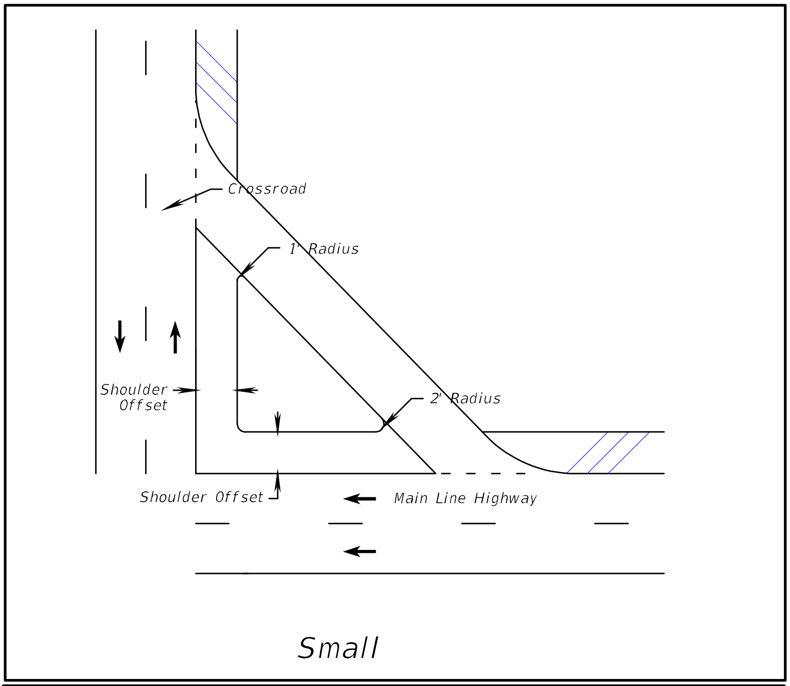
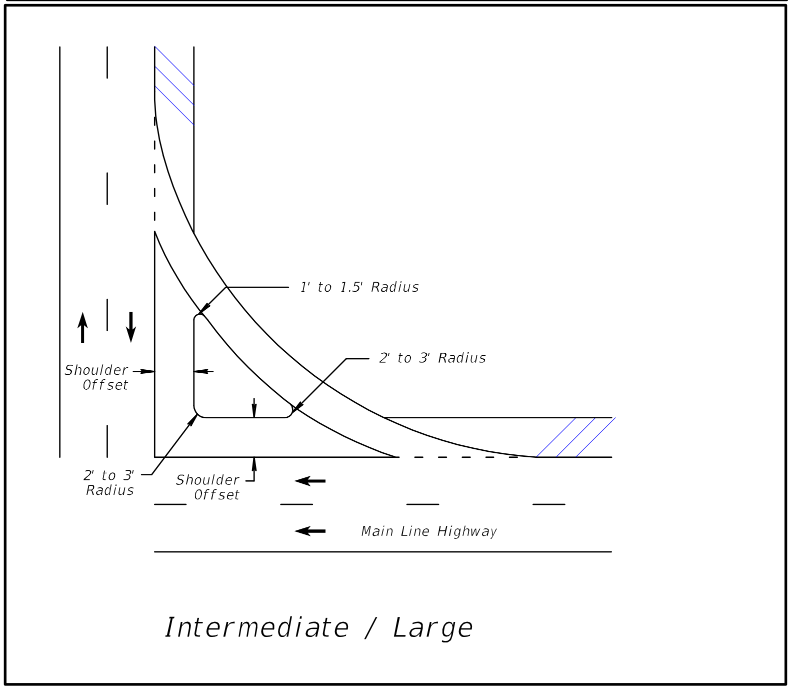


Figure 3 – 8 Details of Corner Island for Turning Roadways (Flush Shoulder)





C.7.f.2 Divisional Islands

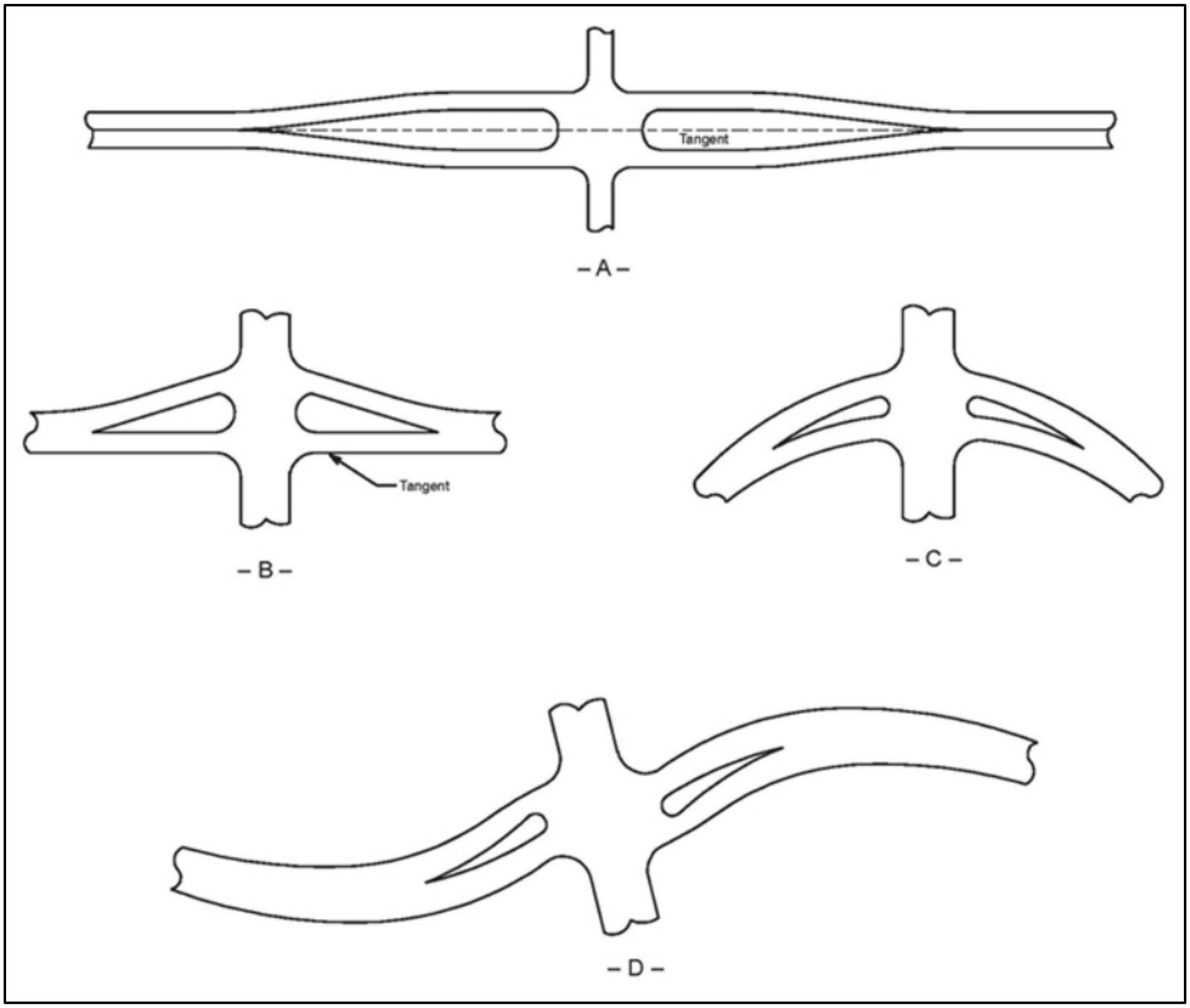
Divisional islands often are introduced on undivided highways at intersections. They alert drivers to the crossroad ahead and regulate traffic through the intersection. These islands are particularly advantageous in controlling left turns at skewed intersections and at locations where separate roadways are provided for right-turning traffic.

Widening a roadway to include a divisional island should be done in such a manner that the proper paths to follow are unmistakably evident to drivers. The alignment should require no appreciable conscious effort in vehicle steering.

Elongated or divisional islands should be not less than 4 feet wide and 20 to 25 feet long. In general, introducing curbed divisional islands at isolated intersections on high-speed highways is undesirable unless special attention is directed to providing high visibility for the islands. Curbed divisional islands introduced at isolated intersections on high-speed highways should be 100 feet or more in length. When situated in the vicinity of a high point in the roadway profile or at or near the beginning of a horizontal curve, the approach end of the curbed island should be extended to be clearly visible to approaching drivers.

Where an island is introduced at an intersection to separate opposing traffic on a four-lane road or on a major two-lane highway carrying high volumes, two full lanes should be provided on each side of the dividing island (particularly where future conversion to a wider highway is likely). In other instances, narrower roadways may be used. For moderate volumes, roadway widths shown under Case II (one-lane, one-way operation with provision for passing a stalled vehicle) in Table 3 - 34 Derived Pavement Widths for Turning Roadways for Different Design Vehicles are appropriate. For light volumes and where small islands are needed, widths on each side of the island corresponding to Case I in Table 3 – 34 may be used.

Figure 3 – 9 Alignment for Divisional Islands at Intersections



C.7.f.3 Refuge Islands

A refuge island for pedestrians at or near a crosswalk or shared use path crossing aids pedestrians and bicyclists who cross the roadway. Raised-curb corner islands and center channelizing or divisional islands can be used as refuge areas. Refuge islands for pedestrians and bicyclists crossing a wide street, for loading or unloading transit riders, or for wheelchair ramps are used primarily in urban areas. Figure 3 – 10 Pedestrian Refuge Island, Figure 3 – 11 Pedestrian

Crossing with Refuge Island (Yield Condition), and Figure 3 – 12 Pedestrian Crossing with Refuge Island (Stop Condition) show divisional islands that support a midblock crosswalk with stop and yield conditions. The distance A shown in the figures is based upon the ***MUTCD***, and shown following the figures.

The location and width of crosswalks, the location and size of transit loading zones, and the provision of curb ramps influence the size and location of refuge islands. Refuge islands should be a minimum of 6 feet wide. Pedestrians and bicyclists should have a clear path through the island and should not be obstructed by poles, sign posts, utility boxes, etc. Sidewalk and shared use path curb ramps in islands shall meet the requirements found in ***Section C.10.a.4*** of this chapter and ***Chapter 8 – Pedestrian Facilities.*** Curb ramps that are part of a shared use path shall also meet the requirements of ***Chapter 9 – Bicycle Facilities.***

Figure 3 – 10 Pedestrian Refuge Island

North Main Street, Gainesville, FL

Figure 3 – 11 Pedestrian Crossing with Refuge Island (Yield Condition)

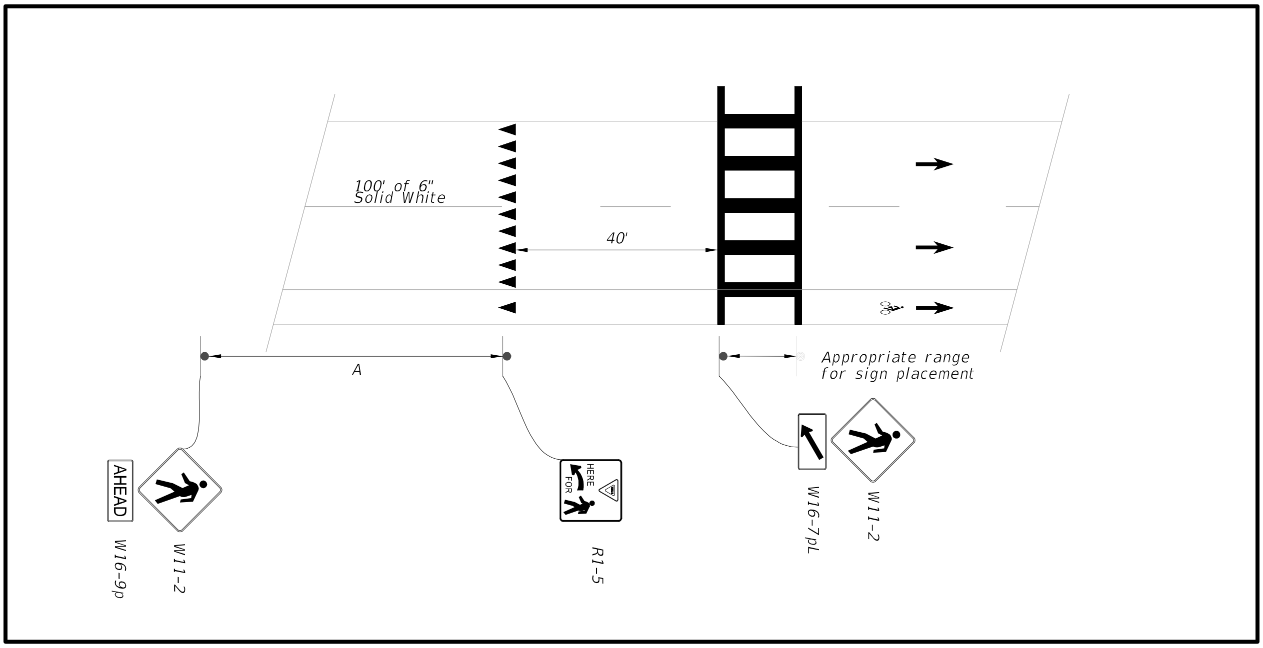
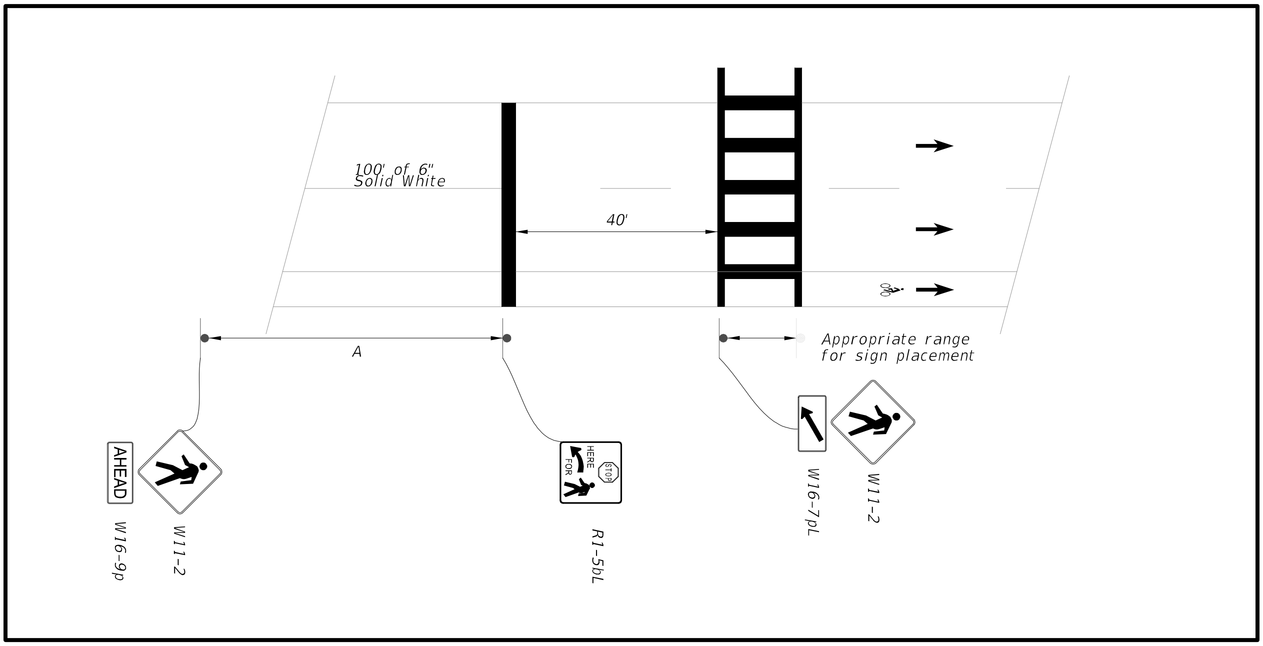


Figure 3 – 12 Pedestrian Crossing with Refuge Island (Stop Condition)



Note: 1. See following page for distance A.

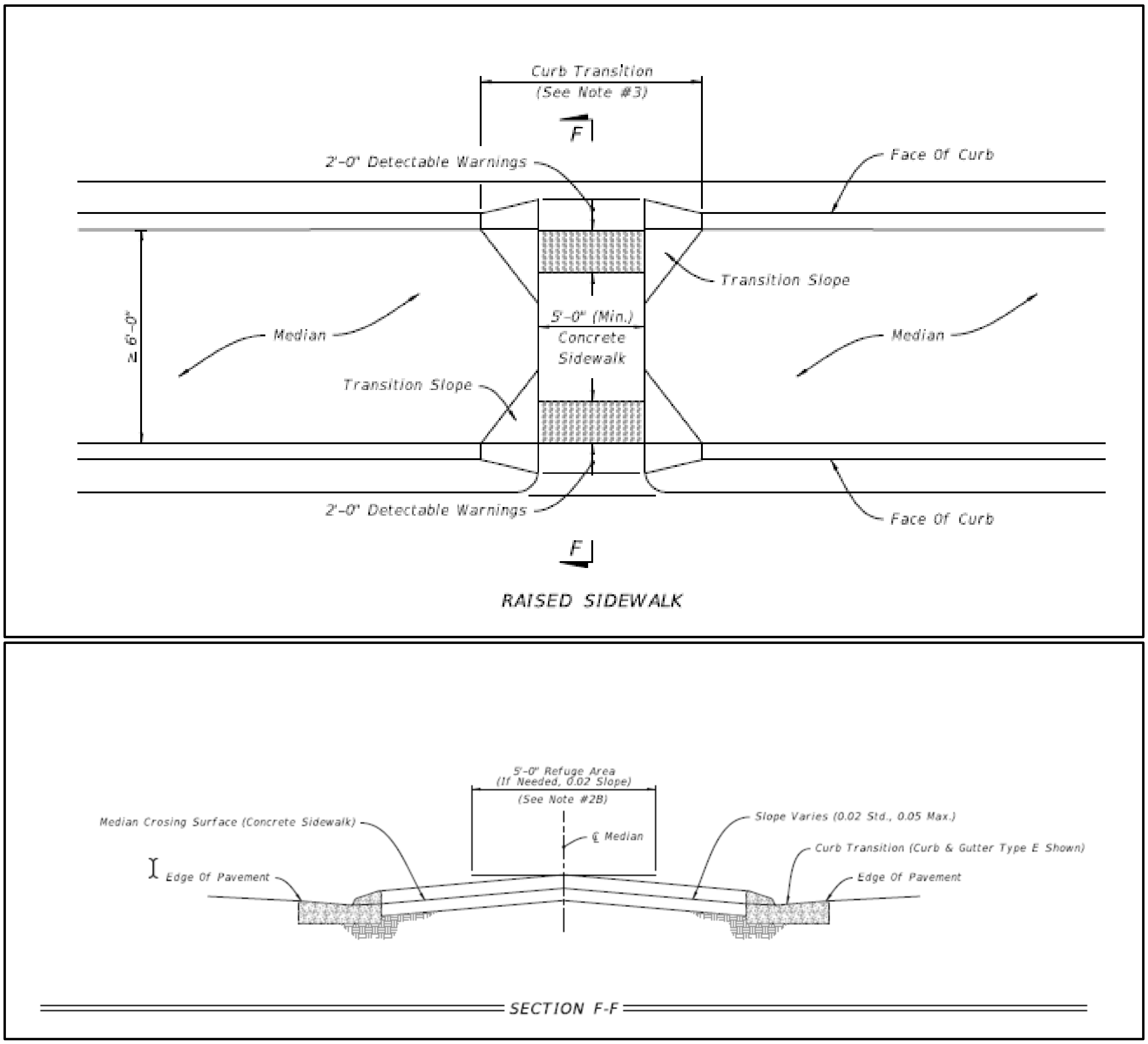
The distance A shown in Figures 3 – 11 and 3 – 12 for the advance warning sign should be:

Posted Speed (mph)	**Advance Placement Distance (feet)**
25 or Less	100
26 to 35	100
36 to 45	175

Source: 2009 MUTCD, with 2012 Revisions, Table 2C-4. Guidelines for Advance Placement of Warning Signs. Typical condition is the warning of a potential stop condition.

An example of a pedestrian crossing through a refuge island is shown in Figure 3 – 13 Pedestrian Crossing in Refuge Island. Other options are shown in the Department's ***Standard Plans 522-002 Detectable Warnings and Sidewalk Curb Ramps***.

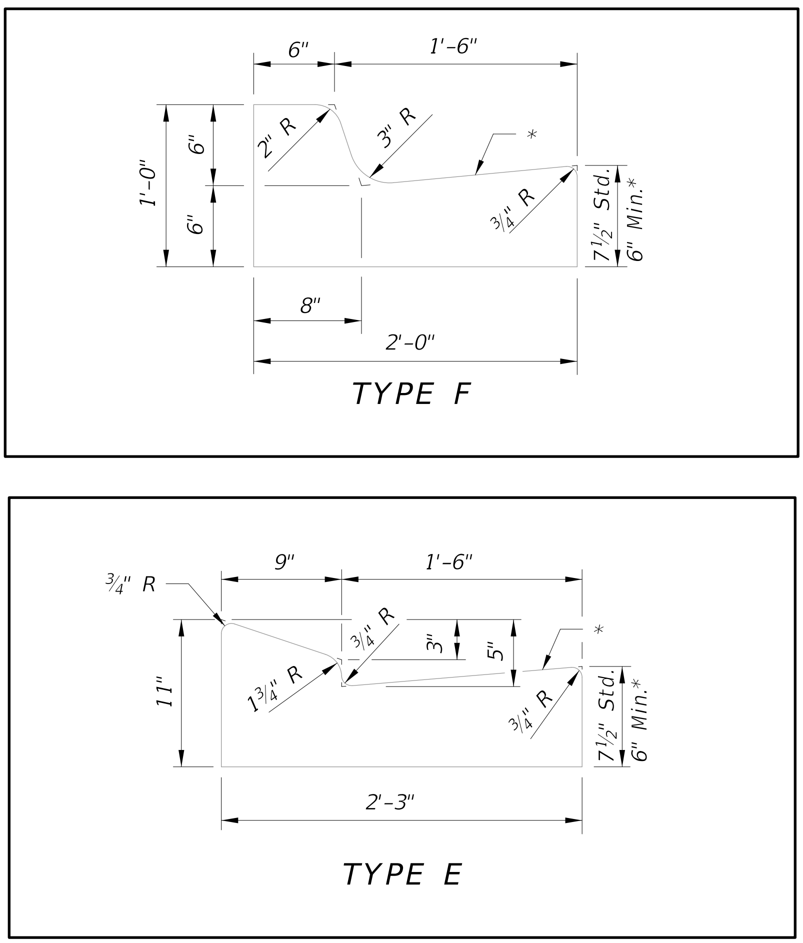
Figure 3 – 13 Pedestrian Crossing in Refuge Island



C.7.g Curbs

Curbs may be used to provide drainage control and to improve delineation of the roadway. Curbs are generally designed with a gutter to form a combination curb and gutter section. . In Florida, the standard curb of this type is 6 inches in height. See Figure 3 – 14 Standard Detail for FDOT Type F and E Curbs for examples of sloping curbs. These curbs are not to be used on facilities with design speeds greater than 45 mph. See ***Chapter 4 – Roadside Design*** for additional design criteria on the use of curbs.

Figure 3 – 14 Standard Detail for FDOT Type F and E Curbs



C.7.h Parking

When on-street parking is to be an element of design, parallel parking should be considered. Under certain circumstances, angle parking is an allowable form of street parking. The type of on-street parking selected should depend on the specific function and width of the street, the adjacent land use, traffic volume, as well as existing and anticipated traffic operations. On-street parking is allowed on facilities with posted speeds of 35 mph or less.

It can generally be stated that on-street parking decreases through capacity, impedes traffic flow, and increases crash potential. However, where parking is needed, and adequate off-street parking facilities are not available or feasible, on-street parking may be necessary.

C.7.i Right of Way

The acquisition of sufficient right of way is necessary in order to provide space for a safe street or highway. The width of the right of way required depends on the design of the roadway, the arrangement of bridges, underpasses and other structures, and the need for cuts or fills. The right of way acquired should be sufficient to:

- Allow development of the full cross section, including adequate medians and roadside clear zones. Determination of the necessary width requires that adequate consideration also be given to the accommodation of utility poles beyond the clear zone.
- Allow the layout of safe intersections, interchanges, and other access points.
- Allow adequate sight distance at all points, particularly on horizontal curves, at an intersection, and other access points.
- Allow, where appropriate, additional buffer zones to improve roadside safety, noise attenuation, and the overall aesthetics of the street or highway.
- Allow adequate space for placement of pedestrian and bicycle facilities, including curb ramps, bus bays, and transit shelters, where applicable.

- Allow for future lane additions, increases in cross section, or other improvement. Frontage roads should also be considered in the ultimate development of many high volume facilities.
- Allow treatment of stormwater runoff.
- Allow for construction of future intersection improvements, such as turn lanes, bicycle and pedestrian facilities or over and underpasses.
- Allow corner cuts for upstream corner crossing drainage systems and placement of poles, boxes, and other visual screens out of the critical sight triangle.
- Allow landscaping and irrigation as required for the project.

The acquisition of wide rights of way is costly, but it may be necessary to allow the construction and future improvement of safe streets and highways. The minimum right of way should be at least 50 feet for all two-lane roads. For pre-existing conditions, when the existing right of way is less than 50 feet, efforts should be made to acquire the necessary right of way.

Local cul-de-sac and dead end streets having an ADT of less than or equal to 400 and a length of 600 feet or less, may utilize a right of way of less than 50 feet, if all elements of the typical section meet the standards included in this Manual.

The right of way for frontage roads may be reduced depending on the typical section requirements and the ability to share right of way with the adjacent street or highway facility.

C.7.j Changes in Typical Section

C.7.j.1 General Criteria

Changes in cross section should be avoided. When changes in widths, slopes, or other elements are necessary, they should be affected in a smooth, gradual fashion.

C.7.j.2 Lane Deletions and Additions

The addition or deletion of traffic or bicycle lanes should be undertaken on tangent sections of roadways. The approach to lane deletions and additions should have ample advance warning and sight distance.

The termination of lanes (including auxiliary lanes) shall meet the general requirements for merging lanes. See Section C.9.c.1 for additional information.

Where additional lanes are intermittently provided on two-lane, two-way highways, median separation should be considered.

C.7.j.3 Preferential Lanes

To increase the efficiency and separation of different vehicle movements, preferential use lanes, such as bike lanes and bus lanes, should be considered. These lanes are often an enhancement to corridor safety and increase the horizontal clearance to roadside aboveground fixed objects. The ***MUTCD, Chapter 3D*** provides further information on preferential lane markings. See ***Chapter 9 – Bicycle Facilities*** for information on marking bicycle lanes.

C.7.j.4 Structures

The pavement, median, and shoulder width, and sidewalks should be carried across structures such as bridges and box culverts. Shoulder widths for multi-lane rural divided highway bridges may be reduced as shown in Table 3 – 20 Minimum Shoulder Widths for Flush Shoulder Rural Highways. The designer should evaluate the economic practicality of utilizing dual versus single bridges for roadway sections incorporating wide medians.

The minimum roadway width for bridges on urban streets with curb and gutter shall be the same as the curb-to-curb width of the approach roadway. Sidewalks on the approaches should be carried across all structures. Curbed sidewalks should not be used adjacent to traffic lanes when design speeds exceed 45 mph. When the bridge rail (barrier wall) is placed between the traffic and sidewalk, it should be offset a minimum distance of 2½ feet from the edge of the travel lane, wide curb lane or bicycle lane. For long (500 feet or greater), and/or high level bridges, it is desirable to provide an offset distance that will accommodate a disabled vehicle. The transition from the bridge to the adjacent roadway section may be made by dropping the curb at the first intersection or well in advance of the traffic barrier, or reducing the curb in front of the barrier to a low sloping curb with a gently sloped traffic face. See ***Chapter 17 – Bridges and Other Structures*** for additional requirements.

C.7.j.4.(a) Lateral Offset

Supports for bridges, barriers, or other structures should be placed at or beyond the required shoulder. Where possible, these structures should be located outside of the required clear zone. See ***Chapter 4 – Roadside Design*** for additional information on lateral offsets for structures.

C.7.j.4.(b) Vertical Clearance

Vertical clearance should be adequate for the type of expected traffic. Freeways and arterials shall have a vertical clearance of at least 16 feet-6 inches (includes 6 inch allowance for future resurfacing). Other streets and highways should have a clearance of 16 feet unless the provision of a reduced clearance is fully justified by a specific analysis of the situation (14 feet minimum). The minimum vertical clearance for a pedestrian or shared use bridge over a roadway is 17 feet. The minimum vertical clearance for a bridge over a railroad is 23 feet; however additional clearance may be required by the rail owner.

C.7.j.4.(c) End Treatment

The termini of guardrails, bridge railings, abutments, and other structures should be constructed to protect vehicles and their occupants from serious impact. Requirements for end treatment of structures are given in ***Chapter 4 - Roadside Design***.

C.8 Access Control

All new facilities (and existing when possible) should have some degree of access control, since each point of access produces a traffic conflict. The control of access is one of the most effective, efficient, and economical methods for improving the capacity and safety characteristics of streets and highways. The reduction of the frequency of access points and the restriction of turning and crossing maneuvers, which should be primary objectives, is accomplished more effectively by the design of the roadway geometry than by the use of traffic control devices. Design criteria for access points are presented under the general requirements for intersection design.

Additional information on access management can be found in ***Rule Chapter 14-97 State Highway System Access Control Classification System, Florida Administrative Code.*** The ***Department's Driveway Information Guide (2008)*** and ***Median Handbook (2014)*** provide further information on designing roadways and connections to support access management.

C.8.a Justification

The justification for control of access should be based on several factors, including safety, capacity, economics, and aesthetics.

C.8.b General Criteria

C.8.b.1 Location of Access Points

All access locations should have adequate sight distance available for the safe execution of entrance, exit, and crossing maneuvers.

Locations of access points near structures, decision points, or the termination of street or highway lighting should be avoided.

Driveways should not be placed within the influence zone of intersections or other points that would tend to produce traffic conflict.

C.8.b.2 Spacing of Access Points

The spacing of access points should be adequate to prevent conflict or mutual interference of traffic flow.

Separation of entrance and exit ramps should be sufficient to provide adequate distance for required weaving maneuvers.

Adequate spacing between access and decision points is necessary to avoid burdening the driver with the need for rapid decisions or maneuvers.

Frequent median openings should be avoided.

The use of a frontage road or other auxiliary roadways is recommended on arterials and higher classifications where the need for direct driveway or minor road access is frequent.

C.8.b.3 Restrictions of Maneuvers

Where feasible, the number and type of permitted maneuvers (crossing, turning slowing, etc.) should be restricted.

The restriction of crossing maneuvers may be accomplished by the use of grade separations and continuous raised medians.

The restriction of left turns is achieved most effectively by continuous medians.

Channelization should be considered for the purposes of guiding traffic flow and reducing vehicle conflicts.

C.8.b.4 Auxiliary Lanes

Deceleration lanes for right turn exits (and left turns, where permitted) should be provided on all high-speed facilities. These turn lanes should not be excessive or continuous, since they complicate pedestrian crossings and bicycle/motor vehicle movements.

Storage (or deceleration lanes) to protect turning vehicles should be provided, particularly where turning volumes are significant.

Special consideration should be given to the provisions for deceleration, acceleration, and storage lanes in commercial or industrial areas with significant truck/bus traffic.

C.8.b.5 Grade Separation

Grade separation interchange design should be considered for junctions of high volume arterial streets and highways.

Grade separation (or an interchange) should be utilized when the expected traffic volume exceeds the intersection capacity.

Grade separation should be considered to eliminate conflict or long waiting periods at potentially hazardous intersections.

C.8.b.6 Roundabouts

Roundabouts have proven safety and operational characteristics and should be evaluated as an alternative to conventional intersections whenever practical. Modern roundabouts, when correctly designed, are a proven safety countermeasure to conventional intersections, both stop controlled and signalized. In addition, when constructed in appropriate locations, drivers will experience less delay with modern roundabouts. ***NCHRP Report 672 Roundabouts: An Informational Guide***, is adopted by FHWA and establishes criteria and procedures for the justification, operational and safety analysis of modern roundabouts in the United States. The modern roundabout is characterized by the following:

- A central island of sufficient diameter to accommodate vehicle tracking and to provide sufficient deflection to promote lower speeds
- Entry is by gap acceptance through a yield condition at all legs
- Speeds through the intersection of 20 - 25 mph.
- Single or multilane configurations.

Roundabouts should be considered under the following conditions:

1. New construction
2. Reconstruction
3. Traffic Operations improvements
4. Resurfacing (3R) with Right of Way acquisition
5. Need to reduce frequency and severity of crashes

C.8.c Control for All Limited Access Highways

Entrances and exits on the right side only are highly desirable for all limited access highways. Acceleration and deceleration lanes are mandatory. Intersections shall be accomplished by grade separation (interchange) and should be restricted to connect with arterials or collector roads.

The control of access on freeways should conform to the requirements given in Table 3 – 24 Access Control for All Limited Access Highways. The spacing of exits and entrances should be increased wherever possible to reduce conflicts. Safety and capacity characteristics are improved by restricting the number and increasing the spacing of access points.

Table 3 – 24 Access Control for All Limited Access Highways

	Urban	**Rural**
Minimum Spacing		
Interchanges	1 to 3 miles	3 to 25 miles
Maneuver Restrictions		
Crossing Maneuvers	Via Grade Separation Only	
Exit and Entrance	From Right Side Only	
Turn Lane Required	Acceleration Lane at all Entrances Deceleration Lane at all Exits	

C.8.d Control of Urban and Rural Streets and Highways

The design and construction of urban, as well as rural, highways should be governed by the general criteria for access control previously outlined. In addition, the design of urban streets should be in accordance with the criteria listed below:

- The general layout of local and collector streets should follow a branching network, rather than a highly interconnected grid pattern.
- The street network should be designed to reduce, consistent with origin/destination requirements, the number of crossing and left turn maneuvers.
- The design of the street layout should be predicated upon reducing the need for traffic signals.
- The use of a public street or highway as an integral part of the internal circulation pattern for commercial property should be discouraged.
- The number of driveway access points should be restricted as much as possible through areas of strip development.

- Special consideration should be given to providing turn lanes (auxiliary lane for turning maneuvers) where the total volume or truck/bus volume is high.
- Major traffic generators may be exempt from the restrictions on driveway access if the access point is designed as a normal intersection adequate to handle the expected traffic volume.

These are minimum requirements only; it is generally desirable to use more stringent criteria for control of access.

The design of rural highways should be in accordance with the general criteria for access control for urban streets. The use of acceleration and deceleration lanes on all high-speed highways, particularly if truck and bus traffic is significant, is strongly recommended.

C.8.e Land Development

It should be the policy of each agency with responsibility for street and highway design, construction, or maintenance to promote close liaison with utility, lawmaking, zoning, building, and planning agencies. Cooperation should be solicited in the formulation of laws, regulations, and master plans for land use, zoning, and road construction. Further requirements and criteria for access control and land use relationships are given in ***Chapter 2 - Land Development***.

C.9 Intersection Design

Intersections increase traffic conflicts and the demands on the driver, and are inherently hazardous locations. The design of an intersection should be predicated on reducing motor vehicle, bicycle, and pedestrian conflicts, minimizing the confusion and demands on the driver for rapid and/or complex decisions, and providing for smooth traffic flow. The location and spacing of intersections should follow the requirements presented in Section C.8 Access Control, this chapter. Intersections should be designed to minimize time and distance of all who pass through or turn at an intersection.

The additional effort and expense required to provide a high quality intersection is justified by the corresponding safety benefits. The overall reduction in crash potential derived from a given expenditure for intersection improvements is generally much greater than the same expenditure for improvements along an open roadway. Properly designed intersections increase capacity, reduce delays, and improve safety.

One of the most common deficiencies that may be easy to correct is lack of adequate left turn storage.

The requirements and design criteria contained in this section are applicable to all driveways, intersections, and interchanges. All entrances to, exits from, or interconnections between streets and highways are subject to these design standards.

C.9.a General Criteria

The layout of a given intersection may be influenced by constraints unique to a particular location or situation. The design shall conform to sound principles and criteria for safe intersections. The general criteria include the following:

- The layout of the intersection should be as simple as is practicable. Complex intersections, which tend to confuse and distract the driver, produce inefficient and hazardous operations.
- The intersection arrangement should not require the driver to make rapid or complex decisions.

- The layout of the intersection should be clear and understandable so a proliferation of signs, signals, or markings is not required to adequately inform and direct the driver.
- The design of intersections, particularly along a given street or highway, should be as consistent as possible.
- The approach roadways should be free from steep grades and sharp horizontal or vertical curves.
- Intersections with driveways or other roadways should be as close to right angle as possible.
- Adequate sight distance should be provided to present the driver a clear view of the intersection and to allow for safe execution of crossing and turning maneuvers.
- The design of all intersection elements should be consistent with the design speeds of the approach roadways.
- The intersection layout and channelization should encourage smooth flow and discourage wrong way movements.
- Special attention should be directed toward the provision of safe roadside clear zones.
- The provision of auxiliary lanes should be in conformance with the criteria set forth in Section C.8 Access Control, this chapter.
- The requirements for bicycle and pedestrian movements should receive special consideration.

C.9.b Sight Distance

Inadequate sight distance is a contributing factor in the cause of a large percentage of intersection crashes. The provision of adequate sight distance at intersections is absolutely essential and should receive a high priority in the design process.

C.9.b.1 General Criteria

General criteria to be followed in the provision of sight distance include the following:

- Sight distance exceeding the minimum stopping sight distance should be provided on the approach to all intersections (entrances, exits, stop signs, traffic signals, and intersecting roadways). The use of proper approach geometry free from sharp horizontal and vertical curvature will normally allow for adequate sight distance.
- The approaches to exits or intersections (including turn, storage, and deceleration lanes) should have adequate sight distance for the design speed and also to accommodate any allowed lane change maneuvers.
- Adequate sight distance should be provided on the through roadway approach to entrances (from acceleration or merge lanes, stop or yield signs, driveways or traffic signals) to provide capabilities for defensive driving. This lateral sight distance should include as much length of the entering lane or intersecting roadway as is feasible. A clear view of entering vehicles is necessary to allow through traffic to aid merging maneuvers and to avoid vehicles that have "run" or appear to have the intention of running stop signs or traffic signals.
- Approaches to school or pedestrian crossings and crosswalks should have sight distances exceeding the minimum values. This should also include a clear view of the adjacent pedestrian pathways or shared use paths.
- Sight distance in both directions should be provided for all entering roadways (intersecting roadways and driveways) to allow entering vehicles to avoid through traffic. See Section C.9.B.4 for further information.
- Safe stopping sight distances shall be provided throughout all intersections, including turn lanes, speed change lanes, and turning roadways.
- The use of lighting (***Chapter 6 – Lighting***) should be considered to improve intersection sight distance for night driving.

C.9.b.2 Obstructions to Sight Distance

The provisions for sight distance are limited by the street or highway geometry and the nature and development of the area adjacent to the roadway. Where line of sight is limited by vertical curvature or obstructions, stopping sight distance shall be based on the eye height of 3.50 feet and an object height of 2.0 feet. At exits or other locations where the driver may be uncertain as to the roadway alignment, a clear view of the pavement surface should be provided. At locations requiring a clear view of other vehicles or pedestrians for the safe execution of crossing or entrance maneuvers, the sight distance should be based on a driver's eye height of 3.50 feet and an object height of 3.00 feet (preferably 1.50 feet). The height of eye for truck traffic may be increased for determination of line of sight obstructions for intersection maneuvers. Obstructions to sight distance at intersections include the following:

- Any property not under the highway agency's jurisdiction, through direct ownership or other regulations, should be considered as an area of potential sight distance obstruction. Based on the degree of obstruction, the property should be considered for acquisition by deed or easement.
- Areas which contain vegetation (trees, shrubbery, grass, etc.) that cannot easily be trimmed or removed by regular maintenance activity should be considered as sight obstructions.
- Parking lanes shall be considered as obstructions to line of sight. Parking shall be prohibited within clear areas required for sight distance at intersections.
- Large (or numerous) poles or support structures for lighting, signs, signals, or other purposes that significantly reduce the field of vision within the limits of clear sight shown in Figure 3 – 16 Departure Sight Triangle in Section C.9.b.4. may constitute sight obstructions. Potential sight obstructions created by poles, supports, and signs near intersections should be carefully investigated.

In order to ensure the provision for adequate intersection sight distance, on-site inspections should be conducted before and after construction, including placement of signs, lighting, guardrails, or other objects and how they impact intersection sight distance.

C.9.b.3 Stopping Sight Distance

The provision for safe stopping sight distance at intersections and on turning roadways is even more critical than on open roadways. Vehicles are more likely to be traveling in excess of the design or posted speed and drivers are frequently distracted from maintaining a continuous view of the upcoming roadway.

C.9.b.3.(a) Approach to Stops

The approach to stop signs, yield signs, or traffic signals should be provided with a sight distance no less than values given in Table 3 – 25 Minimum Stopping Sight Distance (Rounded Values). These values are applicable for any street, highway, or turning roadway. The driver should, at this required distance, have a clear view of the intersecting roadway, as well as the sign or traffic signal.

Where the approach roadway is on a grade or vertical curve, the sight distance should be no less than the values shown in Figure 3 – 15 Sight Distances for Approach to Stop on Grades. In any situation where it is feasible, sight distances exceeding those should be provided. This is desirable to allow for more gradual stopping maneuvers and to reduce the likelihood of vehicles running through stop signs or signals. Advance warnings for stop signs are desirable.

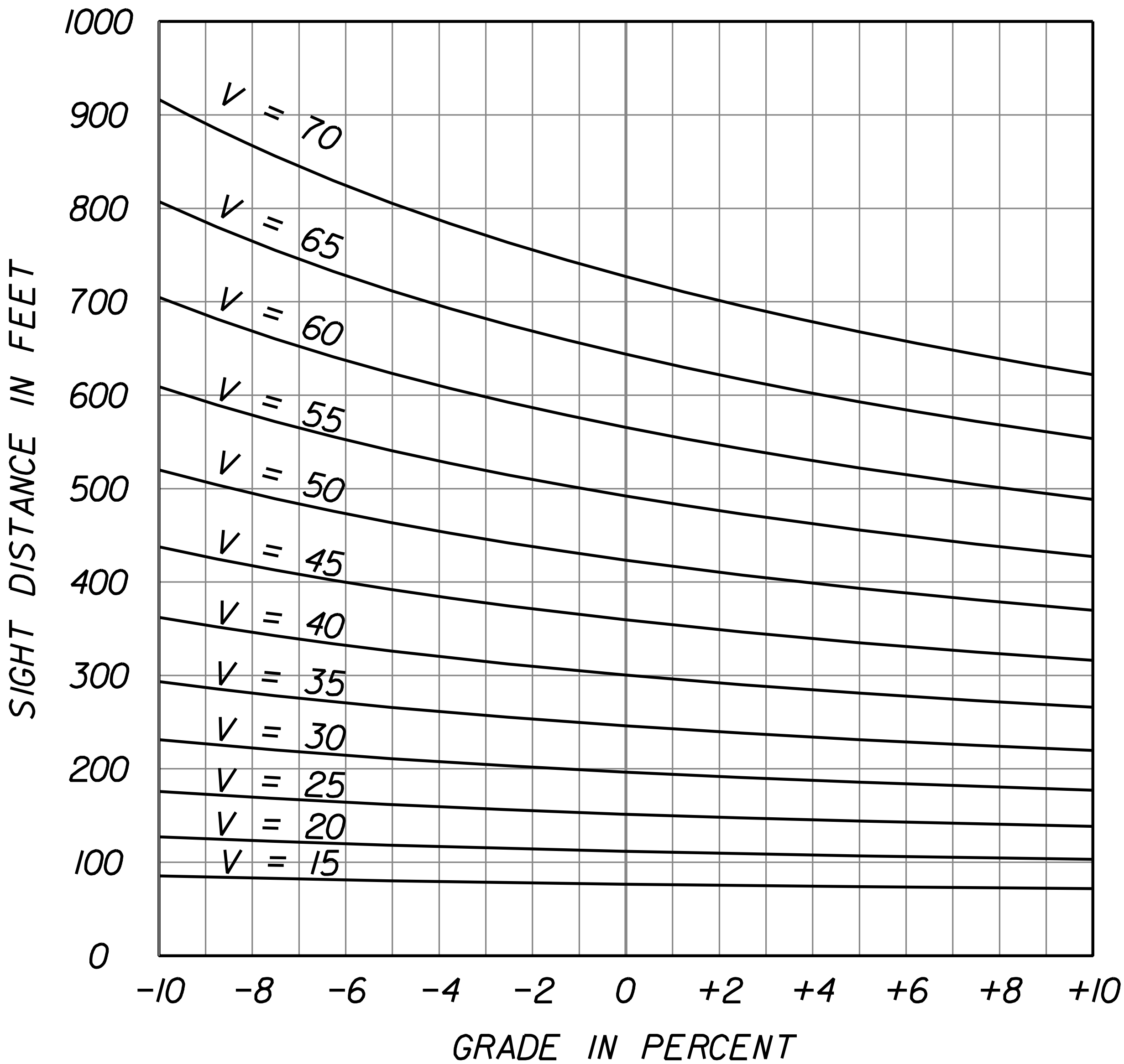
Table 3 – 25 Minimum Stopping Sight Distance (Rounded Values)

Design Speed (mph)	20	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60	65	70
Stopping Sight Distance (feet)	115	155	200	250	305	360	425	495	570	645	730

C.9.b.3.(b) On Turning Roads

The required stopping sight distance at any location on a turning roadway (loop, exit, etc.) shall be based on the design speed at that point. Ample sight distance should be provided since the driver is burdened with negotiating a curved travel path and the available friction factor for stopping has been reduced by the roadway curvature. The minimum sight distance values are given in Table 3 – 25 Minimum Stopping Sight Distance (Rounded Values) or Figure 3 – 15 Sight Distances for Approach to Stop on Grades. Due to the inability of vehicle headlights to adequately illuminate a sharply curved travel path, roadway lighting should be considered for turning roadways.

Figure 3 – 15 Sight Distances for Approach to Stop on Grades



$$S = 3.675V + \frac{V^2}{30(0.3478 \pm G)}$$

S = Sight Distance
V = Design Speed
G = Grade

C.9.b.4 Sight Distance for Intersection Maneuvers

Sight distance is also provided at intersections to allow the drivers of stopped vehicles a sufficient view of the intersecting street or highway to decide when to enter or cross the intersecting street or highway. Sight triangles, which are specified areas along intersection approach legs and across their included corners, shall, where practical, be clear of obstructions that would prohibit a driver's view of potentially conflicting vehicles. Departure sight triangles shall be provided in each quadrant of each intersection approach controlled by stop signs.

Figures 3 – 16 Departure Sight Triangle (Traffic Approaching from Left or Right) and 3 – 17 Intersection Sight Distance show typical departure sight triangles to the left and to the right of the location of a stopped vehicle on a minor road (stop controlled) and the intersection sight distances for the various movements.

Distance "a" is the length of leg of the sight triangle along the minor road. This distance is measured from the driver's eye in the stopped vehicle to the center of the nearest lane on the major road (through road) for vehicles approaching from the left, and to the center of the nearest lane for vehicles approaching from the right.

Distance "b" is the length of the leg of the sight triangle along the major road measured from the center of the minor road entrance lane. This distance is a function of the design speed and the time gap in major road traffic needed for minor road drivers turning onto or crossing the major road. This distance is calculated as follows:

$$ISD = 1.47 V_{major} t_g$$

Where:

ISD=Intersection Sight Distance (ft.) – length of leg of sight triangle along the major road.

V_{major}= Design Speed (mph) of the Major Road

t_g= Time gap (sec.) for minor road vehicle to enter the major road.

Time gap values, t_g, to be used in determination of ISD are based on studies and observations of the time gaps in major road traffic actually accepted by drivers turning onto or across the major road. Design time gaps will vary and depend on the design vehicle, the type of the maneuver, the crossing distance involved in the maneuver, and the minor road approach grade.

For intersections with stop control on the minor road, there are three maneuvers or cases that must be considered. ISD is calculated for each maneuver case that may occur at the intersection. The case requiring the greatest ISD will control. Cases that must be considered are as follows (Case numbers correspond to cases identified in the AASHTO – "A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets" - 2011):

Case B1 – Left Turns from the Minor (stop controlled) Road

Case B2 – Right Turns from the Minor (stop controlled) Road

Case B3 – Crossing the Major Road from the Minor (stop controlled) Road

See Sections C.9.b.4.(c) and (d) for design time gaps for Case B.

For Intersections with Traffic Signal Control see Section C.9.b.4.(e) (AASHTO Case D).

For intersections with all way stop control see Section C.9.b.4.(f) (AASHTO Case E).

For left turns from the major road see Section C.9.b.4.(g) (AASHTO Case F).

Figure 3 – 16 Departure Sight Triangle (Traffic Approaching from Left or Right)

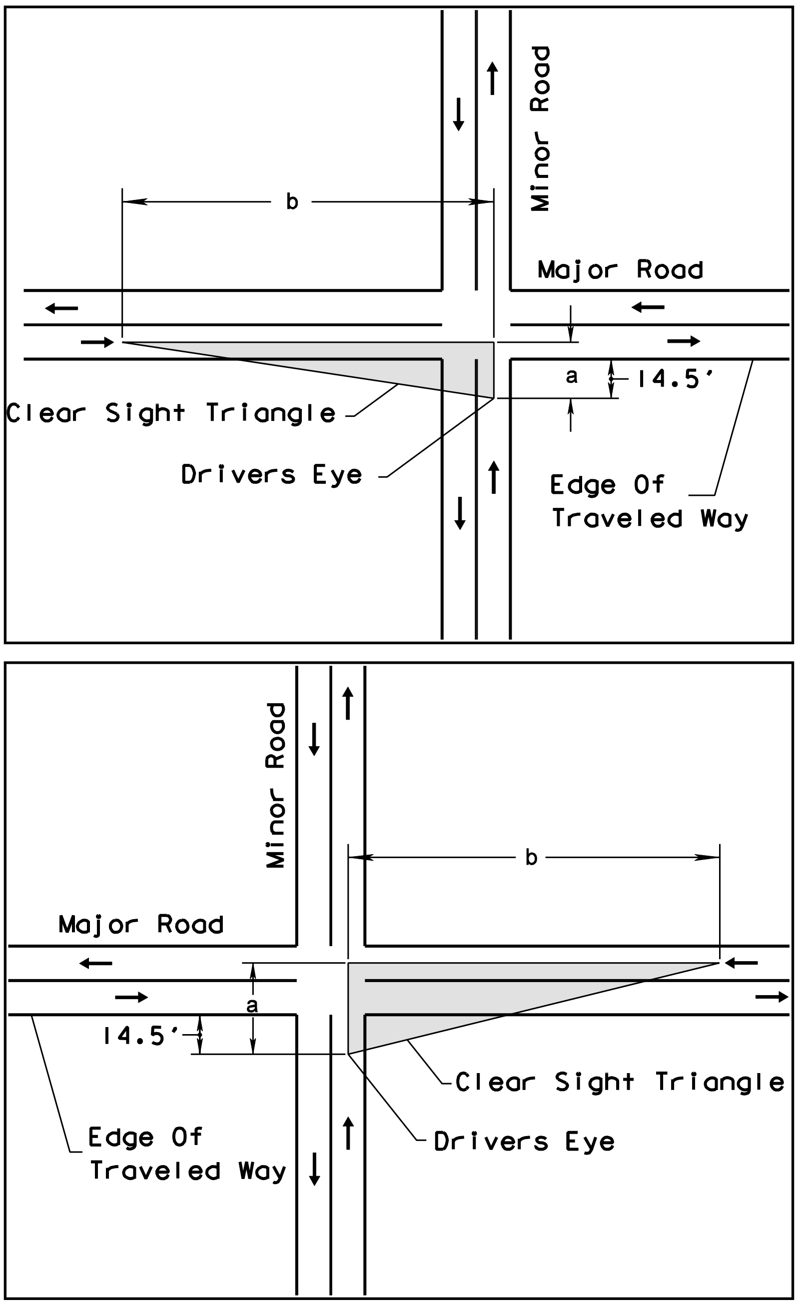
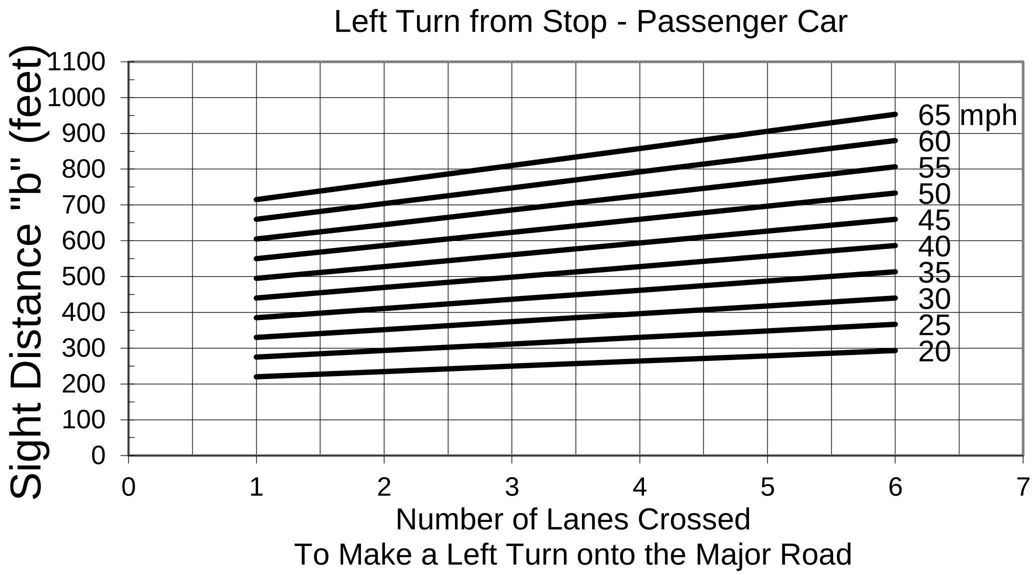
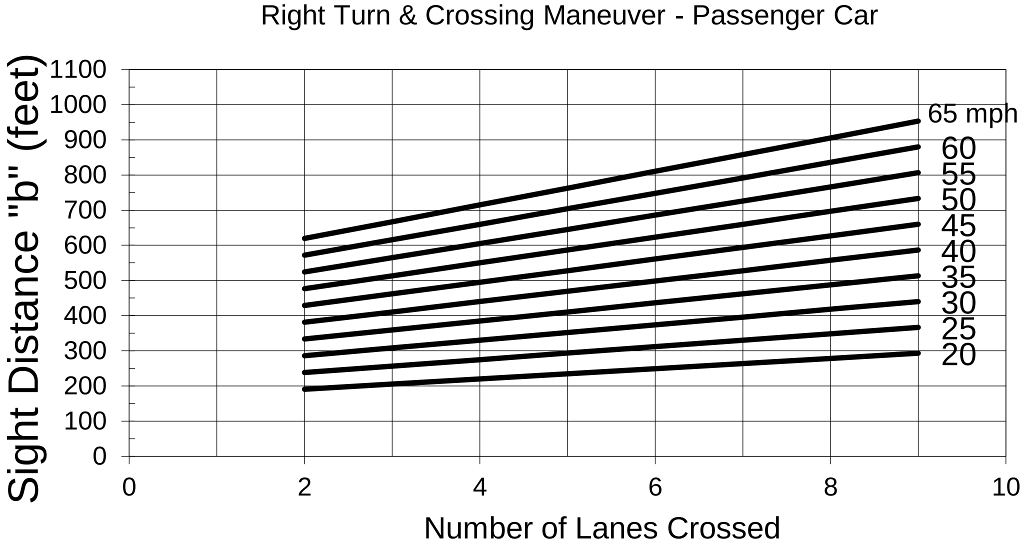


Figure 3 – 17 Intersection Sight Distance



A vehicle crosses one lane to make a left turn onto a two lane-two way road; crosses two lanes on a four lane undivided road; and so forth. For divided highways, convert median widths to equivalent number of lanes. For medians 25' and greater a two step maneuver may be considered - see text.



For right turn maneuver use distance based on 2 lanes crossed.
For crossing divided highways, convert median widths to equivalent number of lanes. For medians 25' and greater a two step maneuver may be considered - see text.

C.9.b.4.(a) Driver's Eye Position and Vehicle Stopping Position

The vertex (decision point or driver's eye position) of the departure sight triangle on the minor road shall be a minimum of 14.5 feet from the edge of the major road traveled way. This is based on observed measurements of vehicle stopping position and the distance from the front of the vehicle to the driver's eye. Field observations of vehicle stopping positions found that, where necessary, drivers will stop with the front of their vehicle 6.5 feet or less from the edge of the major road traveled way. Measurements of passenger cars indicate that the distance from the front of the vehicle to driver's eye for the current U.S. passenger car fleet is almost always 8 feet or less.

When executing a crossing or turning maneuver after stopping at a stop sign, stop bar, or crosswalk as required in ***Section 316.123, Florida Statutes***, it is assumed that the vehicle will move slowly forward to obtain sight distance (without intruding into the crossing travel lane) stopping a second time as necessary.

C.9.b.4.(b) Design Vehicle

Dimensions of clear sight triangles are provided for passenger cars, single unit trucks, and combination trucks stopped on the minor road. It can usually be assumed that the minor road vehicle is a passenger car. However, where substantial volumes of heavy vehicles enter the major road, such as from a ramp terminal, the use of tabulated values for single unit or combination trucks should be considered.

C.9.b.4.(c) Case B1 - Left Turns from the Minor Road

Design time gap values for left turns from the minor road onto two lane two way major highway are as follows:

Design Vehicle	Time Gap (t_g) in Seconds
Passenger Car	7.5
Single Unit Truck	9.5
Combination Truck	11.5

If the minor road approach grade is an upgrade that exceeds 3 percent, add 0.2 seconds for each percent grade for left turns.

For multilane streets and highways without medians wide enough to store the design vehicle with a clearance of 3 feet on both ends of the vehicle, add 0.5 seconds for passenger cars or 0.7 seconds for trucks for each additional lane from the left, in excess of one, to be crossed by the turning vehicle. The median width should be included in the width of additional lanes. This is done by converting the median width to an equivalent number of 12 foot lanes.

For multilane streets and highways with medians wide enough to store the design vehicle with a clearance of 3 feet on both ends of the vehicle a two-step maneuver may be assumed. Use case B2 for crossing to the median.

C.9.b.4.(d) Case B2 - Right Turns From the Minor Road and Case B3 – Crossing Maneuver From the Minor Road

Design time gap values for a stopped vehicle on a minor road to turn right onto or cross a two lane highway are as follows:

Design Vehicle	Time Gap (t_g) in Seconds
Passenger Car	6.5
Single Unit Truck	8.5
Combination Truck	10.5

If the approach grade is an upgrade that exceeds 3 percent, add 0.1 seconds for each percent grade.

For crossing streets and highways with more than 2 lanes, add 0.5 seconds for passenger cars or 0.7 seconds for trucks for each additional lane to be crossed. Medians not wide enough to store the design vehicle with a clearance of 3 feet on both ends of the vehicle should be included in the width of additional lanes. This is done by converting the median width to an equivalent number of 12 foot lanes.

For crossing divided streets and highways with medians wide enough to store the design vehicle with a clearance of 3 feet on both ends of the vehicle, a two-step maneuver may be assumed. Only the number of lanes to be crossed in each step are considered.

C.9.b.4.(e)Intersections with Traffic Signal Control (AASHTO Case D)

At signalized intersections, the first vehicle stopped on one approach should be visible to the driver of the first vehicle stopped on each of the other approaches. Left turning vehicles should have sufficient sight distance to select gaps in oncoming traffic and complete left turns. Apart from these sight conditions, no other sight triangles are needed for signalized intersections. However, if the traffic signal is to be placed on two-way flashing operation in off peak or nighttime conditions, then the appropriate departure sight triangles for Cases B1, B2, or B3, both to the left and to the right, should be provided. In addition, if right turns on red are to be permitted, then the appropriate departure sight triangle to the left for Case B2 should be provided to accommodate right turns.

C.9.b.4.(f) Intersections with All-Way Stop Control (AASHTO Case E)

At intersections with all-way stop control, the first stopped vehicle on one approach should be visible to the drivers of the first stopped vehicles on each of the other approaches. There are no other sight distance criteria applicable to intersections with all-way stop control.

C.9.b.4.(g) Left Turns from the Major Road (AASHTO Case F)

All locations along a major road from which vehicles are permitted to turn left across opposing traffic shall have sufficient sight distance to accommodate the left turn maneuver. In this case, the ISD is measured from the stopped position of the left turning vehicle (see Figure 3 – 18 Sight Distance for Vehicle Turning Left from Major Road).

Design time gap values for left turns from the major road are as follows:

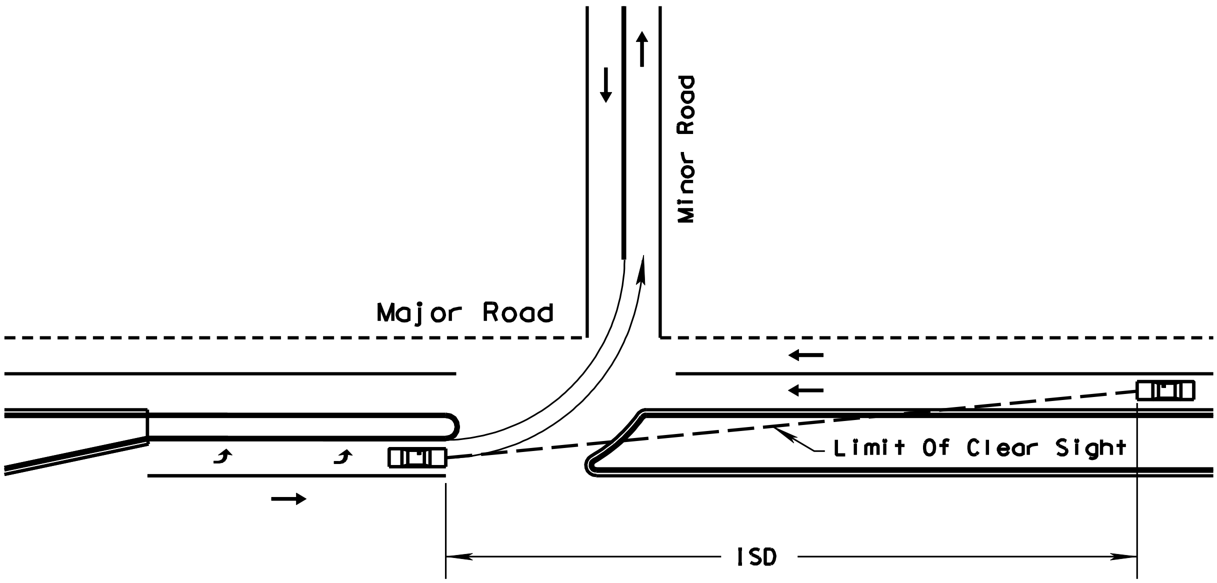
Design Vehicle	Time Gap (t_g) in Seconds
Passenger Car	5.5
Single Unit Truck	6.5
Combination Truck	7.5

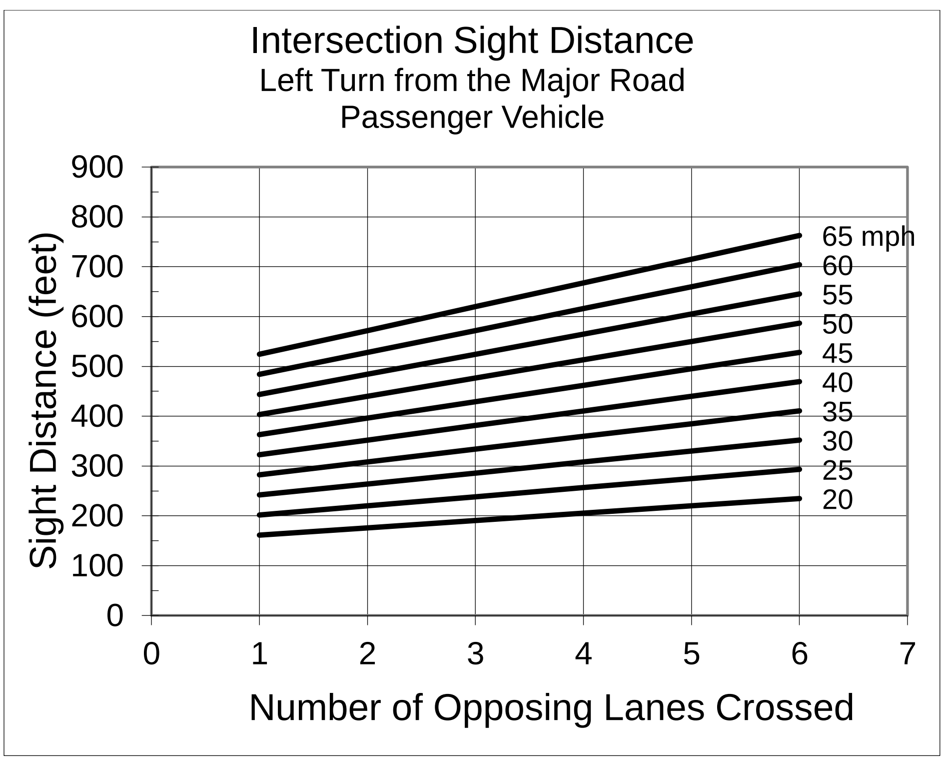
For left turning vehicles that cross more than one opposing lane, add 0.5 seconds for passenger cars and 0.7 seconds for trucks for each additional lane to be crossed.

C.9.b.4.(h) Intersection Sight Distance References

The Department's ***Design Manual, Chapter 212 Intersections*** , provides ISD values for several basic intersection configurations based on Cases B1, B2, B3, and D, and may be used when applicable. For additional guidance on Intersection Sight Distance, see the ***AASHTO Green Book (2011)***.

Figure 3 – 18 Sight Distance for Vehicle Turning Left from Major Road





C.9.c Auxiliary Lanes

Auxiliary lanes are desirable for the safe execution of speed change maneuvers (acceleration and deceleration) and for the storage and protection of turning vehicles. Auxiliary lanes for exit or entrance turning maneuvers shall be provided in accordance with the requirements set forth in C.8 Access Control, this chapter. The pavement width and cross slopes of auxiliary lanes should meet the minimum requirements shown in Table 3-19 Minimum Lane Widths.

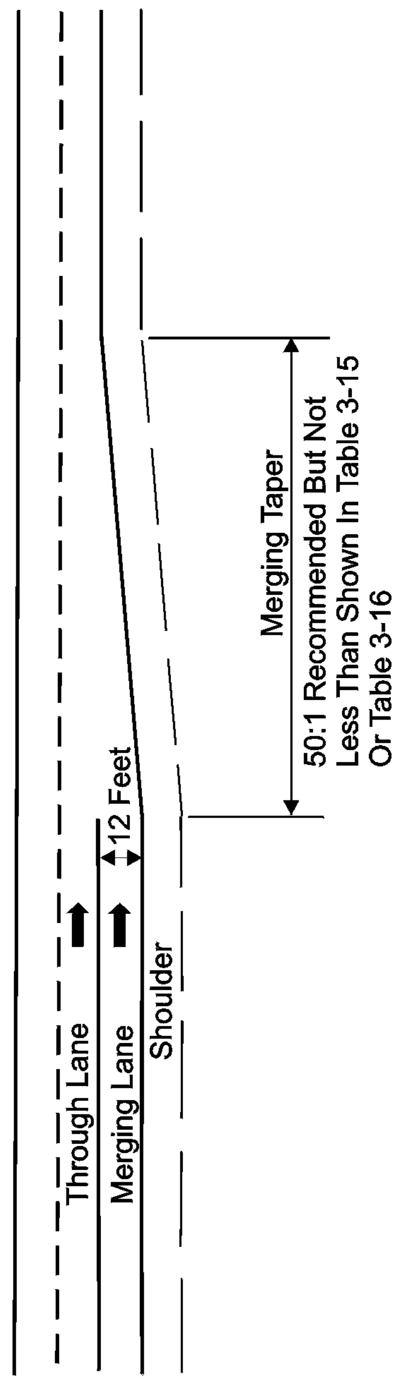
C.9.c.1 Merging Maneuvers

Merging maneuvers occur at the termination of climbing lanes, lane drops, entrance acceleration, and turning lanes. The location provided for this merging maneuver should, where possible, be on a tangent section of the roadway and should be of sufficient length to allow for a smooth, safe transition. The provision of ample distance for merging is essential to allow the driver time to find an acceptable gap in the through traffic and then execute a safe merging maneuver. It is recommended that a merging taper be on a 1:50 transition, but in no case, shall the length be less than set forth in Table 3 – 26 Length of Taper for Use in Conditions with Full Width Speed Change Lanes. The termination of this lane should be clearly visible from both the merging and through lane and should correspond to the general configuration shown in Figure 3 – 19 Termination of Merging Lanes. Advance warning of the merging lane termination should be provided. Lane drops shall be marked in accordance with ***Section 14-15.010, F.A.C. Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD)***.

Table 3 – 26 Length of Taper for Use in Conditions with Full Width Speed Change Lanes

Design Speed (mph)	**20**	**25**	**30**	**35**	**40**	**45**	**50**	**55**	**60**	**65**	**70**
Length of Deceleration Taper (feet)	110	130	150	170	190	210	230	250	270	290	300
Length of Acceleration Taper (feet)	80	100	120	140	160	180	210	230	250	260	280

Figure 3 – 19 Termination of Merging Lanes



C.9.c.2 Acceleration Lanes

Acceleration lanes are required for all entrances to expressway and freeway ramps. Acceleration lanes may be desirable at access points to any street or highway with a large percentage of entering truck traffic.

The distance required for an acceleration maneuver is dependent on the vehicle acceleration capabilities, the grade, the initial entrance speed, and the final speed at the termination of the maneuver. The distances required for acceleration on level roadways for passenger cars are given in Table 3 – 27 Design Lengths of Speed Change Lanes Flat Grades. Where acceleration occurs on a grade, the required distance is obtained by using Table 3 – 28 Ratio of Length of Speed Change Lane on Grade to Length on Level and Table 3 – 29 Minimum Acceleration Lengths for Entrance Terminals.

The final speed at the end of the acceleration lane, should, desirably, be assumed as the design speed of the through roadway. The length of acceleration lane provided should be at least as long as the distance required for acceleration between the initial and final speeds. Due to the uncertainties regarding vehicle capabilities and driver behavior, additional length is desirable. The acceleration lane should be followed by a merging taper (similar to Figure 3 – 19 Termination of Merging Lanes), not less than that length set forth in Table 3 – 26 Length of Taper for Use in Conditions with Full Width Speed Change Lanes. The termination of acceleration lanes should conform to the general configuration shown for merging lanes in Figure 3 – 19 Termination of Merging Lanes. Recommended acceleration lanes for freeway entrance terminals are given in Table 3 – 29 Minimum Acceleration Lengths for Entrance Terminals.

Table 3 – 27 Design Lengths of Speed Change Lanes
Flat Grades - 2 Percent or Less

Design Speed of turning roadway curve (mph)		Stop Condition	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50
Minimum curve radius (feet)		---	55	100	160	230	320	430	555	695
Design Speed of Highway (mph)	Length of Taper (feet)*	Total length of DECELERATION LANE, including taper, (feet)								
30	150	385	350	320	290	---	---	---	---	---
35	170	450	420	380	355	320	---	---	---	---
40	190	510	485	455	425	375	345	---	---	---
45	210	595	560	535	505	460	430	---	---	---
50	230	665	635	615	585	545	515	455	405	---
55	250	730	705	690	660	630	600	535	485	---
60	270	800	770	750	730	700	675	620	570	510
65	290	860	830	810	790	760	730	680	630	570
70	300	915	890	870	850	820	790	740	690	640
Design Speed of Highway (mph)	Length of Taper (feet)*	Total length of ACCELERATION LANE, including taper (feet)								
30	120	300	260	---	---	---	---	---	---	---
35	140	420	360	300	---	---	---	---	---	---
40	160	520	460	430	370	280	---	---	---	---
45	180	740	670	620	560	460	340	---	---	---
50	210	930	870	820	760	660	560	340	---	---
55	230	1190	1130	1040	1010	900	780	550	380	---
60	250	1450	1390	1350	1270	1160	1050	800	670	430
65	260	1670	1610	1570	1480	1380	1260	1030	860	630
70	280	1900	1840	1800	1700	1630	1510	1280	1100	860

* For urban street auxiliary lanes, shorter tapers may be used due to lower operating speeds. Refer to Figure 3-16 for allowable taper rates.

Draft

Table 3 – 28 Ratio of Length of Speed Change Lane on Grade to Length on Level

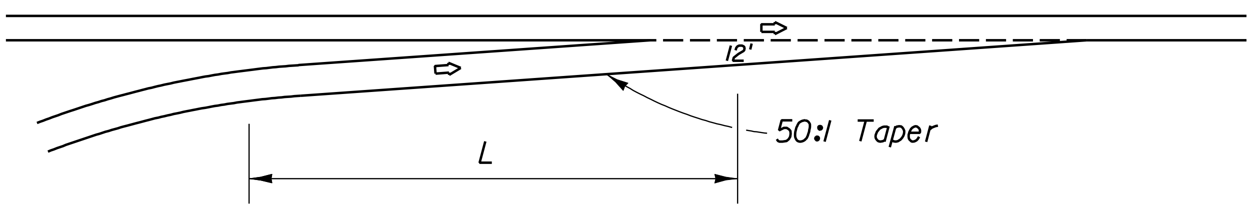
Deceleration Lane			Acceleration Lane					
	Design Speed of Turning Roadway (mph)			Design Speed of Turning Roadway (mph)				
Design Speed of Highway (mph)	All Speeds	All Speeds	Design Speed of Highway (mph)	20	30	40	50	All Speeds
	3% -4% Upgrade	3%-4% Downgrade		3% - 4% Upgrade				3% - 4% Downgrade
All Speeds	0.9	1.2	40	1.3	1.3	---	---	0.7
			45	1.3	1.35	---	---	0.675
			50	1.3	1.4	1.4	---	0.65
			55	1.35	1.45	1.45	---	0.625
			60	1.4	1.5	1.5	1.6	0.6
			65	1.45	1.55	1.6	1.7	0.6
			70	1.5	1.6	1.7	1.8	0.6
	5% - 6% Upgrade	5% - 6% Downgrade		5% - 6% Upgrade				5% - 6% Downgrade
All Speeds	0.8	1.35	40	1.5	1.5	---	---	0.6
			45	1.5	1.6	---	---	0.575
			50	1.5	1.7	1.9	---	0.55
			55	1.6	1.8	2.05	---	0.525
			60	1.7	1.9	2.2	2.5	0.5
			65	1.85	2.05	2.4	2.75	0.5
			70	2.0	2.2	2.6	3.0	0.5

Ratios in this table multiplied by the values in Table 3 – 26 give the length of speed change lane for the respective grade.

Table 3 – 29 Minimum Acceleration Lengths for Entrance Terminals

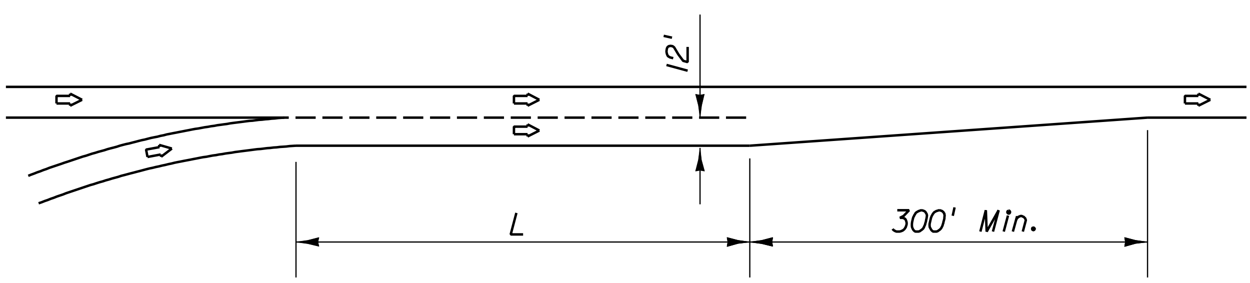
Highway Design Speed (mph)	L = Acceleration Length (feet)								
	For Entrance Curve Design Speed (mph)								
	Stop Condition	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50
30	180	140	---	---	---	---	---	---	---
35	280	220	160	---	---	---	---	---	---
40	360	300	270	210	120	---	---	---	---
45	560	490	440	380	280	160	---	---	---
50	720	660	610	550	450	350	130	---	---
55	960	900	810	780	670	550	320	150	---
60	1200	1140	1100	1020	910	800	550	420	180
65	1410	1350	1310	1220	1120	1000	770	600	370
70	1620	1560	1520	1420	1350	1,230	1000	820	580

Expressway and Freeway Entrance Terminals



TAPER TYPE

Recommended when design speed at entrance curve is 50 mph or greater.



PARALLEL TYPE

Recommended when design speed at entrance curve is less than 50 mph.

C.9.c.3 Exit Lanes

Auxiliary lanes for exiting maneuvers provide space outside the through lanes for protection and storage of decelerating vehicles exiting the facility.

- Deceleration Lanes - The primary function of deceleration lanes is to provide a safe travel path for vehicles decelerating from the operating speed on the through lanes. Deceleration lanes are required for all freeway exits and are desirable on high-speed (design speed greater than 50 mph) streets and highways.

The distance required for deceleration of passenger cars is given in Table 3 – 30 Minimum Deceleration Lengths for Exit Terminals.

The required distance for deceleration on grades is given in Tables 3 – 27 Design Lengths of Speed Change Lanes Flat Grades - 2 Percent or Less and 3 – 28 Ratio of Length of Speed Change Lane on Grade to Length on Level.

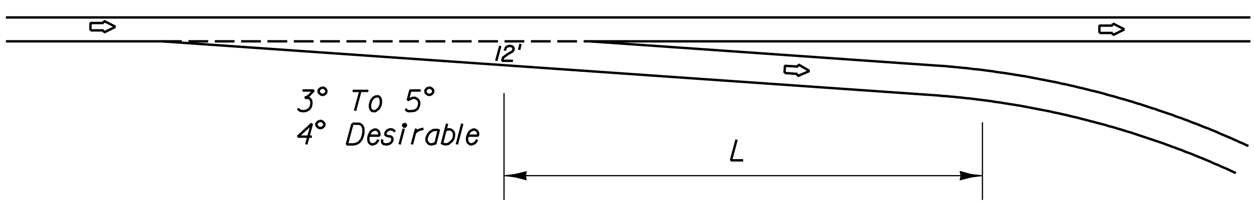
The length of deceleration lanes shall be no less than the values obtained from Tables 3 – 27 and 3 – 28 and should be increased wherever feasible. The initial speed should, desirably, be taken as the design speed of the highway. The final speed should be the design speed at the exit (e.g., a turning roadway) or zero, if the deceleration lane terminates at a stop or traffic signal. A reduction in the final speed to be used is particularly important if the exit traffic volume is high, since the speed of these vehicles may be significantly reduced.

The entrance to deceleration (and climbing) lanes should conform to the general configuration shown in Figure 3 – 20 Entrance for Deceleration Lane. The initial length of straight taper, shown in Table 3 – 29 Minimum Acceleration Lengths for Entrance Terminals, may be utilized as a portion of the total required deceleration distance. The pavement surface of the deceleration lane should be clearly visible to approaching traffic, so drivers are aware of the maneuvers required. Recommended deceleration lanes for exit terminals are given in Table 3 – 30 Minimum Deceleration Lengths for Exit Terminals.

Table 3 – 30 Minimum Deceleration Lengths for Exit Terminals

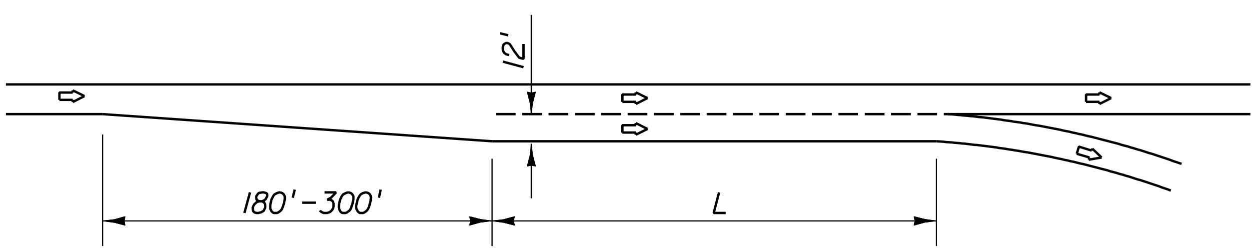
Highway Design Speed (mph)	L = Deceleration Length (feet)								
	For Design Speed of Exit Curve (mph)								
	Stop Condition	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50
30	235	200	170	140	---	---	---	---	---
35	280	250	210	185	150	---	---	---	---
40	320	295	265	235	185	155	---	---	---
45	385	350	325	295	250	220	---	---	---
50	435	405	385	355	315	285	225	175	---
55	480	455	440	410	380	350	285	235	---
60	530	500	480	460	430	405	350	300	240
65	570	540	520	500	470	440	390	340	280
70	615	590	570	550	520	490	440	390	340

Expressway and Freeway Exit Terminals



TAPER TYPE

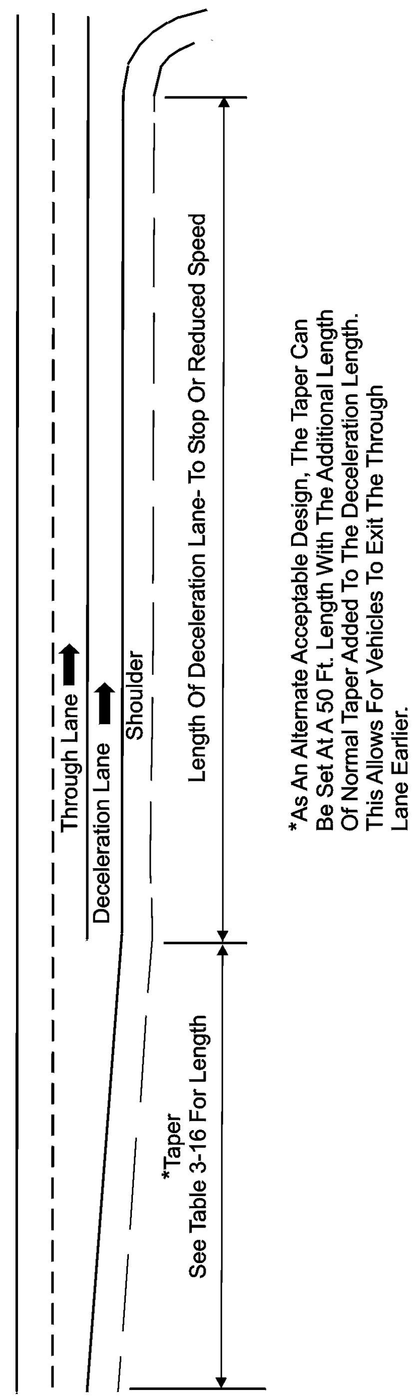
Recommended when design speed at exit curve is 50 mph or greater and when approach visibility is good.



PARALLEL TYPE

Recommended when design speed at exit curve is less than 50 mph or when approach visibility is not good.

Figure 3 – 20 Entrance for Deceleration Lane



C.9.c.4 Auxiliary Lanes at Intersections

The primary function of auxiliary lanes at intersections is to accommodate speed changes and maneuvering of turning traffic. They are typically added to increase capacity and/or reduce crashes at an intersection. Auxiliary lanes for deceleration and storage of queuing vehicles are used preceding intersections and median openings for left-turning and right-turning movements. In some cases, auxiliary lanes for acceleration are used following right-turning movements.

C.9.c.4.(a) Widths of Auxiliary Lanes

The minimum widths for auxiliary lanes are given in Table 3 – 20 Minimum Lane Widths.

C.9.c.4.(b) Lengths of Auxiliary Lanes for Deceleration

Recommended lengths for auxiliary lanes for deceleration (turn lanes) at intersections are provided in Figure 3 – 21 Auxiliary Lanes for Deceleration at Intersections (Turn Lanes) and Table 3 – 31 Turn Lanes – Curbed and Uncurbed Medians. These lengths are based on the Department's criteria. As shown in Figure 3 – 21, the total length of turn lanes consists of three components, (1) Deceleration Length, (2) Storage or Queue Length and (3) Entering Taper. It is common practice to accept a moderate amount of deceleration within the through lanes and to consider the taper as part of the deceleration length. The length criteria for each of the auxiliary lane components are explained as follows:

Deceleration Length

The required total deceleration length is that needed for a safe and comfortable stop from the design speed of the highway. Minimum deceleration lengths (including taper) for auxiliary lanes are provided in Figure 3 – 21 and are based on minimum stopping sight distance.

Storage (Queue) Length

The auxiliary lane should be sufficiently long to store the number of vehicles likely to accumulate during a critical period. The storage length should be sufficient to avoid the possibilities of turning vehicles stopping in the through lanes or the entrance to the auxiliary lane being blocked by vehicles queuing in the through lanes.

At unsignalized intersections the storage length, exclusive of taper, may be based on the number of turning vehicles likely to arrive in an average two-minute period within the peak hour. For low volume intersections where a traffic study is not justified, a minimum 50-foot queue length (2 vehicles) should be provided on rural highways. A minimum 100-foot queue length (4 vehicles) should be provided in urban areas. Locations with over 10% truck traffic should accommodate at least one car and one truck.

At signalized intersections, the required storage length is determined by traffic study and depends on the signal cycle length, the signal phasing arrangement and the rate of arrivals and departures of turning vehicles. The storage length is a function of the probability of occurrence of events and should be based on 1.5 to 2 times the average number of vehicles that would store per cycle that is predicted in the design volume.

Where dual turning lanes are used, the required storage length is reduced to approximately one-half of that required for single-lane operation.

Approach End Taper

The Department’s criteria for approach end taper lengths for turn lanes are 50 feet for a single turn lane and 100 feet for a double turn lane, as shown in Figure 3 - 21 Auxiliary Lanes for Deceleration at Intersections (Turn Lanes) and Table 3 – 31 Turn Lanes – Curbed and Uncurbed Medians. These taper lengths apply to all design speeds and are recommended for use on turn lanes on all roads. Short taper lengths are intended to provide approaching road users with positive identification of an added auxiliary lane and results in a longer full width auxiliary lane than use of longer taper lengths based on the path that road users actually follow. The clearance distances L_1 and L_3 account for the full transition lengths a road user will use to enter the auxiliary lane for various speed conditions assumed for design.

It is acceptable to lengthen the taper up to L_1 for single left turns and L_3 for double left turns where traffic study can establish that left turn queue vehicles are adequately provided for within the design queue length and through vehicle queues will not block access to the left turn lane(s).

Figure 3 – 21 Auxiliary Lanes for Deceleration at Intersections (Turn Lanes)

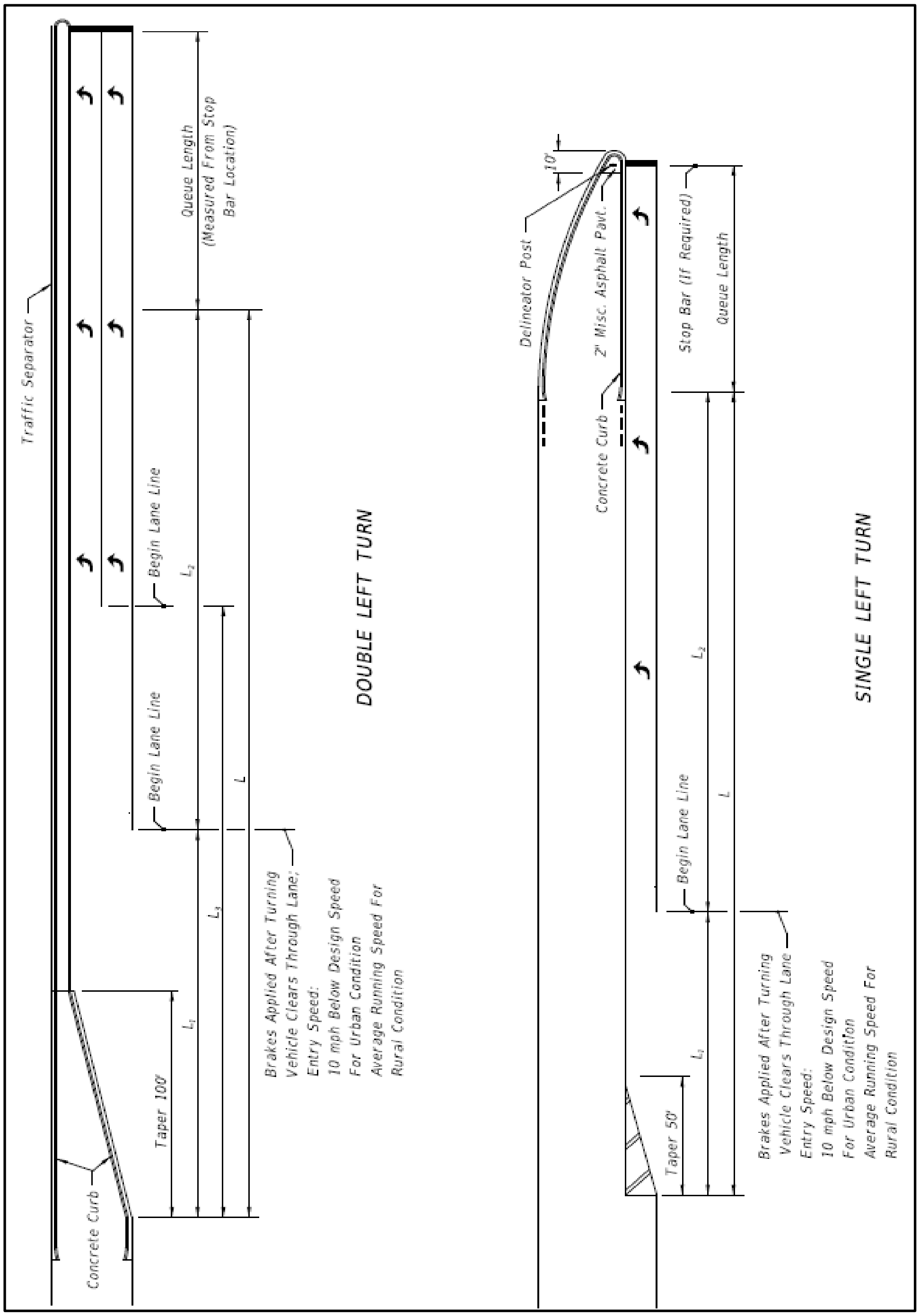


Table 3 – 31 Turn Lanes – Curbed and Uncurbed Medians

Design Speed (mph)	Entry Speed (mph)	Clearance Distance L_1 (feet)	Urban Conditions			Rural Conditions		
			Brake to Stop Distance L_2 (feet)	Total Decel. Distance L (feet)	Clearance Distance L_3 (feet)	Brake to Stop Distance L_2 (feet)	Total Decel. Distance L (feet)	Clearance Distance L_3 (feet)
≤ 30	≤ 25	60	75	135	100			
35	25	70	75	145	110	----	----	----
40	30	80	75	155	120	----	----	----
45	35	85	100	185	135	----	----	----
50	40/44	105	135	240	160	185	290	160
55	48	125	----	----	----	225	350	195
60	52	145	----	----	----	260	405	230
65	55	170	----	----	----	290	460	270

Note: Right turn lane tapers and distances are identical to left turn lanes under stop control conditions. For free flow or yield control conditions, taper lengths and distances are site specific.

C.9.c.4.(c) Lengths of Auxiliary Lanes for Acceleration

Acceleration lanes similar to those used for freeways and expressways are sometimes used at intersections. They are not always desirable at stop-controlled intersections where entering drivers can wait for an opportunity to merge without disrupting through traffic. Acceleration lanes are advantageous on roads without stop control and on all high-volume roads even with stop control where openings between vehicles in the peak-hour traffic streams are infrequent and short. When used, acceleration lanes at intersections should be designed using the criteria provided in Section C.9.c.2 Acceleration Lanes.

C.9.d Turning Roadways at Intersections

The design and construction of turning roadways shall meet the same general requirements for through roadways, except for the specific requirements given in the subsequent sections.

C.9.d.1 Design Speed

Lanes for turning movements at grade intersections may, where justified, be based on a design speed as low as 10 mph. Turning roadways with design speeds in excess of 40 mph shall be designed in accordance with the requirements for through roadways.

A variable design speed may be used to establish cross section and alignment criteria for turning roadways that will experience acceleration and deceleration maneuvers.

C.9.d.2 Horizontal Alignment

- Curvature - The minimum permitted radii (maximum degree) of curvature for various values of superelevation are given in Table 3 – 32 Superelevation Rates for Curves at Intersections. These should be considered as minimum values only and the radius of curvature should be increased wherever feasible. Further information contained in ***AASHTO – "A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets" - 2011***, should also be considered.

Table 3 – 32 Superelevation Rates for Curves at Intersections

	Design Speed (mph)					
	20	25	30	35	40	45
Minimum Superelevation Rate	0.02	0.04	0.06	0.08	0.09	0.10
Minimum Radius (feet)	90	150	230	310	430	540

The rate of 0.02 is considered the practical minimum for effective drainage across the surface.

Note: Preferably use superelevation rates greater than these minimum values.

- Superelevation Transition - Minimum superelevation transition (runoff) rates (maximum relative gradients) are given in Tables 3 – 33 Maximum Rate of Change in Pavement Edge Elevation for Curves at Intersections and 3 – 34 Maximum Algebraic Difference in Pavement Cross Slope at Turning Roadway Terminals. Other information given in ***AASHTO – "A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets" - 2011***, should also be considered.

Table 3 – 33 Maximum Rate of Change in Pavement Edge Elevation for Curves at Intersections

Design Speed (mph)	**20**	**25**	**30**	**35**	**40**	**45**	**50**	**55**	**60**	**65**	**70**
Maximum relative gradients for profiles between the edge of two lane pavement and the centerline (percent)	0.74	0.70	0.66	0.62	0.58	0.54	0.50	0.47	0.45	0.43	0.40

Table 3 – 34 Maximum Algebraic Difference in Pavement Cross Slope at Turning Roadway Terminals

Design Speed of Exit or Entrance Curve (mph)	**Maximum Algebraic Difference in Cross Slope at Crossover Line (percent)**
20 and under	5.0 to 8.0
25 and 30	5.0 to 6.0
35 and over	4.0 to 5.0

C.9.d.3 Vertical Alignment

Grades on turning roadways should be as flat as practical and long vertical curves should be used wherever feasible. The length of vertical curves shall be no less than necessary to provide minimum stopping sight distance. Minimum stopping sight distance values are given in Table 3 – 4 Minimum Stopping Sight Distances. For additional guidance on vertical alignment for turning roadways, see ***AASHTO – "A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets" - 2011***.

C.9.d.4 Cross Section Elements

- Number of Lanes - One-way turning roadways are often limited to a single traffic lane. In this case, the total width of the roadway shall be sufficient to allow traffic to pass a disabled vehicle. Two-way, undivided turning roadways should be avoided. Medians or barriers should be utilized to separate opposing traffic on turning roadways.
- Lane Width - The width of all traffic lanes should be sufficient to accommodate (with adequate clearances) the turning movements of the expected types of vehicles. The minimum required lane widths for turning roadways are given in Table 3 - 35 Derived Pavement Widths for Turning Roadways for Different Design Vehicles. Changes in lane widths should be gradual and should be accomplished in coordination with adequate transitions in horizontal curvature.
- Shoulders - On one-lane turning roadways, serving expressways and other arterials (e.g., loops, ramps), the right hand shoulder should be at least 6 feet wide. The left hand shoulder should be at least 6 feet wide in all cases. On two-lane, one-way roadways, both shoulders should be at least 6 feet wide. Where guardrails or other barriers are used, they should be placed at least 8 feet from edge of travel lane. Guardrails should be placed 2 feet outside the normal shoulder width.

- Clear Zones - Turning roadways should, as a minimum, meet all open highway criteria for clear zones on both sides of the roadway. The areas on the outside of curves should be wider and more gently sloped than the minimum values for open highways. Guardrails or similar barriers shall be used if the minimum width and slope requirements cannot be obtained.

Further criteria and requirements for roadway design are given in ***Chapter 4 - Roadside Design***.

Table 3 – 35 Derived Pavement Widths for Turning Roadways for Different Design Vehicles

Radius on Inner Edge of Pavement, R (feet)	Case 1, One-Lane Operation, No Provision for Passing a Stalled Vehicle												
	P	SU-30	Su-40	City Bus	S-Bus-36	A-Bus	WB-40	WB-62	WB-67	WB-67D	MH	P/T	P/B
50	13	18	21	21	18	22	23	44	57	29	18	19	18
75	13	17	18	19	17	19	20	30	33	23	17	17	17
100	13	16	17	18	16	18	18	25	28	21	16	16	16
150	12	15	16	17	16	17	17	22	23	19	15	16	15
200	12	15	16	16	15	16	16	20	21	18	15	15	15
300	12	15	15	16	15	16	15	18	19	17	15	15	15
400	12	15	15	15	15	15	15	17	18	16	15	15	14
500	12	14	15	15	14	15	15	17	17	16	14	14	14
Target	12	14	14	15	14	15	14	15	15	15	14	14	14

Radius on Inner Edge of Pavement, R (feet)	Case II, One-Lane, One-Way Operation, with Provision for Passing a Stalled Vehicle by Another of the Same Type												
	P	SU-30	SU-40	City Bus	S-Bus-36	A-Bus	WB-40	WB-62	WB-67	WB-67D	MH	P/T	P/B
50	20	30	36	38	31	40	39	81	109	50	30	30	28
75	19	27	30	32	27	34	32	53	59	39	27	27	26
100	18	25	27	30	25	30	29	44	48	34	25	25	24
150	18	23	25	27	23	27	26	36	38	29	23	23	23
200	17	22	24	25	23	26	24	32	34	27	22	22	22
300	17	22	22	24	22	24	23	28	30	25	22	22	21
400	17	21	22	23	21	23	22	26	27	24	21	21	21
500	17	21	21	23	21	23	22	25	26	23	21	21	21
Target	17	20	20	21	20	21	20	21	21	21	20	20	20

Table Continued on Next Page

Radius on Inner Edge of Pavement, R (feet)	Case III, Two-Lane Operation, Either One- or Two-Way (Same Type Vehicle in Both Lanes)												
	P	SU-30	SU-40	City Bus	S-Bus-36	A-Bus	WB-40	WB-62	WB-67	WB-67D	MH	P/T	P/B
50	26	36	42	44	37	46	45	87	115	56	36	36	34
75	25	33	36	38	33	40	38	59	65	45	33	33	32
100	24	31	33	35	31	36	35	50	54	40	31	31	30
150	24	29	31	33	29	33	32	42	44	35	29	29	29
200	23	28	30	31	29	32	30	38	40	33	28	28	28
300	23	28	28	30	28	30	29	34	36	31	28	28	27
400	23	27	28	29	27	29	28	32	33	30	27	27	27
500	23	27	27	29	27	29	28	31	32	29	27	27	27
Target	23	26	26	27	26	27	28	27	27	27	26	26	26

Source – 2011 AASHTO Greenbook, Table 3-28b Derived Pavement Widths for Turning Roadways for Different Design Vehicle

C.9.e At Grade Intersections

C.9.e.1 Turning Radii

Where right turns from through or turn lanes will be negotiated at low speeds (less than 10 mph), the minimum turning capabilities of the vehicle may govern the design. It is desirable that the turning radius and the required lane width be provided in accordance with the criteria for turning roadways. The radius of the inside edge of traveled way should be sufficient to allow the expected vehicles to negotiate the turn without encroaching the shoulder or adjacent traffic lanes.

Where turning roadway criteria are not used, the radius of the inside edge of traveled way should be no less than 25 feet. The use of three-centered compound curves is also a reasonable practice to allow for transition into and out of the curve. The recommended radii and arrangement of compound curves instead of a single simple curve is given in ***AASHTO – "A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets" - 2011***.

C.9.e.2 Cross Section Correlation

The correlation of the cross section of two intersecting roadways is frequently difficult. A careful analysis should be conducted to ensure changes in slope are not excessive and adequate drainage is provided. At stop-controlled intersections, the through roadway cross section should be carried through the intersection without interruption. Minor roadways should approach the intersection at a slightly reduced elevation so the through roadway cross section is not disturbed. At signalized intersections, it is sometimes necessary to remove part of the crown in order to avoid an undesirable hump in one roadway.

Intersections of grade or cross slope should be gently rounded to improve vehicle operation. Pavement generally should be sloped toward the intersection corners to provide superelevation for turning maneuvers and to promote proper drainage.

Where islands are used for channelization, the width of traffic lanes for turning movements shall be no less than the widths recommended by AASHTO.

C.9.e.3 Median Openings

Median openings should be restricted in accordance with the requirements presented in C.8 Access Control, this chapter. Where a median opening is required, the length of the opening shall be no less than 40 feet. Median curbs should be terminated gradually without the exposure of abrupt curb ends. The termination requirements are given in ***Chapter 4 - Roadside Design***.

C.9.e.4 Channelization

Channelization of at grade intersections is the regulation or separation of conflicting movements into definite travel paths by islands, markings, or other means, to promote safe, orderly traffic flow. The major objective of channelization is to clearly define the appropriate paths of travel and thus assist in the prevention of vehicles deviating excessively or making wrong maneuvers.

Channelization may be used effectively to define the proper path for exits, entrances, and intersection turning movements. The methods used for channelization should be as simple as possible and consistent in nature. The channelized intersection should appear open and natural to the approaching driver. Channelization should be informative rather than restrictive in nature.

The use of low sloping curbs and flush medians and islands can provide adequate delineation in most cases. Islands should be clearly visible and, in general, should not be smaller than 100 square feet in area. The use of small and/or numerous islands should be avoided.

Pavement markings are a useful and effective tool for providing delineation and channelization in an informative rather than restrictive fashion. The layout of all traffic control devices should be closely coordinated with the design of all channelization.

C.9.f Driveways

Direct driveway access within the area of influence of the intersection should be discouraged.

Driveways from major traffic generators (greater than 400 vpd), or those with significant truck/bus traffic, should be designed as normal intersections.

C.9.g Interchanges

The design of interchanges for the intersection of a freeway with a major street or highway, collector/distributor road, or other freeway is a complex problem. The location and spacing of intersections should follow the requirements presented in C.8 Access Control, this chapter. The design of interchanges shall follow the general intersection requirements for deceleration, acceleration, merging maneuvers, turning roadways, and sight distance.

Interchanges, particularly along a given freeway, should be reasonably consistent in their design. A basic principle in the design should be to develop simple open interchanges that are easily traversed and understandable to the driver. Complex interchanges with a profusion of possible travel paths are confusing and hazardous to the motorist and are generally inefficient.

Intersections with minor streets or highways or collector/distributor roads may be accomplished by simple diamond interchanges. The intersection of exit and entrance ramps with the crossroad shall meet all intersection requirements.

The design of freeway exits should conform to the general configurations given in Table 3 – 30 Minimum Deceleration Lengths for Exit Terminals. Exits should be on the right and should be placed on horizontal curves. Where deceleration on an exit loop is required, the deceleration alignment should be designed so the driver receives adequate warning of the approaching increase in curvature. This is best accomplished by gradually increasing the curvature and the resulting centrifugal force. This increasing centrifugal force provides warning to the driver that he must slow down. A clear view of the exit loop should also be provided. The length of deceleration shall be no less than the values shown in Table – 29.

Entrances to freeways should be designed in accordance with the general configurations shown below Table 3 – 29 Minimum Acceleration Lengths for Entrance Terminals. Special care should be taken to ensure vehicles entering from loops are not directed across through travel lanes. The entering roadway should be brought parallel (or nearly so) to the through lanes before entry is permitted. Where acceleration is required, the distances shown in Table 3 – 29 shall, as a minimum, be provided. Exits and entrances to all high-speed facilities (design speed greater than 50 mph), should, where feasible, be designed in accordance with Tables 3 – 30 and 3 – 29. The lengths obtained from Tables 3 – 30 and 3 – 29 should be adjusted for grade by using the ratios in Table 3 – 28.

The selection of the type and exact design details of a particular interchange requires considerable study and thought. The guidelines and design details given in ***AASHTO "A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets" - 2011***, should generally be considered as minimum criteria.

C.9.h Clear Zone

The provisions of ample clear zone or proper redirection of energy absorbing devices is particularly important at intersections. Every effort should be made to open up the area around the intersection to provide adequate clear zone for vehicles that have left the traveled way. Drivers frequently leave the proper travel path due to unsuccessful turning maneuvers or due to the necessity for emergency avoidance maneuvers. Vehicles also leave the roadway after intersection collisions and roadside objects should be removed to reduce the probability of second impacts. The roadside areas at all intersections and interchanges should be contoured to provide shallow slopes and gentle changes in grade.

The roadside clear zone of intersecting roadways should be carried throughout intersections with no discontinuities or interruptions. Poles and support structures for lights, signs, and signals should not be placed in medians or within the roadside clear zone.

The design of guardrails or other barriers should receive particular attention at intersections. Impact attenuators should be used in all gore and other areas where structures cannot be removed.

Particular attention should be given to the protection of pedestrians in intersection areas - ***Chapter 8 - Pedestrian Facilities***. Further criteria and requirements for clear zone and protection devices at intersections are given in ***Chapter 4 - Roadside Design***.

C.10 Other Design Factors

C.10.a Pedestrian Facilities

The layout and design of the street and highway network should include provisions for pedestrian traffic in urban areas. All pedestrian crossings and pathways within the road right of way should be considered and designed as in integral part of any street or urban highway.

C.10.a.1 Policy and Objectives - New Facilities

The planning and design of new streets and highways shall include provisions for the safe, orderly movement of pedestrian traffic.

The overall objective is to provide a safe, continuous, convenient, and comfortable trip for pedestrian traffic.

C.10.a.2 Accessibility Requirements

Pedestrian facilities, such as sidewalks, shared use paths and transit boarding and alighting areas shall be designed to accommodate people with disabilities. In addition to the design criteria provided in this Manual, the ***Department of Transportation ADA Standards for Transportation Facilities (2006)*** and ***Department of Justice ADA Standards (2010)*** as required by 49 C.F.R 37.41 or 37.43; and the ***2017 Florida Building Code – Accessibility, 6th Edition*** as required by ***Rule Chapter 61G20-4.002, Florida Administrative Code*** impose additional requirements for the design and construction of pedestrian facilities.

C.10.a.3 Sidewalks

Sidewalks should provide a safe, comfortable space for pedestrians. The width of sidewalks is dependent upon the roadside environment, volume of pedestrians, and the presence of businesses, schools, parks, and other pedestrian attractors. The minimum width for sidewalks is covered in ***Chapter 8 – Pedestrian Facilities*** and Section C.7.d of this chapter. To ensure compliance with federal and state accessibility requirements:

- Sidewalks less than 60 inches wide must have passing spaces of at least 60 inches by 60 inches, at intervals not to exceed 200 feet.
- The minimum clear width may be reduced to 32 inches for a short distance. This distance must be less than 24 inches long, and separated by 5-foot long sections with 48 inches of clear width.

- Sidewalks not constrained within the roadway right of way with slopes greater than 1:20 are considered ramps and must be designed as such.

Sidewalks 5 feet wide or wider will provide for two adults to walk comfortably side by side.

C.10.a.4 Curb Ramps

In areas with sidewalks, curb ramps must be incorporated at locations where crosswalks adjoin the sidewalks. The basic curb ramp type and design application depends on the geometric characteristics of the intersection or other crossing location.

Typical curb ramp width shall be a minimum of 4 feet with 1:10 curb transitions on each side when pedestrians must walk across the ramp. Ramp slopes shall not exceed 1:12 and shall have a firm, stable, slip resistant surface texture. Ramp widths equal to crosswalk widths are encouraged.

Curb ramps at marked crossings shall be wholly contained within the crosswalk markings excluding any flared sides.

If diagonal ramps must be used, any returned curbs or other well-defined edges shall be parallel to the pedestrian flow. The bottom of diagonal curb ramps shall have 48-inch minimum clear space within the crosswalk. Curb ramps whose sides have returned curbs provide useful directional cues where they are aligned with the pedestrian street crossing and are protected from cross travel by landscaping or street, street furniture, or railings.

It is important for persons using the sidewalk that the location of the ramps be as uniform as possible. Detectable warnings are required at all curb ramps and flush transitions where sidewalks or shared use paths meet a roadway.

The Department's ***Standard Plans, Index 522-002*** provides additional information on the design of accessible sidewalks and shared use paths. Designers should keep in mind there are many variables involved, possibly requiring each street intersection to have a unique design.

Two ramps per corner are preferred to minimize the problems with entry angle and to decrease the delay to pedestrians entering and exiting the roadway.

C.10.a.5 Additional Considerations

For additional information on pedestrian facilities design, including physical separation from the roadway, over- and underpasses, pedestrian crossings, traffic control, sight distance and lighting, refer to ***Chapter 8 – Pedestrian Facilities***.

C.10.b Bicycle Facilities

Provisions for bicycle traffic should be incorporated into the street or highway design. All new roadways and major corridor improvements, except limited access highways, should be designed and constructed under the assumption they will be used by bicyclists. Roadway conditions should be favorable for bicycling. This includes appropriate drainage grates, pavement markings, and railroad crossings, smooth pavements, and signals responsive to bicycles. In addition, facilities such as bicycle lanes, shared use paths, and paved shoulders, should be included to the fullest extent feasible. All flush shoulder arterial and collector roadway sections should be given consideration for the construction of 4-foot or 5-foot paved shoulders. In addition, all curbed arterial and collector sections should be given consideration for bicycle lanes.

For additional information on bicycle facilities design and the design of shared use paths, refer to ***Chapter 9 – Bicycle Facilities***.

C.10.c Bridge Design Loadings

The minimum design loading for all new and reconstructed bridges shall be in accordance with ***Chapter 17 – Bridges and Other Structures***.

C.10.d Dead End Streets and Cul-de-Sacs

The end of a dead-end street should permit travel return with a turnaround area, considering backing movements, which will accommodate single truck or transit vehicles without encroachment upon private property. Recommended treatment for dead end streets and cul-de-sacs is given in Figure 5-1 Types of Cul-de-Sacs and Dead-End Streets of ***AASHTO – "A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets" - 2011***.

C.10.e Bus Benches and Transit Shelters

Bus benches should be set back at least 10 feet from the travel lane in curbed sections with a design speed of 45 mph or less, and outside the clear zone in flush shoulder sections. See ***Chapter 4 – Roadside Design***, Table 4 – 2 Lateral Offset for further information.

Any bus bench or transit shelter adjacent to a sidewalk within the right of way of any street or highway shall be located to leave at least 48 inches of clearance for pedestrians and persons in wheelchairs. An additional one foot of clearance is required when any side of the sidewalk is adjacent to a curb or barrier. Such clearance shall be measured in a direction perpendicular to the centerline of the road. A separate bench pad or sidewalk flare out that provides a 30-inch-wide by 48-inch-deep wheelchair space adjacent to the bench shall be provided. Transit shelters should be set back, rather than eliminated during roadway widening.

Additional information on the design of transit facilities is found in ***Chapter 13 – Public Transit*** and ***Rule 14-20.003, F.A.C.*** and ***Rule 14-20.0032, F.A.C***.

C.10.f Traffic Calming

Often there are community concerns with controlling travel speeds impacting the safety of a street or highway such as in areas of concentrated pedestrian activities, those with narrow right of way, areas with numerous access points, on street parking, and other similar concerns. Local authorities may elect to use traffic calming design features that could include, but not be limited to, the installation of speed humps, speed tables, chicanes, or other pavement undulations. Roundabouts are also another method of dealing with this issue at intersections. For additional details and traffic calming treatments, refer to ***Chapter 15 – Traffic Calming***.

C.11 Reconstruction

C.11.a Introduction

The reconstruction (improvement or upgrading) of existing facilities may generate equal or greater safety benefits than similar expenditures for the construction of new streets and highways. Modifications to increase capacity should be evaluated for the potential effect on the highway safety characteristics. The long-range objectives should be to bring the existing network into compliance with current standards.

C.11.b Evaluation of Streets and Highways

The evaluation of the safety characteristics of streets and highways should be directed towards the identification of undesirable features on the existing system. Particular effort should be exerted to identify the location and nature of features with a high crash potential. Methods for identifying and evaluating hazards include the following:

- Identification of any geometric design feature not in compliance with minimum or desirable standards. This could be accomplished through a systematic survey and evaluation of existing facilities.
- Review of conflict points along a corridor.
- Information from maintenance or other personnel.
- Review of crash reports and traffic counts to identify locations with a large number of crashes or a high crash rate.
- Review for expected pedestrian and bicycle needs.

C.11.c Priorities

A large percentage of street and highway reconstruction and improvements is directed toward increasing efficiency and capacity. The program of reconstruction should be based, to a large extent, upon priorities for the improvement of safety characteristics.

The priorities for safety improvements should be based on the objective of obtaining the maximum reduction in crash potential for a given expenditure of funds. Elimination of conditions that may result in serious or fatal crashes should receive the highest priority in the schedule for reconstruction.

Specific high priority problem areas that should be corrected by reconstruction include the following:

- Obstructions to sight distance which can be economically corrected. The removal of buildings, parked vehicles, vegetation, large poles or groups of poles that significantly reduce the field of vision, and signs to improve sight distance on curves and particularly at intersections, can be of immense benefit in reducing crashes. The purchase of required line of sight easements is often a wise expenditure of highway funds. The establishment of sight distance setback lines is encouraged.
- Roadside and median hazards which can often be removed or relocated farther from the traveled way. Where removal is not feasible, objects should be shielded by redirection or energy absorbing devices. The reduction of the roadside hazard problem generally provides a good return on the safety dollar. Details and priorities for roadside hazard reduction, which are presented in ***Chapter 4 - Roadside Design***, should be incorporated into the overall priorities of the reconstruction program.
- Poor pavement surfaces which have become hazardous should be maintained or reconstructed in accordance with the design criteria set forth in ***Chapter 5 - Pavement Design And Construction***, and ***Chapter 10 – Maintenance And Resurfacing***.
- Specific design features which could be applied during reconstruction to enhance the operations and safety characteristics of a roadway include the following:
- Addition of lighting.
- Frontage roads may be utilized to improve the efficiency and safety of streets and highways with poor control of access.
- Widening of pavements and shoulders. This is often an economically feasible method of increasing capacity and reducing traffic hazards. Provision of median barriers (***Chapter 4 - Roadside Design***) can also produce significant safety benefits.

- The removal, streamlining, or modification of drainage structures.
- Alignment modifications are usually extensive and require extensive reconstruction of the roadway. Removal of isolated sharp curves is a reasonable and logical step in alignment modification. If major realignment is to be undertaken, every effort should be made to bring the entire facility into compliance with the requirements for new construction.
- The use of traffic control devices. This is generally an inexpensive method of alleviating certain highway defects.
- Median opening modifications.
- Addition of median, channelized islands, and mid-block pedestrian crossings.
- Auxiliary lanes.
- Existing bridges that fail to meet current design standards which are available to bicycle traffic, should be retrofitted on an interim basis as follows: As a general practice, bridges 125 feet in length or longer, bridges with unusual sight problem, steep gradients (which require the cyclist longer time to clear the span) or other unusual conditions should display the standard W11-1 caution sign with an added sign "On Bridge" at either end of the structure. Special care should be given to the right most portion of the roadway, where bicyclists are expected to travel, assuring smoothness, pavement uniformity, and freedom from longitudinal joints, and to ensure cleanliness. Failure to do so forces bicyclists farther into the center portion of the bridge, reducing traffic flow and safety.
- Addition of bicycle facilities.
- Addition of transit facilities, sidewalks, crosswalks, and other pedestrian features.

C.12 Design Exceptions

See ***Chapter 14 - Design Exceptions and Variations*** for the process to use when the standard criteria found in this Manual cannot be met.

C.13 Very Low-Volume Local Roads (ADT ≤ 400)

Where criteria is not specifically provided in this section, the design guidelines presented in Chapter 4 of the ***AASHTO Guidelines for Geometric Design of Very Low-Volume Local Roads (ADT ≤ 400), 1st Edition (2001)*** may be used in lieu of the policies in Chapter 5 of the AASHTO Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets. See Table 3 – 20 Minimum Lane Widths for lane widths for very low volume roads.

C.13.a Bridge Width

Bridges are considered functionally obsolete when the combination of ADT and bridge width is used in the National Bridge Inventory Item 68 for Deck Geometry to give a rating of 3 or less. To accommodate future traffic and prevent new bridges from being classified as functionally obsolete, the minimum roadway width for new two lane bridges on very low-volume roads with 20 year ADT between 100 and 400 vehicles/day shall be a minimum of 22 feet. If the entire roadway width (traveled way plus shoulders) is paved to a width greater than 22 feet, the bridge width should be equal to the total roadway width. If significant ADT increases are projected beyond twenty years, a bridge width of 28 feet should be considered. One-lane bridges may be provided on single-lane roads and on two-lane roads with ADT less than 100 vehicles/day where a one-lane bridge can operate effectively. The roadway width of a one-lane bridge shall be 15 ft. One-lane bridges should have pull-offs visible from opposite ends of the bridge where drivers can wait for traffic on the bridge to clear.

C.13.b Roadside Design

Bridge traffic barriers on very low-volume roads must have been successfully crash tested to a Test Level 2 (minimum) in accordance with NCHRP Report 350 or Manual for Assessing Safety Hardware (MASH).

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

CHAPTER 4

ROADSIDE DESIGN

TABLES

FIGURES

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

CHAPTER 4

ROADSIDE DESIGN

A INTRODUCTION

This chapter presents guidelines and standards for roadside designs intended to reduce the likelihood and/or consequences of roadside crashes. Due to the variety of causative factors, the designer should review crash reports for vehicles leaving the traveled way at any location. On average, lane departure crashes in Florida represent approximately 1/3 of all crashes and almost 50% of all highway fatalities. Construction and maintenance of safe medians and roadsides are of vital importance in the development of safe streets and highways. More information on lane departure crashes in Florida can be found in the Department's ***Florida Strategic Highway Safety Plan***.

Many of the standards presented in ***Chapter 3 – Geometric Design*** are predicated to a large extent upon reducing the probability of vehicles leaving the proper travel path. The intent of this chapter is to reduce the consequences of crashes by vehicles leaving the roadway. The design of the roadside beyond the shoulder should be considered and conducted as an integral part of the total highway design.

The general objective of roadside design is to provide an environment that will reduce the likelihood and/or consequences of crashes by vehicles that have left the traveled way. The achievement of this general objective will be aided by the following:

- Roadside areas adequate to allow reasonable space and time for a driver to regain or retain control of the vehicle and stop or return to the traveled way safely.
- Shoulders, medians, and roadsides that may be traversed safely without vehicle vaulting or overturning.
- Location of roadside fixed objects and hazards as far from the travel lane as is economically feasible.
- Roadsides that accommodate necessary maintenance vehicles, emergency maneuvers and emergency parking.
- Providing adequate shielding of hazards where appropriate and compatible with vehicle speeds and other design variables.

Prior to any other consideration, the designer should, in order of preference, attempt to:

1. Eliminate the hazard
    a. Remove the hazard
    b. Redesign the hazard so it can be safely traversed
    c. Relocate the hazard outside the clear zone
2. Make the hazard crashworthy
3. Shield the hazard with a longitudinal barrier or crash cushion.
4. Delineate the hazard and leave the hazard unshielded. This treatment is taken only when the barrier or crash cushion is more hazardous than the hazard. See Section E.5 for information on making this determination.

This chapter contains standards and general guidelines for situations encountered in roadside design due to the variety and complexity of possible situations encountered. In addressing roadside hazards, the designer should utilize the following as basic guidelines to develop a safe roadside design.

B ROADSIDE TOPOGRAPHY AND DRAINAGE FEATURES

B.1 Roadside Slopes, Clear Zone and Lateral Offset

Providing a sufficient amount of recoverable slope or clear zone adjacent to the roadway, free of obstacles and hazards provides an opportunity for an errant vehicle to safely recover. Minimum standards for roadside slopes, clear zone and lateral offsets to hazards are provided as follows.

B.1.a Roadside Slopes and Clear Zone

The slopes of all roadsides should be as flat as possible to allow for safe traversal by out of control vehicles. A slope of 1:4 or flatter should be used, desirably 1:6 or flatter. The transition between the shoulder and adjacent side slope should be rounded and free from discontinuities. A slope as steep as 1:3 may be used within the clear zone if the clear zone width is adjusted to provide a clear runout area as described below. If sufficient right of way exists, use flatter side slopes on the outside of horizontal curves.

Clear zone is the unobstructed, traversable area beyond the edge of the traveled way for the recovery of errant vehicles. The clear zone includes shoulders and bicycle lanes. The clear zone must be free of aboveground fixed objects, water bodies and non-traversable or critical slopes. Clear zone width requirements are dependent on AADT, design speed, and roadside slope conditions. With regard to the ability of an errant vehicle to traverse a roadside slope, slopes are classified as follows:

1. Recoverable Slope – Traversable Slope 1:4 or flatter. Motorists who encroach on recoverable foreslopes generally can stop their vehicles or slow them enough to return to the roadway safely.
2. Non-Recoverable Slope – Traversable Slope steeper than 1:4 and flatter than 1:3. Non-recoverable foreslopes are traversable but most vehicles will not be able to stop or return to the roadway easily. Vehicles on such slopes typically can be expected to reach the bottom.
3. Critical Slope – Non-Traversable Slope steeper than 1:3. A critical foreslope is one on which an errant vehicle has a higher propensity to overturn.

Clear zone widths for recoverable foreslopes 1V:4H and flatter are provided in Table 4 – 1 Minimum Width of Clear Zone. Clear zone is applied as shown in Figures 4 – 1 Clear Zone Plan View and 4 – 2 Basic Clear Zone Concept. Clear zone is measured from the edge of the traveled way.

On non-recoverable slopes steeper than 1:4 and flatter than 1:3, a high percentage of encroaching vehicles will reach the toe of these slopes. Therefore, the clear zone distance cannot logically end at the toe of a non-recoverable slope. When such non-recoverable slopes are present within the clear zone width provided in Table 4 – 1, additional clear zone width is required. The minimum amount of additional width provided must equal the width of the non-recoverable slope with no less than 10 feet of recoverable slope provided at the toe of the non-recoverable slope. See Figure 4 – 3 Adjusted Clear Zone Concept.

When clear zone requirements cannot be met, see ***Sections C, D*** and ***E*** for requirements for roadside barriers and other treatments for safe roadside design. In addition, the ***AASHTO Roadside Design Guide (2011)***, and ***AASHTO Guidelines for Geometric Design of Very Low Volume Local Roads (ADT ≤ 400) (2001)*** may be referenced for a more thorough discussion of roadside design.

Table 4 – 1 Minimum Width of Clear Zone (feet)[1]

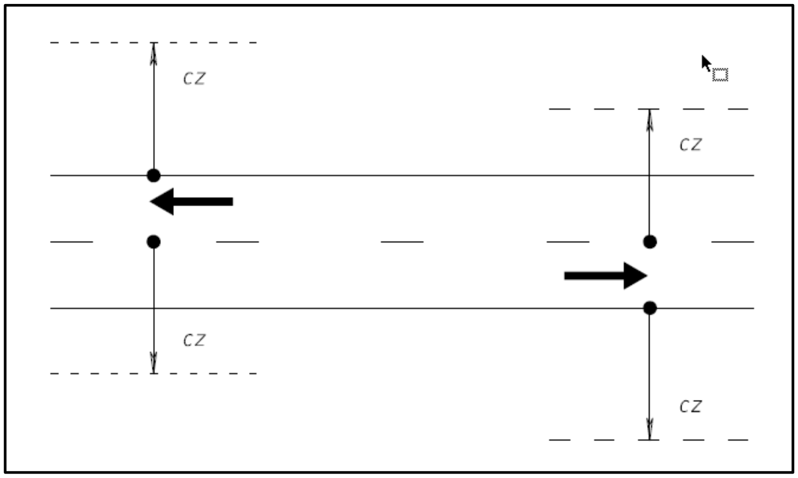
Design Speed mph	AADT ≥ 1500			AADT < 1500[1, 2]		
	Travel Lanes & Multilane Ramps		Aux Lanes and Single Lane Ramps	Travel Lanes & Multilane Ramps		Aux Lanes and Single Lane Ramps
	1V:6H or flatter	1V:5H to 1V:4H	1V:4H or flatter	1V:6H or flatter	1V:5H to 1V:4H	1V:4H or flatter
≤ 40	14	16	10	10[2]	12[2]	10[2]
45 – 50	20	24	14	14	16	14
55	22	26	18	16	20	14
60	30	30[3]	24	20	26	18
65 – 70	30	30[3]	24	24	28	18

1. Clear Zone for roads functionally classified as Local Roads with a design AADT ≤ 400 vehicles per day:
   a. A clear zone of 6 feet or more in width must be provided if it can be done so with minimum social/environmental impacts.
   b. Where constraints of cost, terrain, right of way, or potential social/environmental impacts make the provision of a 6 feet clear zone impractical, clear zones less than 6 feet in width may be used, including designs with 0 feet clear zone.
   c. In all cases, clear zone must be tailored to site-specific conditions, considering cost-effectiveness and safety tradeoffs. The use of adjustable clear zone widths, such as wider clear zone dimensions at sharp horizontal curves where there is a history of run-off-road crashes, or where there is evidence of vehicle encroachments such as scarring of trees or utility poles, may be appropriate. Lesser values of clear zone width may be appropriate on tangent sections of the same roadway.
   d. Other factors for consideration in analyzing the need for providing clear zones include the crash history, the expectation for future traffic volume growth on the facility, and the presence of vehicles wider than 8.5 feet and vehicles with wide loads, such as farm equipment.
2. May be reduced to 7 feet for a design AADT < 750 vehicles per day.
3. Greater clear zone widths provide additional safety for higher speed and volume roads. See Section 3.1 of the ***AASHTO Roadside Design Guide*** ***(2011)*** for further information.

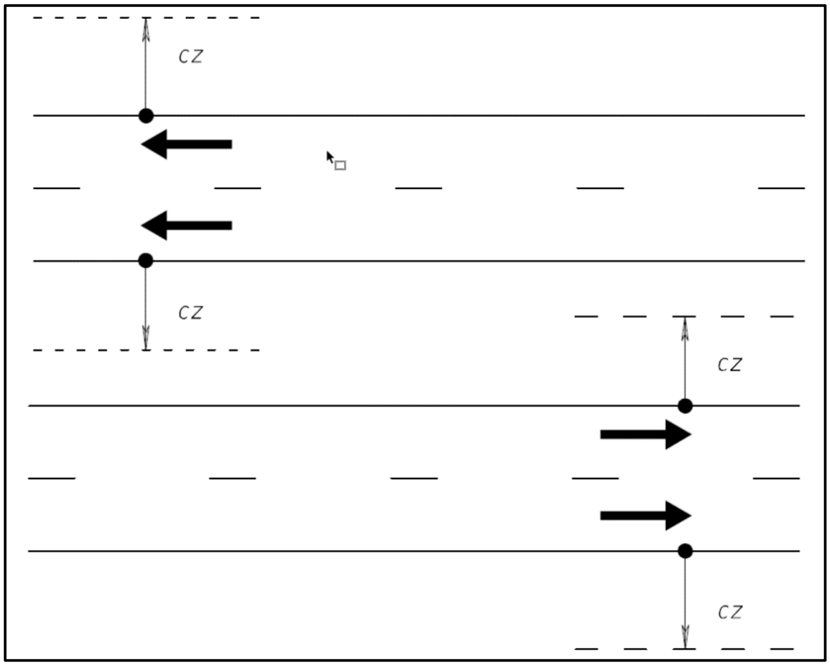
Source: Table 3 – 1, Suggested Clear Zone Distances in Feet from the Edge of the Travel Lane, 2011 AASHTO Roadside Design Guide.

Figure 4 – 1 Clear Zone Plan View

Two Lane, Two -Way Roadway



Multi-Lane Two-Way Roadway



Note: 1. Lateral offset is measured out from the centerline of roadway and edge of traveled way or face of curb to a roadside object or feature.

Figure 4 – 2 Basic Clear Zone Concept

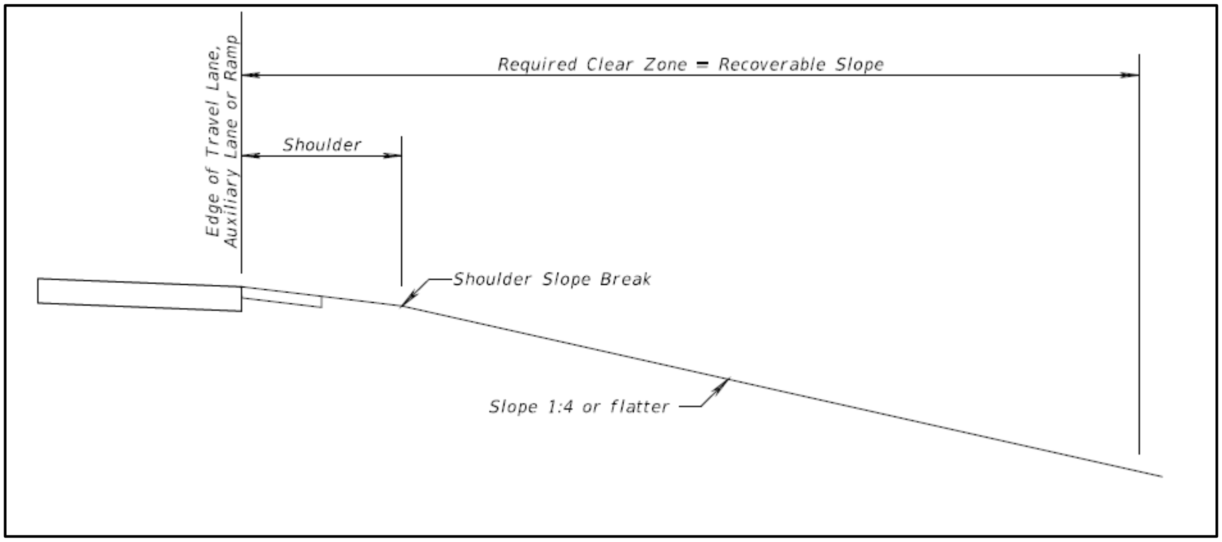
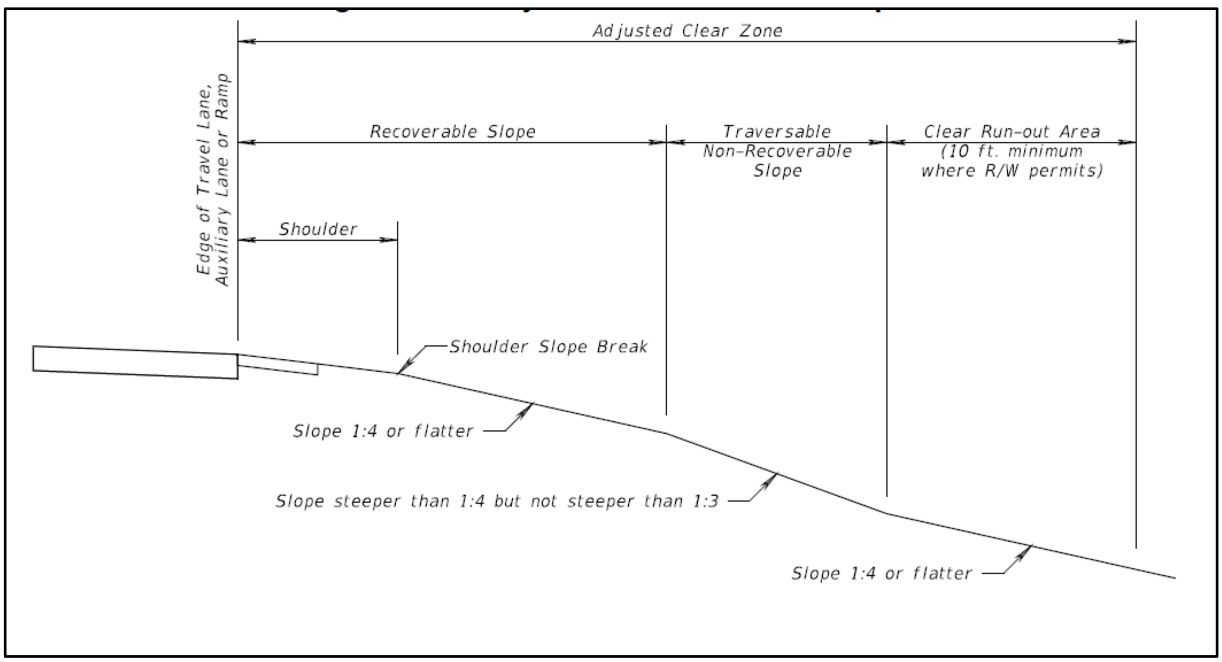
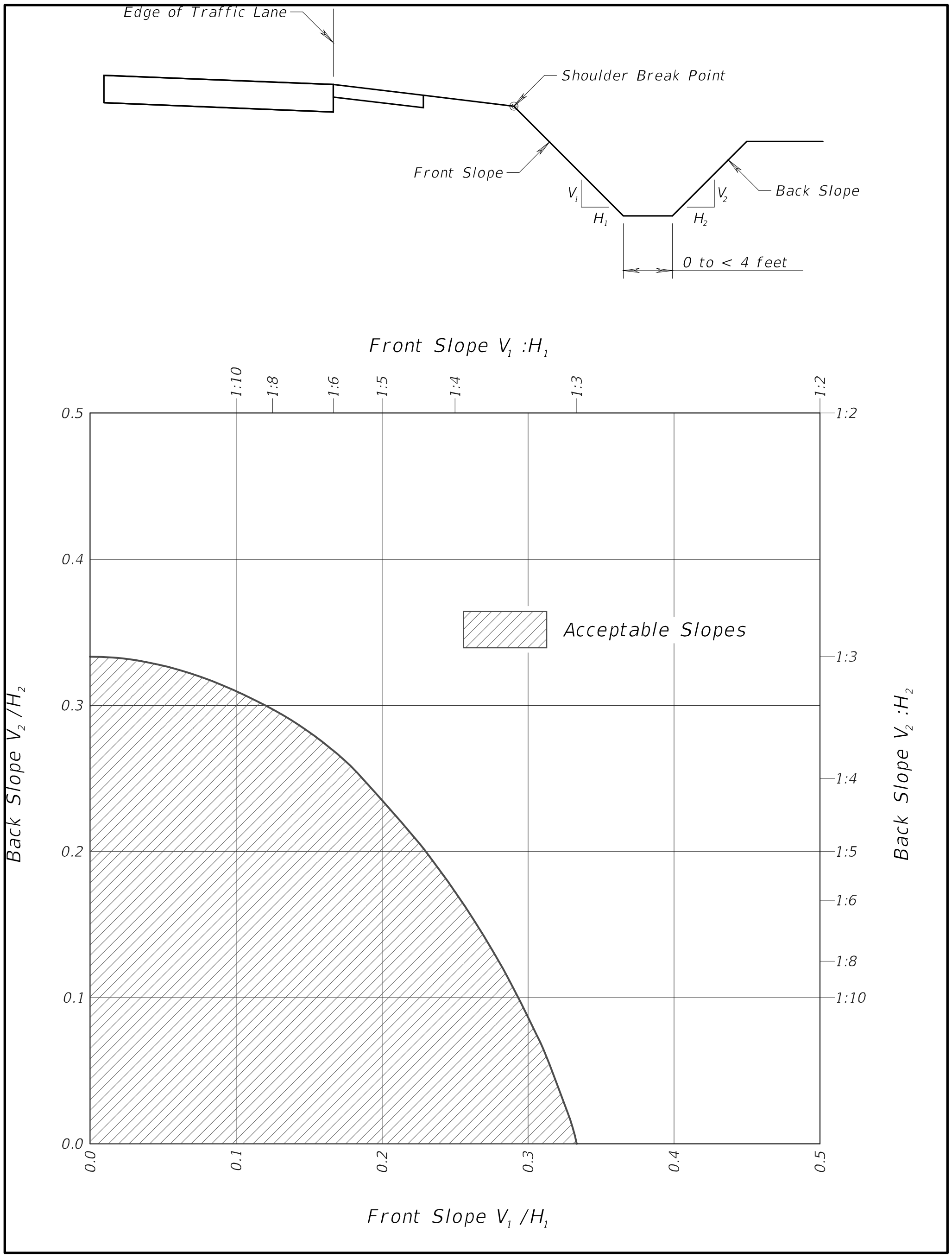


Figure 4 – 3 Adjusted Clear Zone Concept



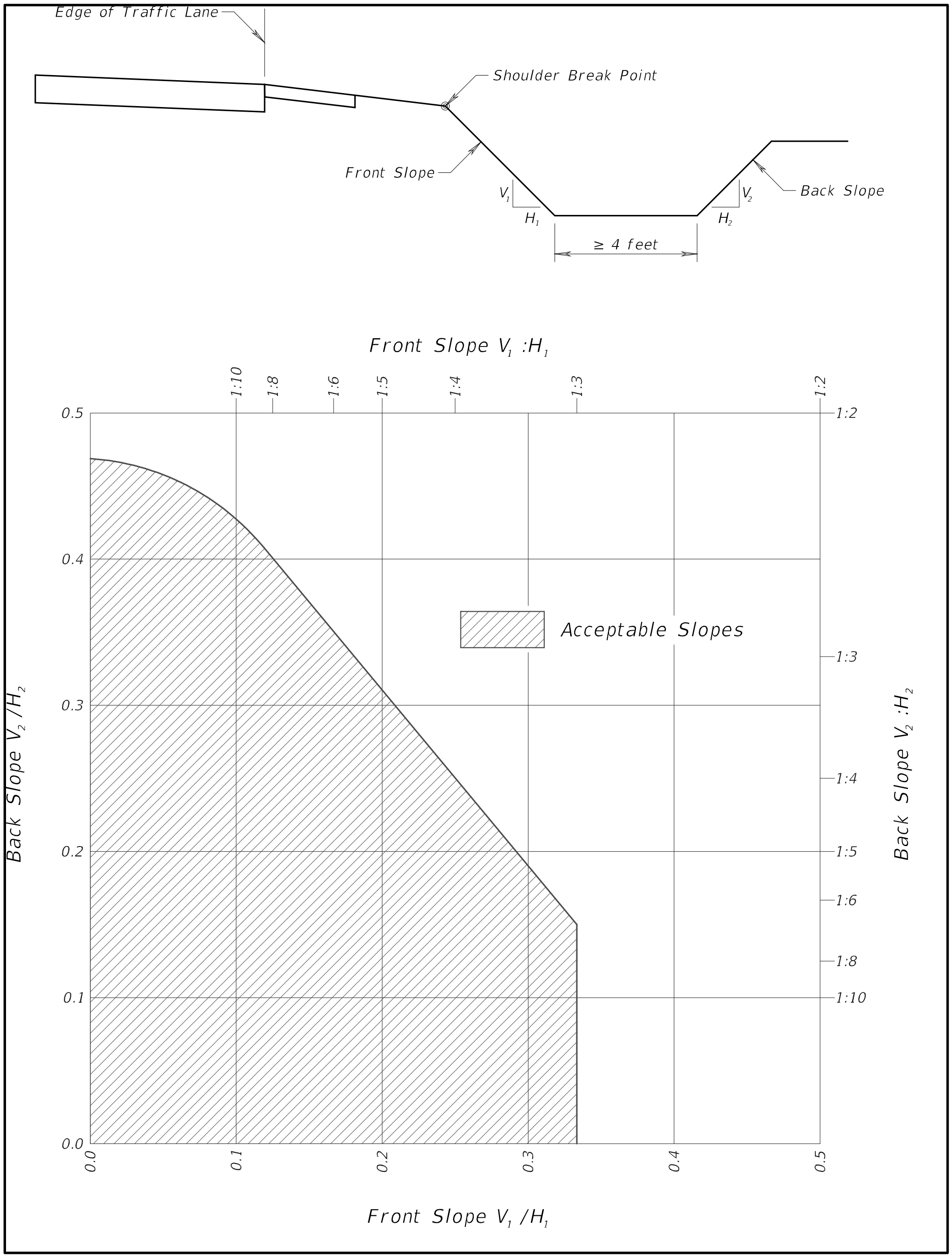
Roadside ditches may be included within the clear zone if properly designed to be traversable. Acceptable cross section slope criteria for roadside ditches within the clear zone is provided in Figure 4 – 4 Roadside Ditches – Bottom Width 0 to < 4 Feet and Figure 4 – 5 Roadside Ditches – Bottom Width ≥ 4 Feet. These roadside ditch configurations are considered traversable.

Figure 4 – 4 Roadside Ditches – Bottom Width 0 to < 4 Feet



Source: Figure 3 – 6, 2011 AASHTO Roadside Design Guide.

Figure 4 – 5 Roadside Ditches – Bottom Width ≥ 4 Feet



Source: Figure 3 – 6, 2011 AASHTO Roadside Design Guide.

B.1.b Lateral Offset

Lateral offset is the lateral distance from a specified point on the roadway such as the edge of traveled way or face of curb, to a roadside feature or above ground object that is more than 4 inches above grade. Lateral offset requirements apply to all roadways. The requirements for various objects or features are based on:

- Design speed,
- Location; i.e. rural areas or within urban boundary,
- Flush shoulder or with curb,
- Traffic volumes, and
- Lane type; e.g. travel lanes, auxiliary lanes, and ramps.

Lateral Offset requirements are provided in Table 4 – 2 Lateral Offset.

Flush shoulder roadways typically have sufficient right of way to provide the required clear zone widths. Therefore, lateral offset requirements for these type roadways are based on providing the clear zone widths provided in Table 4 – 1. Minimum Width of Clear Zone.

On urban curbed roadways with design speeds ≤ 45 mph, lateral offsets based on Table 4 – 1 clear zone requirements should be provided where practical. However, these urban low speed roads are typically located in areas where right of way is restricted (characterized by more dense abutting development, presence of parking, closer spaced intersections and accesses to property, and more bicyclists and pedestrians). The available right of way is typically insufficient to provide the required clear zone widths. Therefore, lateral offset requirements for above ground objects on these roadways are based on offsets needed for normal operation and not on maintaining a clear roadside for errant vehicles.

Table 4 – 2 Lateral Offset (feet)

Roadside Feature	Urban Curbed Roadways Design Speed ≤ 45 (mph)	All Other
Above Ground Objects[1]	4 ft. from Face of Curb[2]	Clear Zone Width
Drop Off Hazards[3]	Clear Zone Width	Clear Zone Width
Water Bodies	Clear Zone Width	Clear Zone Width
Canal Hazards	See Section B.2.c	See Section B.2.c

1. Above ground objects are anything greater than 4 inches in height and are firm and unyielding or do not meet crashworthy or breakaway criteria. For urban curbed areas ≤ 45 mph this also includes crashworthy or breakaway objects except those necessary for the safe operation of the roadway.
2. May be reduced to 1.5 ft. from Face of Curb on roads functionally classified as Local Streets and on all roads where the 4 ft. minimum offset cannot be reasonably obtained and other alternatives are deemed impractical.
3. Drop off hazards are:
   a. Any vertical faced structure with a drop off (e.g. retaining wall, wing-wall, etc.) located within the Clear Zone.
   b. Slopes steeper than 1:3 located within the Clear Zone.
   c. Drop-offs with significant crash history.

B.2 Drainage Features

Drainage design is an important aspect of the long-term performance of a roadway, and to achieve an effective design, drainage features are necessary in close proximately to travel lanes. These features include ditches, curbs, and drainage structures (e.g. transverse/parallel pipes, culverts, endwalls, wingwalls, and inlets). The placement of these features is to be evaluated as part of roadside safety design. Refer to ***Chapter 20 – Drainage*** for information regarding proper hydraulic design.

When evaluating the design of roadside topography and drainage features, consider the future maintenance implications of the facility. Routine maintenance or repairs needed to ensure the continued function of the roadway slopes or drainage may lead to long-term expenses and activities, which disrupts traffic flow and exposes maintenance personnel to traffic conditions.

B.2.a Roadside Ditches

Minimum standards for side slopes and bottom widths of roadside ditches and channels within the clear zone are provided in Section B.1.a.

B.2.b Drainage Structures

Drainage structures and their associated end treatments located along the roadside should be implemented using either a traversable design or located outside the required clear zone. The various drainage inlets and pipe end treatments needed for an efficient drainage design typically contain curb inlets, ditch bottom inlets, endwalls, wingwalls, headwalls, flared end sections and/or mitered end sections. If not adequately designed or properly located, these features can create hazardous conditions (e.g. abrupt deceleration or rollovers) for vehicles. For detailed background information concerning traversable designs, refer to the ***AASHTO Roadside Design Guide***.

Standard details for drainage structures and end treatments commonly used in Florida are provided the in the Department's ***Standards Plans Index 425, 430,*** and ***436 Series***. Drainage features shown in the Department's ***Standard Plans*** have the potential for conflict with a vehicle either departing the roadway or within a commonly traversed section of a roadway. The Department's ***Drainage Manual*** identifies those standard drainage structures which are acceptable for use within the clear zone.

B.2.c Canals and Water Bodies

Roadside canals and other bodies of water close to the roadway should be eliminated wherever feasible. When not feasible, they should be located outside of the clear zone as shown in Table 4 – 1 Minimum Width of Clear Zone. If the body of water meets the definition of a canal hazard, additional lateral offset is required for arterial and collector roadways.

A canal hazard is defined as an open ditch parallel to the roadway for a minimum distance of 1,000 feet and with seasonal water depth more than 3 feet for extended periods of time (24 hours or more).

Canal hazard lateral offset is the distance from the edge of travel lane, auxiliary lane or ramp to the top of the canal side slope nearest the road. Minimum required lateral offset distances are as follows:

- Not less than 60 feet for flush shoulder and curbed roadways with design speeds of 50 mph or greater.
- Not less than 50 feet for flush shoulder roadways with design speeds of 45 mph or less.
- Not less than 40 feet for curbed roadways with design speeds of 45 mph or less.

See also Figure 4 – 6 Minimum Offsets for Canal Hazards (Flush Shoulders) and Figure 4 – 7 Minimum Offsets for Canal Hazards (Curb and Curb and Gutter). On new alignments and/or for new canals, greater distances should be provided to accommodate future widening of the roadway.

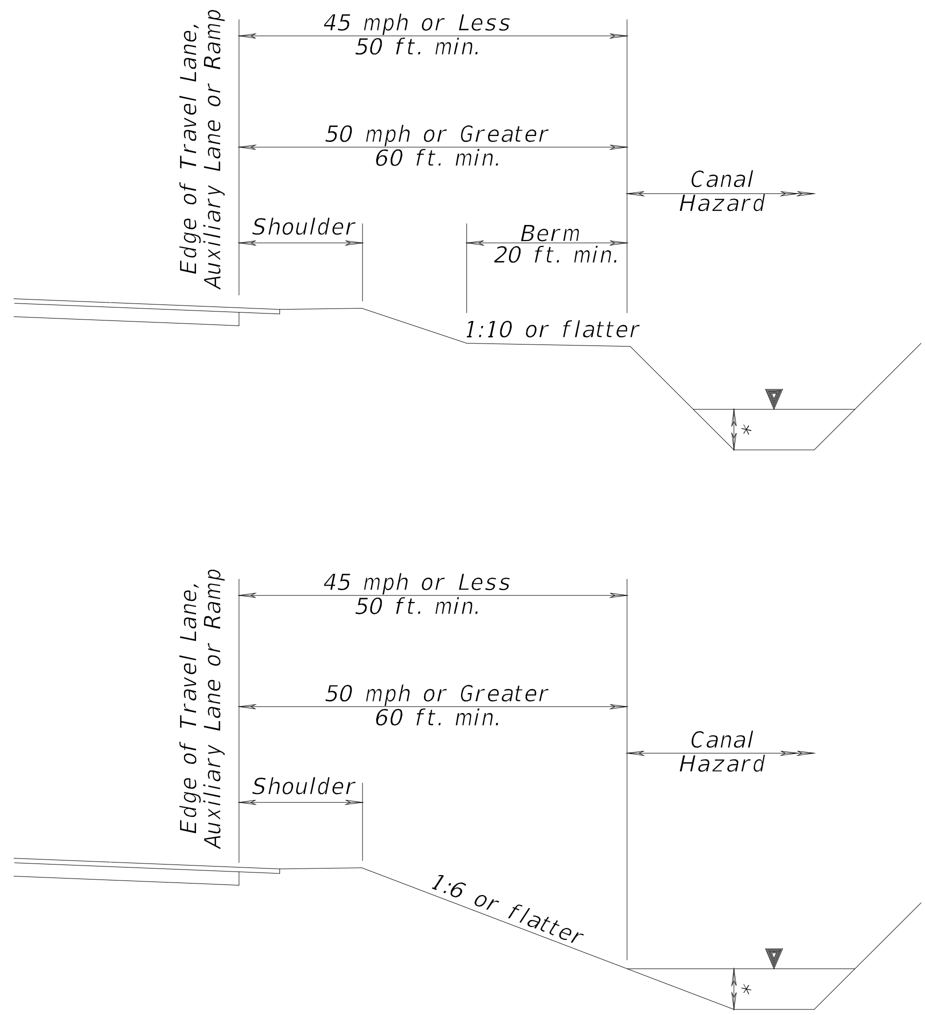
On fill sections, a flat berm (maximum 1:10 slope) no less than 20 feet in width between the toe of the roadway front slope and the top of the canal side slope nearest the roadway should be provided.

When the slope between the roadway and the "extended period of time" water surface is 1:6 or flatter, the minimum distance can be measured from the edge of the travel lane, auxiliary lane, or ramp to the "extended period of time" water surface. A berm is not required.

On sections with ditch cuts, a minimum of 20 feet between the toe of the front slope and the top of the canal side slope nearest the roadway should be provided.

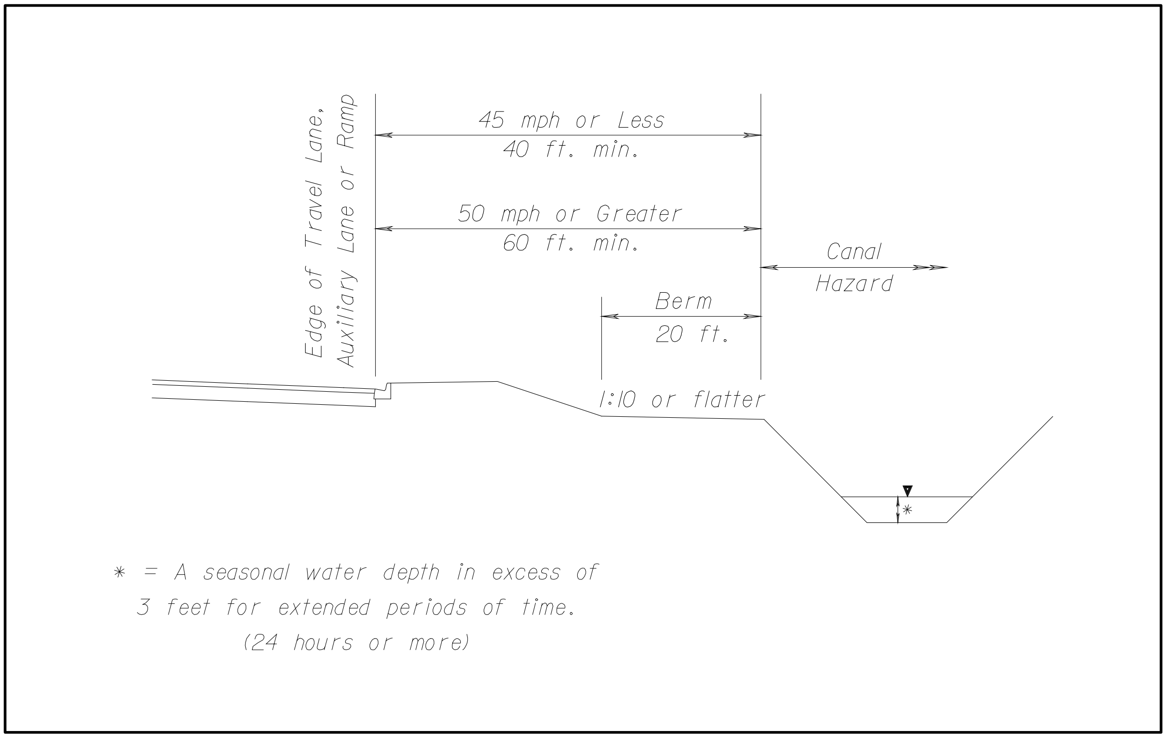
When the required minimum lateral offset cannot be met, the canal hazard shall be shielded with a crashworthy roadside barrier. Barriers shall be located as far from the traveled way as practical. When shielding canal hazards the barrier shall be located outside the clear zone where possible. Guardrail shall be located no closer than 6 feet from the canal front slope and high tension cable barrier shall be no closer than 15 feet from the canal front slope.

Figure 4 – 6 Minimum Offsets for Canal Hazards (Flush Shoulders)



* = A seasonal water depth in excess of 3 feet for extended periods of time. (24 hours or more)

Figure 4 – 7 Minimum Offsets for Canal Hazards (Curbed)



B.2.d Curb

Curbs with closed drainage systems are typically used in urban areas to minimize the amount of right of way needed. Curbs also provide a tangible definition of the roadway limits and delineation of access points. These functions are important in urban areas because of the following typical characteristics:

- Low design speed (Design Speed ≤ 45 mph);
- Dense abutting development;
- Closely spaced intersections and accesses to property;
- Higher number of motorized vehicles, bicyclists and pedestrian volumes, and;
- Restricted right of way.

Chapter 3 – Geometric Design provides criteria on the use of curbs. It should be noted that curbs have no redirectional capabilities except at very low speeds; less than the lowest design speeds typically used for urban streets. Therefore, curbs are not considered to be effective in shielding a hazard and are not to be used to reduce lateral offset requirements.

FDOT's ***Standard Pans, Index 520-001*** provides standard details for curb shapes commonly used in Florida. Typical applications for urban roadways include Type E and Type F curbs. Both curb types have a sloped face; however, the Type E has a flatter face to allow vehicles to traverse it more easily. Shoulder gutter is also frequently used along roadway fill sections and bridge approaches to prevent excessive runoff down embankment slopes. The Department's ***Drainage Manual*** may be referenced for direction on the use of shoulder gutter.

Curbs types such as Type E (height 5" or less with a sloping face equal to or flatter than the Type E) may be used in the following cases on high speed roadways. The face of the curb shall be placed no closer to the edge of the traveled way than the required shoulder width.

- High speed multilane divided highways with design speeds of 55 mph and less. For examples see the Department's ***Design Manual, Chapter 210 Arterials and Collectors.***
- Directional Median Openings. For examples see the Department's ***Design Manual, Chapter 212 Intersections***.
- Transit Stops (harmonize with flush shoulder accessible transit stops).

C ROADSIDE SAFETY FEATURES AND CRASH TEST CRITERIA

While a traversable and unobstructed roadside is highly desirable from a safety standpoint, some appurtenances near the traveled way are necessary. Man-made fixed objects that frequently occupy road rights-of-way include traffic signs, traffic signals, roadway lighting, railroad warning devices, intelligent transportation systems (ITS), utility poles, and mailboxes. Other features include safety hardware such as barriers, end treatments and crash cushions which are often necessary to shield errant motorists from a variety of roadside hazards.

These features are in addition to trees and other vegetation often present, either naturally occurring or as part of landscaping. Applicable criteria for each of these features is presented in the following sections. Certain features are required to meet specific crash test criteria involving full scale crash testing.

C.1 Crash Test Criteria

Crash test criteria for roadside safety features has been in existence since 1962. ***NCHRP Report 350, Recommended Procedures for the Safety Performance Evaluation of Highway Features,*** published in 1993, has been the accepted criteria for safety hardware device testing for many years. Changes have occurred in vehicle design, hardware performance, and testing methodologies, which have led to improvements in crash barrier and roadside design.

More recently, the ***AASHTO Manual for Assessing Safety Hardware (MASH)*** was published and has superseded ***NCHRP Report 350*** as the most current criteria. To allow adequate time for the testing and development of features under MASH criteria, safety hardware installed on new and reconstruction projects shall meet ***NCHRP Report 350*** crash test criteria as a minimum. For projects on the National Highway System, a schedule has been established for implementing requirements for devices meeting MASH criteria. For more information see FHWA's web site for ***Roadway Departure Safety***. New and reconstruction projects not on the National Highway System are not required to conform to this implementation schedule, but should comply to the extent practical.

The Department maintains standard details, specifications and approved products for all types of roadside devices commonly used in Florida that meet the required crash test criteria, and are acceptable for use on all public roadways. Non-proprietary, standardized devices are detailed in the Departments ***Standard***

Plans, Indexes 521, 536, and 544 Series. Proprietary products are included on the Department's ***Approved Product List*** ***(APL).*** These devices address the majority of roadside needs for all roads in Florida. The most current version of the ***Standard Plans*** and ***APL*** should be used as the Department maintains and updates these publications as necessary to comply with required implementation dates for changes in crash test criteria.

For cases where a device may be needed that is not covered by the Department's standards and approved products, the Federal Highway Administration (FHWA) maintains lists of eligible crashworthy devices, which can be found on their website for ***Roadway Departure Safety***. In addition, the AASHTO-Associated General Contractors of America (AGC}-American Road and Transportation Builders Association (ARTBA) Joint Committee Task Force 13 report, *A Guide to Standardized Highway Barrier Hardware*, provides engineering drawings for a multitude of barrier components and systems.

The criteria for crash testing specified in ***NCHRP Report 350*** and ***AASHTO MASH*** provides six Test Levels (TL-1 thru TL-6) for the evaluation of roadside hardware suitability. A test level is defined by impact speed and angle of approach, and the type of test vehicle. Test vehicles range in size from a small car to a loaded tractor trailer truck. Each Test Level provides an increasing level of service in ascending numerical order.

Tables 4 – 3 Test Levels for Barriers, End Terminals, Crash Cushions and 4 – 4 Test Levels for Breakaway Devices, Work Zone Traffic Control Devices summarize the vehicle types, vehicle mass, test speeds and impact angles used in testing for each test level. Tables 4 – 3 and 4 – 4 also show the differences in vehicle mass between MASH and ***NCHRP Report 350*** criteria for the small car, pickup and single unit truck test vehicles.

In addition to differences in vehicle mass, MASH test criteria incorporated several other changes that differ from ***NCHRP Report 350***. For additional information on crash test criteria, refer to the ***AASHTO MASH***, ***NCHRP Report 350***, the ***AASHTO Roadside Design Guide***, and the FHWA web site for ***Roadway Departure Safety***.

Table 4 – 3 Test Levels for Barriers, End Terminals, Crash Cushions

Test Level	Test Vehicle Type	Vehicle Designation and Mass		Test Conditions MASH	
		NCHRP 350 (lbs.)	**MASH** (lbs.)	**Impact Speed** (mph)	**Impact Angle (for Barriers)** (degrees)
1	Passenger Car Pickup Truck	820C 1800 2000P 4400	1100C 2420 2270P 5000	31 31	25 25
2	Passenger Car Pickup Truck	820C 1800 2000P 4400	1100C 2420 2270P 5000	44 44	25 25
3	Passenger Car Pickup Truck	820C 1800 2000P 4400	1100C 2420 2270P 5000	62 62	25 25
4	Passenger Car Pickup Truck Single-Unit Truck	820C 1800 2000P 4400 8000S 17640	1100C 2420 2270P 5000 10000S 22000	62 62 56	25 25 15
5	Passenger Car Pickup Truck Tractor-Van Trailer	820C 1800 2000P 4400 36000V 79300	1100C 2420 2270P 5000 36000V 79300	62 62 50	25 25 15
6	Passenger Car Pickup Truck Tractor-Tank Trailer	820C 1800 2000P 4400 36000V 79300	1100C 2420 2270P 5000 36000V 79300	62 62 50	25 25 15
Note: Test Levels 1, 2 and 3 apply to end terminals and crash cushions, while all 6 Test Levels apply to barriers.					

Table 4 – 4 Test Levels for Breakaway Devices, Work Zone Traffic Control Devices

Test Level	Feature	Test Vehicle Type	Vehicle Designation and Mass		Impact Speeds		Impact Angle (degrees)
			NCHRP 350 (lbs.)	MASH (lbs.)	Low Speed (mph)	High Speed (mph)	
2	Support Structures and Work Zone Traffic Control Devices	Passenger Car Pickup Truck	820C 1800 Not Required	1100C 2420 2270P 5000	19 19	44 44	0 – 20 0 – 20
	Breakaway Utility Poles	Passenger Car Pickup Truck	820C 1800 Not Required	1100C 2420 2270P 5000	31 31	44 44	0 – 20 0 – 20
3	Support Structures and Work Zone Traffic Control Devices	Passenger Car Pickup Truck	820C 1800 Not Required	1100C 2420 2270P 5000	19 19	62 62	0 – 20 0 – 20
	Breakaway Utility Poles	Passenger Car Pickup Truck	820C 1800 Not Required	1100C 2420 2270P 5000	31 31	62 62	0 – 20 0 – 20

Note: Criteria for Test Levels 2 and 3 are provided for support structures, work zone traffic control devices and breakaway utility poles. Test Level 3 is the basic test level used for most devices.

As noted in Tables 4 – 3 and 4 – 4, Test Levels 1 through 3 are limited to passenger vehicles while Test Levels 4 through 6 incorporate heavy trucks. The test speeds and impact angles used for testing represent approximately 92.5% of real word crashes. As implied by the information in Tables 4 – 3 and 4 – 4:

1. Test Level 1 devices should be used only on facilities with design speeds 30 mph and less.

2. Test Level 2 devices should be used only on facilities with design speeds 45 mph and less.
3. Test Level 3 through Test Level 6 devices are considered acceptable for all design speeds.
4. Test Level 3 devices are generally considered acceptable for facilities of all types and most roadside conditions.
5. Test Levels 4 through 6 should be considered on facilities with high volumes of heavy trucks and/or where penetration beyond the barrier would result in high risk to the public or surrounding facilities.

For additional information regarding appropriate application of Test Levels refer to the ***AASHTO Roadside Design Guide***.

C.2 Safety Hardware Upgrades

On new construction and reconstruction projects existing obsolete safety hardware shall be upgraded or replaced with hardware meeting crash test criteria as described above.

For existing roadways, highway agencies should upgrade existing highway safety hardware to comply with current crash test criteria either when it becomes damaged beyond repair, or when an individual agency's maintenance policies require an upgrade to the safety hardware.

The Department's ***Design Manual, Chapter 215 Roadside Safety*** provides a list of considerations when investigating the need for upgrading barriers and other hardware. The Department's Design Standards provide standard details for transitioning new barriers to existing barriers. The ***AASHTO Roadside Design Guide*** also provides guidelines for upgrading hardware.

D SIGNS, SIGNALS, LIGHTING SUPPORTS, UTILITY POLES, TREES AND SIMILAR ROADSIDE FEATURES

D.1 General

This section provides criteria for traffic sign supports, signal supports, lighting supports, utility poles, trees and similar roadside features.

Generally, those roadside appurtenances and features that cannot be removed or located outside the clear zone must meet breakaway criteria to reduce impact severity. For those features located within the clear zone where it is not practical to meet breakaway criteria, shielding may be warranted and shall be considered.

D.2 Performance Requirements for Breakaway Devices

The term breakaway support refers to traffic sign, highway lighting, and other supports that are designed to yield, fracture, or separate when impacted by a vehicle. The release mechanism may be a slip plane, plastic hinge, fracture element, or combination thereof. Crash test criteria applicable to breakaway devices are presented in Section C. Additional requirements for breakaway supports are provided in the ***AASHTO Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaries, and Traffic Signals***. For a more detailed discussion on breakaway supports, refer to the ***AASHTO Roadside Design Guide***.

See Section C for references that provide additional information and details on crash tested breakaway supports.

D.3 Sign Supports

Traffic signs and sign supports shall meet the requirements provided in the ***Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD)*** as stated in ***Chapter 18 – Signing and Marking***. The ***MUTCD*** requires all sign supports within the clear zone to be shielded or breakaway. See Section B for clear zone requirements. Only when the use of breakaway supports is not practicable should a traffic barrier or crash cushion be used exclusively to shield sign supports. In addition, sign supports should be located where they are least likely to be hit. Where possible, signs should be placed behind existing roadside barriers beyond the design deflection distance or on existing structures.

The Department's ***Standard Plans, Index 700 Series*** provides details for breakaway supports for single and multi-post ground mounted signs that are acceptable for use within the clear zone. The most current version of these ***Standard Plans*** details should be used as the Department maintains and updates these details as necessary to comply with required implementation dates for changes in crash test criteria.

Overhead signs and cantilever signs require relatively large size support systems. The potential safety consequences of these systems falling necessitate a fixed-base design that cannot be made breakaway. Overhead sign and cantilever sign supports therefore are required to be located outside the clear zone (Section B) or be shielded with a crashworthy barrier (Section E). Where possible, these supports should be located behind traffic barriers shielding nearby overpasses or other existing structures, or the signs should be mounted on the nearby structure. The Department's ***Standard Plans, Indexes 700-012*** and ***700-013*** provide details and instructions for the design of these systems.

D.4 Traffic Signal Supports

Traffic signal supports commonly used in Florida are fixed base and shall meet the required lateral offset and clear zone criteria provided in Section B. Traffic signal supports should not be located within medians. The Department's ***Standard Plans, Indexes 641-010, 649-010,*** *and* ***649-030*** provide details and instructions for the design of traffic signal supports.

D.5 Lighting Supports

Lateral offset criteria for lighting supports depend on whether the support is breakaway or fixed base as discussed below. See ***Chapter 6 - Lighting*** for additional design criteria for lighting.

D.5.a Conventional Lighting

Supports for conventional lighting (heights up to 60 feet) shall be breakaway which are typically frangible bases (cast aluminum transformer bases), slip bases, or frangible couplings (couplers). The Department's ***Standard Plans, Indexes 715-001*** and ***715-002*** provide further information for breakaway lighting supports which are acceptable for use. As a general rule, a breakaway lighting support will fall near the line of the path of an impacting vehicle. The mast arm usually rotates and points away from the roadway when resting on the ground. For poles located on the outside of the roadway (not in medians), this action generally results in the pole not falling into other traffic lanes. However, the designer should remain aware that these falling poles may endanger other motorists or bystanders such as pedestrians and bicyclists. The ***AASHTO Roadside Design Guide*** may be referenced for additional discussion on breakaway lighting supports.

On curbed roadways with design speeds 45 mph or less, breakaway lighting supports shall be located to meet lateral offset requirements provided in Section B, Table 4 – 2.

On flush shoulder roadways, breakaway lighting supports shall be located a minimum of 20 feet from the nearest travel lane, 14 feet from the nearest auxiliary lane or outside the clear zone provided in Section B, Table 4 – 1, whichever is less. The foreslope shall be 1:6or flatter in cases where supports are located within the clear zone.

Lighting should not be located in medians, except in conjunction with barriers that are justified for other reasons.

D.5.b High Mast Lighting

High mast or high-level lighting supports are fixed-base support systems that do not yield or break away on impact. High mast lighting supports shall be located outside the clear zone provided in Section B, Table 4 – 1. High mast lighting shall not be located in medians except in conjunction with barriers that are justified for other reasons. The Department's ***Standard Plans, Index 715-010*** provides additional information.

D.6 Utility Poles

Utility poles shall be located to meet lateral offset and clear zone requirements provided in Section B and be located as close as practical to the right of way line. They should be installed per the permitting agency's requirements. The ***AASHTO Roadside Design Guide*** ***(2011)*** provides additional discussion and guidance on utility poles.

In accordance with ***Section 337.403, F.S.***, existing utility poles must be relocated when ***unreasonably*** interfering with the "convenient, safe, or continuous use, or the maintenance, improvement, extension, or expansion" of public roads. Utility poles adjacent to road improvement projects, but not directly interfering with construction, should be considered for relocation, to the extent they can be relocated, to achieve the clear zone requirements of Table 3-12. Utility poles that cannot be relocated and will remain within the clear zone, should be approved through the exception process prescribed in ***Chapter 14 - Design Exceptions and Variations.***

D.7 Trees

Trees with a diameter greater than 4 inches measured 6 inches above grade shall be located to meet lateral offset and clear zone requirements in Section B, Tables 4 – 1 and 4 – 2. The ***AASHTO Roadside Design Guide*** provides additional discussion and guidance on trees.

D.8 Miscellaneous

D.8.a Fire Hydrants

Most fire hydrants are made of cast iron and are expected to fracture upon impact, however, crash testing meeting current criteria has not been done to verify that designs meet breakaway criteria. For this reason, fire hydrants should be located as far from the traveled way as practical and preferably outside lateral offset/clear zone requirements in Section B, yet where they are still readily accessible to and usable by emergency personnel. Any portion of the hydrant not designed to break away should be within 4 inches of the ground.

D.8.b Railroad Crossing Warning Devices

See ***Chapter 7 – Rail-Highway Crossings*** for location requirements for railroad crossing warning devices.

D.8.c Mailbox Supports

Mailboxes and their location are subject to US Postal Service requirements. They are often located within the clear zone and pose a potential hazard.

However, with proper design and placement, the severity of impacts with mailboxes can be reduced. To achieve consistency, it is recommended each highway agency adopt regulations for the design and placement of mail boxes within the right of way of public highways. The ***AASHTO Roadside Design Guide*** ***(2011)*** provides a model regulation that is compatible with US Postal Service requirements.

The following requirements apply to mailbox installations on public roadways:

No mailbox will be permitted where access is obtained from a freeway or where access is otherwise prohibited by law or regulation. Mailboxes shall be located as follows:

- On the right-hand side of the roadway in the carrier's direction of travel except on one-way streets, where they may be placed on the left-hand side.
- Where a mailbox is located at a driveway entrance, it shall be placed on the far side of the driveway in the carrier's direction of travel.
- Where a mailbox is located at an intersecting road, it shall be located a minimum of 200 feet beyond the center of the intersecting road in the carrier's direction of travel. This distance may be decreased to 100 feet on very low volume roads.
- When a mailbox is installed in the vicinity of an existing guardrail, it should, when practical, be placed behind the guardrail.

The bottom of the box shall be set at a height established by the U. S. Postal Service, usually from 41 to 45 inches above the roadway surface.

On flush shoulder roadways, the roadside face of the box should be offset from the edge of the traveled way a distance no less than the greater of the following:

- 8 feet (where no paved shoulder exists and shoulder cross slope is 10 percent or flatter), or
- width of the shoulder present plus 6 to 8 inches, or
- width of a turnout specified by the jurisdiction plus 6 to 8 inches.

On very low volume flush shoulder roads with low operating speeds the offset may be reduced to 6 feet from the traveled way.

On curbed streets, the roadside face of the mailbox should be set back from the face of the curb at a distance of 6 to 8 inches. On residential streets without curbs or all-weather shoulders that carry low traffic volumes operating at low speeds, the roadside face of the mailbox should be offset between 8 inches and 12 inches behind the edge of the pavement.

Design criteria for the mailbox support structure when located within the clear zone should consist of the following:

- Mailboxes shall be of light sheet metal or plastic construction conforming to the requirements of the U. S. Postal Service. Newspaper delivery boxes shall be of light metal or plastic construction of minimum dimensions suitable for holding a newspaper.
- No more than two mailboxes may be mounted on a support structure unless crash tests have shown the support structure and mailbox arrangement to be safe. However, light-weight newspaper boxes may be mounted below the mailbox on the side of the mailbox support.
- A single 4 inch by 4 inch square or 4 inch diameter wooden post; or metal post, Schedule 40, 2 inch (normal size IPS (external diameter 2-3/8 inch) (wall thickness 0.154 inches) or smaller), embedded no more than 24 inches into the ground, shall be acceptable as a mailbox support. A metal post shall not be fitted with an anchor plate, but it may have an anti-twist device that extends no more than 10 inches below the ground surface.
- Unyielding supports such as heavy metal pipes, concrete posts, brick, stone or other rigid foundation structure or encasement should be avoided.
- The post-to-box attachment details should be of sufficient strength to prevent the box from separating from the post top if the installation is struck by a vehicle. The exact support hardware dimension and design may vary, such as having a two-piece platform bracket or alternative slot-and-hole locations. The product must result in a satisfactory attachment of the mailbox to the post, and all components must fit together properly.

- The minimum spacing between the centers of support posts should be the height of the posts above the ground line. Mailbox support designs not described in this regulation are acceptable if approved by the jurisdiction.

The Department's ***Standard Plans**, Index 110-200* and the ***AASHTO Roadside Design Guide*** provide details on hardware, supports and attachment details acceptable for mailboxes located within the clear zone which conform to the above requirements.

D.8.d Bus Benches and Shelters

See ***Chapter 3 – Geometric Design*** for location criteria for bus benches and shelters. Additional criteria are provided in ***Chapter 13 – Public Transit***.

E BARRIERS, END TREATMENTS AND CRASH CUSHIONS

E.1 Roadside Barriers

Roadside barriers are used to shield motorists from roadside hazards and in some cases are used to protect bystanders, pedestrians, cyclists and/or workers from vehicular traffic. In still other cases, roadside barriers are used to protect bridge piers from vehicle impacts. Median barriers are similar to roadside barriers but are designed for vehicles striking either side and are primarily used to separate opposing traffic on a divided highway. Median barriers also may be used on heavily traveled roadways to separate through traffic from local traffic or to separate high occupancy vehicle (HOV) and managed lanes from general-purpose lanes. Barriers are further classified as rigid, semi-rigid and flexible which are discussed in more detail below.

Barrier transition sections are used between adjoining barriers that have significantly different deflection characteristics. For example, a transition section is needed where a semi-rigid guardrail attaches to the approach end of a rigid concrete bridge rail, or when a barrier must be stiffened to shield fixed objects.

Requirements for bridge railings are provided in ***Chapter 17 – Bridges and Other Structures.***

E.2 End Treatments

End treatments include end anchorages, end terminals, and crash cushions. End anchorages are used to anchor a flexible or semi-rigid barrier to the ground to develop its tensile strength during an impact. End anchorages are not designed to be crashworthy for end on impacts. They are typically used on the trailing end of a roadside barrier on one-way roadways, or on the approach or trailing end of a flexible or semi-rigid barrier that is located outside the clear zone or that is shielded by another barrier system. End anchorages are discussed in more detail below.

End terminals are basically crashworthy anchorages. End terminals are used to anchor a flexible or semi-rigid barrier to the ground at the end of a barrier exposed to approaching traffic. Most end terminals are designed for vehicular impacts from only one side of the barrier, however some are designed for median applications where there is potential for impact from either side. End terminals are discussed in more detail below.

E.3 Crash Cushions

Crash cushions, sometimes referred to as impact attenuators, are crashworthy end treatments typically attached at the approach end of median barriers, roadside barriers, bridge railings or other rigid fixed objects, such as bridge piers. Crash cushions may be used in a median, a ramp terminal gore, or other roadside application. Crash cushions are discussed in more detail below.

E.4 Performance Requirements

Roadside barriers, transitions, end terminals, and crash cushions must be crashworthy as determined by full scale crash testing in accordance with specific crash test criteria discussed in Section C. Descriptions of commonly used devices in Florida are described below. Section C also provides references where more information can be found on crashworthy devices.

E.5 Warrants

The determination as to when shielding is warranted for given hazardous roadside feature must be made on a case-by-case basis, and generally requires engineering judgment. It should be noted that the installation of roadside barriers presents a hazard in and of itself, and as such, the designer must analyze whether the installation of a barrier presents a greater risk than the feature it is intended to shield. The analysis should be completed using the ***Roadside Safety Analysis Program (RSAP)*** or in accordance with the ***AASHTO Highway Safety Manual (HSM)***.

Please see Section A for the considerations to be included when determining when to shield a roadside hazard.

The following hazards located within the clear zone are normally considered more hazardous than a roadside barrier:

E.5.a Above Ground Hazards

Above ground hazards are defined in Section B, Table 4 – 2 Lateral Offset. They include but are not limited to:

1. Bridge piers, abutments and railing ends
2. Parallel retaining walls with protrusions or other potential snagging features
3. Non-breakaway sign and lighting supports
4. Utility Poles
5. Trees greater than 4” in diameter measured 6” above ground.

E.5.b Drop-Off Hazards

Drop-off hazards are defined in Section B, Table 4-2 Lateral Offset.

E.5.c Canals and Water Bodies

Criteria for addressing canal and water body hazards is provided in Section B.2.c.

E.6 Warrants for Median Barriers

Median barriers shall be used on high speed, limited access facilities where the median width is less than the minimum values given in Chapter 3, Geometric Design, Table 3 – 16 Minimum Median Widths. For locations where median widths are equal to or greater than the minimum, median barriers are not normally considered except in special circumstances, such as a location with significant history of cross median crashes. Any determination to use a median barrier on limited access facilities must consider the need for barrier openings for median crossovers that are appropriately spaced to avoid excessive travel distances by emergency vehicles, law enforcement vehicles, and maintenance vehicles. The FDOT Design Manual may be referenced for additional criteria and guidelines for locating and designing median crossovers on limited access facilities.

On high speed divided arterials and collectors, median barriers are not normally used due to a number of factors that are very difficult, if not impractical, to address. Such factors include right-of-way constraints, property access needs, presence of at-grade intersections and driveways, adjacent commercial development, intersection sight distance and barrier end termination. However, provided these factors can be properly addressed, median barriers for these type facilities may be considered where median widths are less than minimum or where justified on the basis of significant crossover crash history.

See Section E for median barrier types and proper end treatment requirements. The ***AASHTO Roadside Design Guide*** and Department's ***Design Manual, Chapter 215 Roadside Safety*** and ***Standards Plans*** provide additional information and guidelines on the use of median barriers

E.7 Work Zones and Temporary Barriers

Clear zone widths for work zones, as a minimum, shall be the lessor of clear zone requirements provided in Table 4 – 1 Minimum Width of Clear Zone, Table 4 – 5 Clear Zone Width Requirements for Work Zones, or existing clear zone width. Clear zone widths in work zones are measured from the edge of Traveled Way defined by the Temporary Traffic Control (TTC) Plan.

Table 4 – 5 Clear Zone Width Requirements for Work Zones

Work Zone Posted Speed (mph)	**Travel Lanes & Multilane Ramps** (feet)	**Auxiliary Lanes & Single Lane Ramps** (feet)
Curbed		
45 mph or less	4’ Behind Face of Curb	4’ Behind Face of Curb
Flush Shoulder		
30 – 40	14	10
45 – 50	18	10
55	24	14
60 – 70	30	18

When clear zone widths cannot be met, the use of temporary barriers shall be considered. Temporary barriers in work zones can serve several functions:

- Shield edge drop-offs, excavation, roadside structures, falsework for bridges, material storage sites and/or other exposed objects.
- Provide protection for workers.
- Separate two-way traffic.
- Separate pedestrians from vehicular traffic.

The decision to use temporary barriers in a work zone should be based on engineering judgement and analysis. There are many factors, including traffic volume, traffic operating speed, offset, and duration, that affect barrier needs within work zones. The Department’s ***Standard Plans***, Index 102-600 Series, ***MUTCD*** and the ***AASHTO Roadside Design Guide*** provide additional information and guidance on the use of temporary barriers in work zones.

E.8 Barrier Types

Roadside barriers are classified as flexible, semi-rigid and rigid depending on their deflection characteristics when impacted. Flexible systems have the greatest deflection characteristics. Given much of the impact energy is dissipated by the deflection of the barrier and lower impact forces are imposed on the vehicle, flexible systems are generally more forgiving than rigid and semi-rigid systems. Rigid barriers, on the other hand, are assumed to exhibit no deflection under impact conditions so crash severity will likely be the highest of the three classifications.

In the following sections are basic descriptions of the barrier types commonly used in Florida for each these classifications. These commonly used barriers are those that are addressed in the Department's ***Standard Plans*** and ***Design Manual***. Those documents should be referenced for additional details and discussion on the proper use of these systems.

The basis for the Department's systems and devices, as well as many other generic and proprietary guardrail systems meeting ***NCHRP Report 350*** and/or MASH criteria, can be found in the following documents:

- ***AASHTO Roadside Design Guide***
- ***Federal Highway Administration (FHWA) Countermeasures that Reduce Crash Severity***
- ***AASHTO-Associated General Contractors of America (AGC}-American Road and Transportation Builders Association (ARTBA) Joint Committee Task Force 13*** report, ***A Guide to Standardized Highway Barrier Hardware*** available at

E.8.a Guardrail

The most commonly used barrier on new construction projects in Florida is the w-beam guardrail system detailed in the Department's ***Standard Plans, Index 536-001*** referenced as "General TL-3 Guardrail". This w-beam guardrail system, sometimes referred to as a strong post guardrail system, is a semi-rigid system, uses posts at 6'-3" spacing, 8" offset blocks, and mid-span splices with a rail height of 2'-1" to center of the panel. This system was developed based on the 31" Midwest Guardrail System (MGS) and meets MASH Test Level 3 criteria. Compatible proprietary components may be referenced by the 31" height. This system can be used as a roadside barrier or in a double face configuration as a median barrier. Deflection space requirements for this system are provided in the Department's ***Design Manual, Chapter 215 Roadside Safety.***

The current 31" height system replaces the 27" height system (1'-9" to center of panel) that had been used for many years and still present on roadways throughout Florida. Section C.3 addresses requirements for upgrading existing 27" height systems.

The Department's ***Standard Plans, Index 536-001*** also provides details for a similar w-beam guardrail system referenced as "Low Speed, TL-2 Guardrail", with posts at 12'- 6" spacing which meets MASH Test Level 2 criteria. While this TL 2 system may be used on low speed roadways 45 mph or less, it preferably should be used only on roadways with design speeds 35 mph and less to account for the potential for changes in posted speed limits and/or vehicles exceeding the design speed.

To achieve a minimum level of crash performance, guardrail installations shall have a minimum length of 75 feet with design speeds greater than 45 mph.

E.8.b Concrete Barrier

The most commonly used concrete barriers in Florida are detailed in the Department's ***Standard Plans, Index 521-001***. Details are provided for median application, shoulder application and pier protection. Additional information on these barriers is provided in the Department's ***Design Manual, Chapter 215 Roadside Safety.***

The Department's 32" height F-Shape concrete barrier wall system that has been in use for many years meets ***NCHRP Report 350*** Test Level 4 criteria and MASH Test Level 3 criteria. The Department is replacing this 32" F-Shape system with a 38" height single slope concrete barrier system which meets MASH Test Level 4 criteria. In addition to improved crash test performance, the single slope face provides for simpler construction.

While shielding bridge piers to protect motorists from a hazard within the clear zone is often necessary, some bridge piers may need shielding for protection from damage due to design limitations (i.e. piers not designed for vehicular collision forces). Coordination with the Structural Engineer of Record is required to determine if pier protection is warranted. The Department's ***Standard Plans, Index 521-002*** provides details for crashworthy Pier Protection barriers and the ***Design Manual***, Chapter ***215 Roadside Safety*** provides a process for determining the appropriate level of pier protection. As with median and shoulder concrete barrier walls, the Department is replacing the F-Shape pier protection barriers that have been in use for several years with single slope face systems.

E.8.c High Tension Cable Barrier

There are a variety of crash tested flexible barrier systems using w-beam and cable, but they historically have not been in common use in Florida. In recent years several proprietary high-tension cable barrier (HTCB) systems have been developed that meet NCHRP Report 350 and MASH criteria. These systems are installed with a significantly greater tension in the cables than the generic low-tension systems that have been used in some states for many years. High tension cable barrier systems may be used for both median and roadside application. Deflection space requirements are dependent on the system, system length and post spacing, and are significantly greater than semi-rigid systems.

High tension cable barrier has shown to have several advantages over other types of flexible barrier systems. One advantage is they tend to result in less damage when impacted. Another is that certain systems have been tested for use on slopes as steep as 1:4. Still another advantage is that in many cases, the cables remain at the proper height after an impact that damages several posts. While no manufacturer claims their barrier remains functional in this condition, there is the potential that this offers a residual safety value under certain crash conditions. Posts are typically lightweight and can be installed in cast or driven sockets in the ground to facilitate removal and replacement. One disadvantage is that each vendor uses a different post design and cable arrangement, and therefore posts are not interchangeable between systems manufactured by different vendors.

The Department has used High Tension Cable Barrier (HTCB) in selected locations and continues to install these systems using the Department's

Developmental Design Standards and Developmental Specifications (DDS) process. Detailed information on the usage requirements and design criteria of HTCB can be found on the ***Department's DDS*** website.

It includes the following:

- ***Developmental Standard Plans Instructions D 540-001***
- ***Developmental Standard Plans Index D 540-001***
- ***Developmental Specification, Dev540***

E.8.d Temporary Barrier

As stated in Section E.5.e, temporary barriers are used primarily in work zones for several purposes. The most commonly used temporary barriers in Florida are those adopted for use by FDOT. The department's temporary barriers include:

Low Profile Barrier – Standard Plans, Index 102-120 (TL-2, NCHRP 350)

Type K Barrier – Standard Plans, Index 102-110 (TL-3, NCHRP 350)

Proprietary Temporary Barrier –Standards Plans, Index 102-100 and the ***Approved Products List (APL)*** (TL-2 & TL-3, NCHRP 350)

Additional information on the proper use of these barriers is provided in the Department's ***Design Manual*** and the Vendor drawings on the ***Approved Products List***.

Additional information on temporary barrier systems meeting ***NCHRP Report 350*** and/or MASH criteria can be found in the ***Manual for Assessing Safety Hardware*** and the ***AASHTO Roadside Design Guide***.

E.8.e Selection Guidelines

The evaluation of numerous factors is required to ensure that the appropriate barrier type is selected for a given application. Consideration should be given to the following factors when evaluating each site:

- Barrier placement requirements (see Section E.6.f)
- Traffic characteristics (e.g. vehicle types/percentages, volume, and growth)
- Site characteristics (e.g. terrain, alignment, geometry, access facility type, access locations, design speed, etc.)
- Expected frequency of impacts
- Initial and replacement/repair costs
- Ease of maintenance
- Exposure of workers when conducting repairs/maintenance
- Aesthetics

For additional information about considerations for barrier selections refer to the ***AASHTO Roadside Design Guide***. Barrier type selection decisions and warrants should be documented.

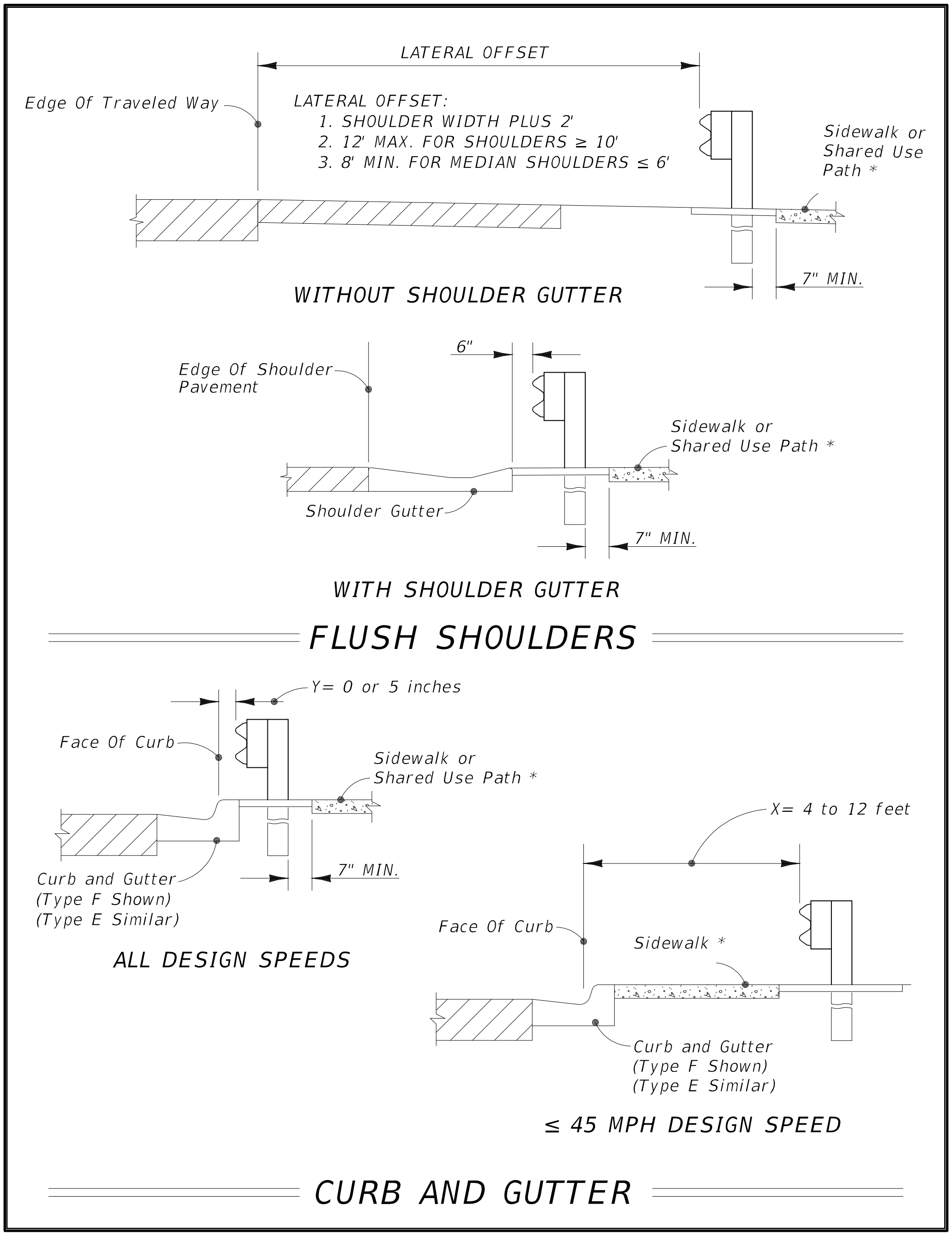
E.8.f Placement

E.8.f.1 Barrier Offsets

Roadside barriers should be offset as far from the travel lanes as practical with consideration for maintaining the proper performance of the barrier. For the barriers described above see the Department's ***Design Manual, Chapter 215 Roadside Safety*** and ***Standard Plans*** for proper barrier placement. Figure 4 – 8 Location of Guardrail provides information on the offset of guardrail on curbed and flush shoulder roadways.

Draft

Figure 4 – 8 Location of Guardrail



* When a sidewalk is present or planned. See Chapter 8 – Pedestrian Facilities and Chapter 9 – Bicycle Facilities for criteria for sidewalks and shared use paths (e.g. width of facility plus clear, graded areas adjacent to the path or sidewalk).

E.8.f.2 Deflection Space and Zone of Intrusion

In addition to travel lane lateral offset considerations, an adequate setback must be provided behind the barrier to ensure proper function. For flexible and semi-rigid barriers, the setback is based on deflection tolerances and is required to prevent the barrier from contacting aboveground objects.

For rigid barriers, the setback is required to keep the area above and behind the barrier face free of obstructions that could penetrate or damage the vehicle compartment. This requirement is based on the Zone of Intrusion (ZOI) concept as described in the ***AASHTO Roadside Design Guide***.

These requirements do not apply to devices located within the setback distances detailed in the Department's ***Standard Plans*** (e.g. pedestrian/bicycle railing, fencing, noise walls, etc.).

E.8.f.3 Grading

The terrain effects between the traveled way and a barrier can have a significant impact on whether a barrier will perform as intended. Proper grading around a barrier will ensure that as a vehicle approaches a barrier its suspension is not dramatically affected, causing the vehicle to underride or override a barrier.

E.8.f.4 Curbs

As with grading, the presence of curb in combination with barriers deserves special attention. A vehicle which traverses a curb prior to impact may override the barrier if it is partially airborne at the moment of impact. Conversely, the vehicle may "submarine" under the rail element of a guardrail system and snag on the support posts if it strikes the barrier too low.

E.8.f.5 Flare Rate

A flared roadside barrier is when it is not parallel to the edge of the traveled way. A flared barrier may be necessary for several reasons:

- To locate the barrier terminal farther from the roadway
- To minimize a driver's reaction to an obstacle near the road by gradually introducing a parallel barrier installation
- To transition a roadside barrier to an obstacle nearer the roadway such as a bridge parapet or railing
- To reduce the total length barrier needed.
- To reduce the potential for barrier and terminal impacts and provide additional roadside space for an errant motorist to recover.

A concern with flaring a section of roadside barrier is that the greater the flare rate, the higher the angle at which the barrier can be hit. As the angle of impact increases, the crash severity increases, particularly for rigid and semi-rigid barrier systems. Another disadvantage to flaring a barrier installation is the increased likelihood that a vehicle will be redirected back into or across the roadway following an impact.

For the barriers described above, see the Department’s ***Design Manual, Chapter 215*** ***Roadside Safety*** for acceptable flare rates. Additional information on flare rates are provided in the ***AASHTO Roadside Design Guide***.

E.8.f.6 Length of Need

The length of need for a particular barrier type is calculated based on several factors including the length of the hazard, the lateral area of concern, run out length and other factors. Length of need must consider traffic from both directions.

A spreadsheet tool for calculating length of need is provided on the Department’s ***Standard Plans*** web page, adjacent to ***Index 536-001*** in the ***Design Tools*** column. Additional information on length of need is provided in the ***AASHTO Roadside Design Guide***.

E.8.g Barrier Transitions

Guardrail transitions are necessary whenever standard W-Beam guardrail converges with rigid barriers. The purpose of the transition is to provide a gradual stiffening of the overall approach to a rigid barrier so that vehicular pocketing, snagging, or penetration is reduced or avoided at any position along the transition. Guardrail transitions must include sound structural connections, nested panels and additional posts for increased stiffness. The Department's ***Standard Plans*** provide details for several transitions for both permanent and rigid barriers that meet MASH criteria. Additional information on transitions is provided in the Department's ***Design Manual, Chapter 215 Roadside Safety*** and the ***AASHTO Roadside Design Guide***.

E.8.h Attachments to Barriers

Attachments to barriers such as signs, light poles, and other objects will affect crash performance and should be avoided where practical. Attachments not meeting the requirements discussed in Section E.6.f Placement, should meet crash test criteria. See the ***Department's Design Manual, Chapter 215 Roadside Safety*** for additional information on attachments to barriers.

E.9 End Treatments and Crash Cushions

As previously discussed, end treatments include end anchorages, end terminals, and crash cushions. Details for end treatments for each barrier type described above are detailed in the Department's ***Standard Plans*** and the ***Approved Products List (APL)***.

E.9.a End Treatments for Guardrail

End treatments for guardrail are categorized as follows:

1. Approach end terminals – required for guardrail ends within the clear zone of approaching traffic. The Department's guardrail approach end terminals are proprietary devices listed on the ***APL***. Approach end terminals are classified by Test Level (TL-2 for Design Speeds ≤ 45 mph or TL-3, which is acceptable for all Design Speeds) and as follows:

a. Flared – preferred terminal for locations where sufficient space is available to offset barrier end from approaching traffic.

b. Parallel – use only when sufficient space is not available for a flared terminal.

c. Double Face – preferred end treatment for double faced guardrail installations.

2. Crash Cushions – See Section E.7.e.

3. Trailing End Anchorages (Type II) – required for anchoring of the trailing ends of guardrail. Trailing End Anchorages are considered non-crashworthy as an approach end treatment, and are not permitted as guardrail end treatments on the approach end within the Clear Zone, unless shielded by another run of barrier. The Department's Type II Trailing End Anchorage, is detailed in the Standard Plans, Index 536-001 .

Additional information on guardrail end treatments is provided in the Department's ***Design Manual, Chapter 215 Roadside Safety***.

E.9.b End Treatments for Rigid Barrier

Rigid Barrier ends must be terminated by either transitioning into another barrier system (e.g. guardrail), or by shielding with a Crash Cushion. Details are provided in the Department's ***Standard Plans**, **Index 521-001***. Treatment of the trailing end of rigid barriers is not required unless additional hazards exist beyond the rigid barrier or the barrier is within the clear zone of opposing traffic.

E.9.c End Treatments for High Tension Cable Barrier (HTCB)

End treatments for high tension cable barrier are vendor specific. For additional information regarding the end treatment of HTCB, refer to the Department's developmental design standards discussed above.

E.9.d End Treatments for Temporary Barrier

Details for end treatments for the Department's Temporary Barrier are provided in the Department's ***Standard Plans*** and include:

1. Connecting to an existing barrier. Smooth, structural connections are required. Information on connections can be found in the Department's ***Standard Plans, Indexes 521-001*** and ***102-110*** and ***APL)***.
2. Shield end with a crash cushion as detailed in the ***Standard Plans, Index 102 Series*** or ***APL*** for the specific type of Temporary Barrier (i.e. portable concrete barrier, steel, or water filled).
3. Attaching or Transitioning to a crashworthy end treatment as described above.
4. Flaring outside of the Work Zone Clear Zone.

E.9.e Crash Cushions

Crash cushions are classified based on Test Level and Design Speed which is shown for each system on each vendor's respective drawings posted on the Department's ***APL***.

The design of a crash cushion system must not create a hazard to opposing traffic. The APL drawings provide details for transitions for optional barrier types with and without bi-directional traffic.

An impacting vehicle should strike the systems at normal height, with the vehicle's suspension system neither collapsed nor extended. Therefore, the terrain surrounding crash cushions must be relatively flat (i.e. 1:10 or flatter) in advance of and along the entire design length of the system. Curbs should not be located within the approach area of a crash cushion.

The Department's ***Design Manual, Chapter 215 Roadside Safety*** provides additional information on permanent and temporary crash cushions.

F BRIDGE RAILS

See ***Chapter 17 - Bridges and Other Structures*** for requirements for bridge rails. The Department's ***Design Manual, Chapter 215 Roadside Safety*** may be referenced for additional information and typical applications.

G REFERENCES FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES

The following is a list of publications that may be referenced for further guidance:

- AASHTO Roadside Design Guide
  https://bookstore.transportation.org/
- Task Force 13 Guide to Standardized Roadside Safety Hardware
  http://www.tf13.org/Guides/
- FHWA Web Site
  http://safety.fhwa.dot.gov/roadway_dept/
- FDOT Design Manual
  http://www.fdot.gov/roadway/FDM/
- FDOT Standard Plans for Road and Bridge Construction (Standard Plans)
  http://www.fdot.gov/design/standardplans/
- FDOT Structures Design Guidelines
  http://www.fdot.gov/structures/StructuresManual/CurrentRelease/StructuresManual.shtm
- FDOT Drainage Manual, January 2018
  http://www.fdot.gov/roadway/Drainage/ManualsandHandbooks.shtm
- Florida Strategic Highway Safety Plan 2016
  http://www.fdot.gov/safety/SHSP2016/SHSP-2012.shtm

CHAPTER 5

PAVEMENT DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION

FIGURES

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

CHAPTER 5

PAVEMENT DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION

A INTRODUCTION

The function of the pavement or roadway surface is to provide a safe and efficient travel path for vehicles using the street or highway. The pavement should provide a good riding surface with a minimum amount of distraction to the driver. The pavement friction characteristics should be such that adequate longitudinal and lateral forces between the vehicle tires and the pavement can be developed to allow a margin of safety for required vehicle maneuvers. These characteristics should be provided at the highest reasonable level for the expected pavement surface, weather conditions, and the anticipated operational characteristics of the facility. Resurfacing of the existing pavement is discussed and included under ***Chapter 10 – Maintenance and Resurfacing*** of this manual.

In order for the pavement to perform its function properly, the following objectives shall be considered in the design and construction of the pavement:

- Provide sufficient pavement structure and the proper pavement material strength to prevent pavement distress prior to the end of the design period.
- Develop and maintain adequate skid resistance qualities to allow for safe execution of braking, cornering, accelerating, and other vehicle maneuvers.
- Provide drainage to promote quick drying and to reduce the likelihood of hydroplaning and splashing.
- Provide a Safety Edge treatment adjacent to the travel lane on roadways without curb or paved shoulders and with posted speed 45 mph or greater.

B PAVEMENT DESIGN

B.1 Pavement Type Selection

For new construction and major reconstruction projects, the designer should determine the type of pavement to be constructed utilizing formal analysis of existing and anticipated conditions. High volume roadways where a significant amount of truck traffic (>10%) exists may warrant consideration for special asphalt pavement designs and for rigid pavement designs. The Department has a documented procedure patterned after the 1993 ***AASHTO Guide for Design of Pavement Structures, Appendix B***. This procedure may be found in the Department's ***Pavement Type Selection Manual (2013)***.

B.1.a Unpaved Roadway Material Selection

The material chosen should be locally available when possible. Frequency of grading and replacement of material from loss due to erosion should be evaluated. A life cycle economic analysis should be performed to determine suitable material type. For example: Reclaimed asphalt pavements (RAP) from milling operations provide for a suitable all weather material and can be considered for unpaved roads.

The material chosen should exhibit low potential for losses due to wind, traffic and water erosion. EPA's publication AP-42 contains methodology for estimating the dust generation potential for unpaved road surfaces. Proper gradation of the chosen material is critical for its success. Designers should consider flexible or rigid pavements where runoff from unpaved roads may impact surface waters.

Designers may consult with AASHTO's ***Guidelines for Geometric Design of Very Low-Volume Local Roads (ADT ≤ 400), 2001*** and FHWA's ***Gravel Roads Construction and Maintenance Guide, August 2015*** for further guidance regarding material selection.

B.2 Structural Design

The pavement shall be designed and constructed so the required surface texture is maintained and its structure retains an adequate level of serviceability for the design period. The strength of the pavement materials shall be sufficient to maintain the desired roadway cross section without the formation of ruts or other depressions which would impede drainage. Subgrade strength and subgrade drainage are major factors to be considered in pavement design. Where high ground water conditions are present, adequate clearance to the bottom of the pavement base is necessary for good pavement performance and to achieve the required compaction and stability during construction operations.

The Department's pavement design manuals, including the ***Flexible Pavement Design Manual, January 2018*** and ***Rigid Pavement Design Manual, January 2018***, are recommended as a guide for both flexible and rigid pavement design. Other design procedures are available including the ***AASHTO Guide for Design of Pavement Structures, 1993***; and procedures which have been developed by the Portland Cement Association, the American Concrete Pavement Association, and the Asphalt Institute. The selection of the design procedure and the development of the design data must be managed by professional personnel competent to make these evaluations.

B.3 Skid Resistance

Pavements shall be designed and constructed to maintain adequate skid resistance for as long a period as the available materials, technology, and economic restraints will permit, thus eliminating cost and hazardous maintenance operations.

The results of relevant experience and testing (i.e., tests conducted by the Department's Materials Office) should be used in the selection of aggregate and other materials, the pavement mix design, the method of placement, and the techniques used for finishing the pavement surface. The design mixes should be monitored by continuous field testing during construction. Changes to the design mix or construction procedures must be made by qualified pavement designers and laboratory personnel ONLY.

The use of transverse grooving in concrete pavements frequently improves the wet weather skid resistance and decreases the likelihood of hydroplaning. This technique should be considered for locations requiring frequent vehicle maneuvers (curves, intersections, etc.) or where heavy traffic volumes or high speeds will be encountered. The depth, width, and spacing of the grooves should be such that control of the vehicle is not hindered.

B.4 Drainage

Adequate drainage of the roadway and shoulder surfaces should be provided. Factors involved in the general pavement drainage pattern include: pavement longitudinal and cross slopes, shoulder slopes and surface texture, curb placement, and the location and design of collection structures. The selection of pavement cross slopes should receive particular attention to achieve the proper balance between drainage requirements and vehicle operating requirements. The use of curbs or other drainage controls adjacent to the roadway surface should be avoided, particularly on high speed facilities. Specific requirements for cross slopes and curb placement are given in ***Chapter 3 – Geometric Design***.

B.4.a Unpaved Roadway Drainage

Properly graded unpaved roadways require less maintenance and suffer less material loss. Designers should strive to provide adequate cross slope, shoulder and swale profiles wherever possible. Typical cross slopes should be 2% with 1.5% minimum. During maintenance grading, the operator should ensure that the shoulder does not become higher than the travel lane edge to prevent ponding of water on the roadway.

Designers may consult with AASHTO's publication ***Guidelines for Geometric Design of Very Low-Volume Roads (ADT < 400), 2001*** and FHWA's ***Gravel Roads Construction & Maintenance Guide, August 2015*** for further guidance regarding proper profiles for unpaved roads.

B.5 Shoulder Treatment

The primary function of the shoulder is to provide an alternate travel path for vehicles in an emergency situation. Shoulders should be capable of providing a safe path for vehicles traveling at roadway speed, and should be designed and constructed to provide a firm and uniform surface capable of supporting vehicles in distress. Particular attention shall be given to provide a smooth transition from pavement to shoulder.

Safety Edge is a technology that mitigates vertical drop offs. The Safety Edge provides a higher probability of a vehicle returning safely to the travel lane when it drifts off the pavement. The wedge shape eliminates tire scrubbing and improves vehicle stability as it crosses a drop-off. Details for the Safety Edge are included in Figures 5 – 1 Two Lane Road with Safety Edge and 5 – 2 Safety Edge Detail (No Paved Shoulders).

Figure 5 – 1
Two Lane Road with Safety Edge

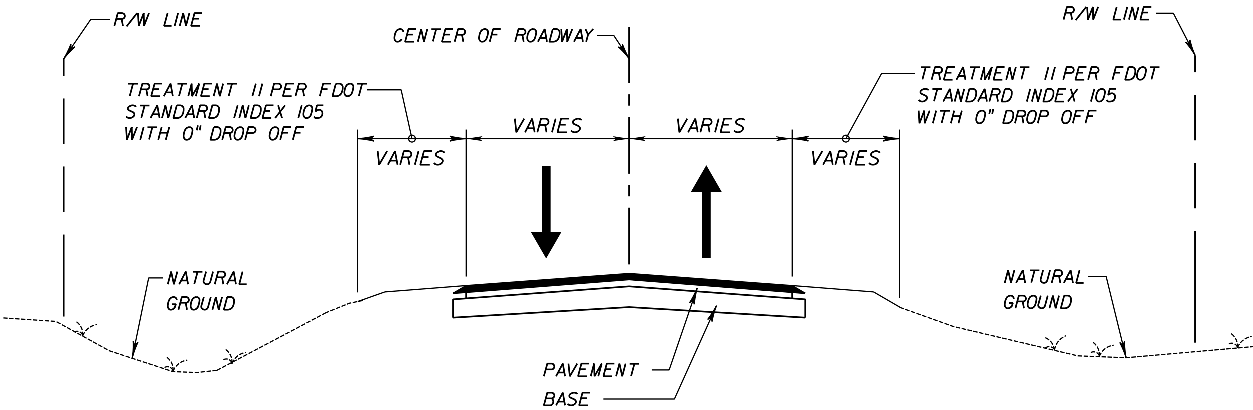
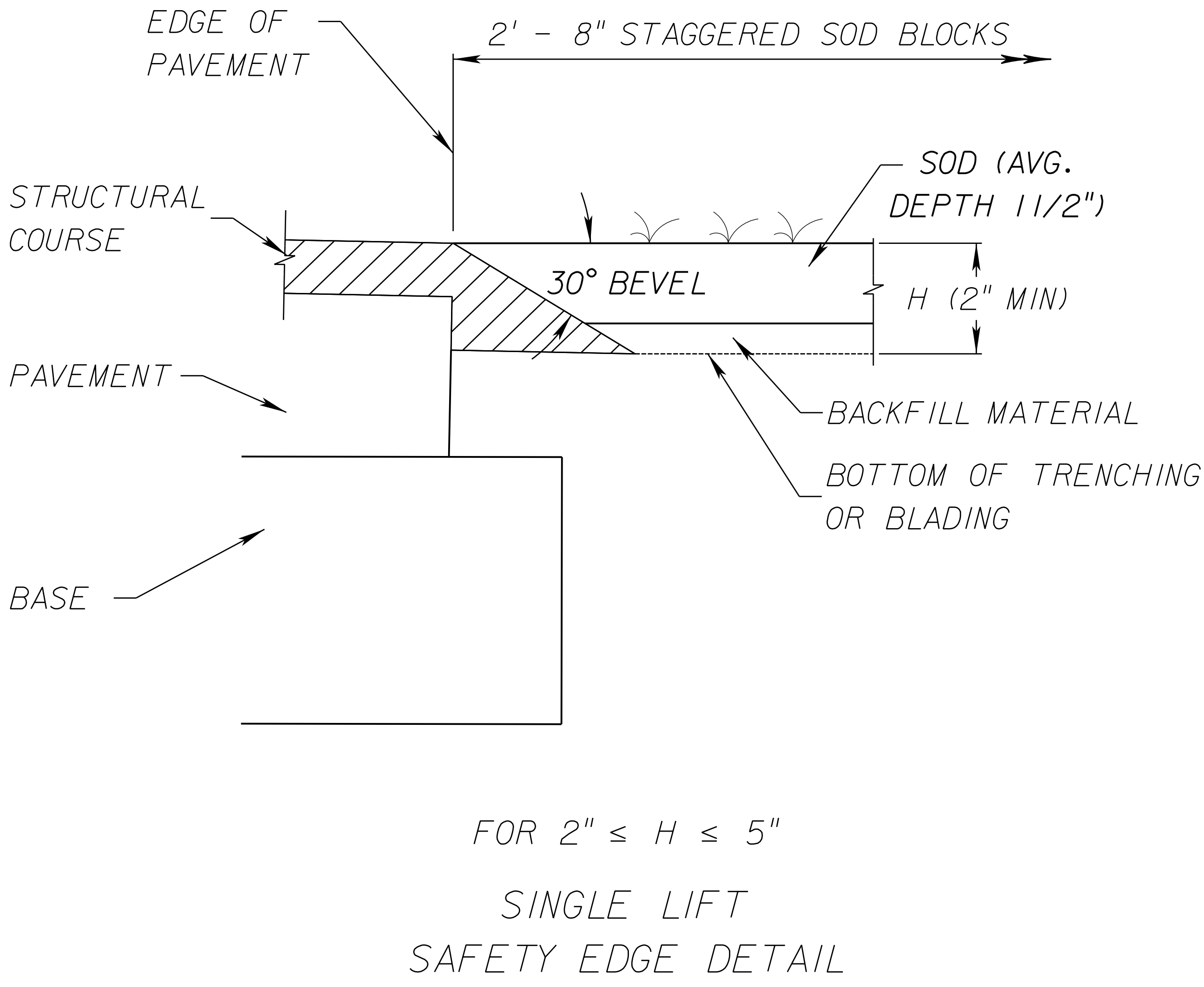


Figure 5 – 2
Safety Edge Detail (No Paved Shoulders)



Shoulder pavement may be provided to improve drainage of the roadway, to serve bicycles, pedestrians and transit users, and to minimize shoulder maintenance.

C PAVEMENT CONSTRUCTION

A regular program of inspection and evaluation should be conducted to ensure the pavement criteria are satisfied during the construction process. Any regular inspection program should include the following:

- The use of standard test procedures, such as AASHTO and the American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM).

- The use of qualified personnel to perform testing and inspection.

- The use of an independent assurance procedure to validate the program.

After construction, the pavement surface shall be inspected to determine the required surface texture was achieved and the surface has the specified slopes. Spot checking skid resistance by approved methods should be considered. Periodic reinspection should be undertaken in conformance with the guidelines described in ***Chapter 10 – Maintenance and Resurfacing***.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

CHAPTER 6

LIGHTING

TABLES

FIGURES

CHAPTER 6

LIGHTING

A INTRODUCTION

The major reason for lighting streets and highways is to improve safety for vehicular and pedestrian traffic. Improvements in sight distance and reduction of confusion and distraction for night time driving can reduce the hazard potential on streets and highways. There is evidence indicating that highway lighting will produce an increase in highway capacity as well as improve the economic, safety, and aesthetic characteristics of highways.

Experience and technical improvements have resulted in improved design of lighting for streets and highways. Photometric data provide a basis for calculation of the illumination at any point for various combinations of selected luminaire types, heights, and locations. Lighting engineers can develop lighting systems that will comply with the requirements for level and uniformity of illumination; however, some uncertainties preclude the adoption of rigid design standards. Among these uncertainties is the lack of understanding of driver response and behavior under various lighting conditions. The design of lighting for new streets and highways, as well as improvements on existing facilities, should be accompanied by careful consideration of the variables involved in driver behavior and problems peculiar to particular locations.

Rights of way with pedestrian sidewalks and/or bikeways adjacent to the roadway should first address lighting requirements for the roadway to assure it is continuously illuminated. Additional lighting for a sidewalk or shared use path maybe necessary if it is substantially set back from the roadway, at the discretion of the responsible/maintaining agency. Pedestrian sidewalks and/or bikeways should not be illuminated in lieu of lighting the adjacent roadway to avoid glare or potential lighting distractions to drivers.

See ***Chapter 17 – Bridges and Other Structures, Section C.6*** for structural requirements for lighting.

B OBJECTIVES

The objective for providing lighting is to improve the safety of roadways, sidewalks, and shared use paths and visibility of signs for road users (drivers, pedestrians, and bicyclists). The achievement of this objective will be aided by meeting these specific goals:

- Provide an improved view of the general highway geometry and the adjacent environment.
- Increase the sight distance to improve response to hazards and decision points.
- Eliminate "blind" spots unique to travel at night or in low light conditions.
- Provide a clearer view of the general situation during police, emergency, maintenance, and construction operations.
- Provide assistance in roadway, sidewalk or path delineation, particularly in the presence of confusing background lighting (i.e., surrounding street and other area lighting confuses the driver on an unlighted street or highway).
- Minimize glare that is discomforting or disabling.
- Reduce abrupt changes in light intensity.
- Avoid the introduction of roadside hazards resulting from improper placement of light poles, pull boxes, etc. (as covered under ***Chapter 3 – Geometric Design*** and ***Chapter 4 – Roadside Design***).

C WARRANTING CONDITIONS

Although precise warrants for the provision of roadway lighting are difficult to determine, criteria for lighting is established and should be followed for new and reconstruction projects and for improvement of existing facilities. The following locations should be considered as a basis for warranting roadway lighting:

C.1 Criteria Based Upon Crash History

- Locations that, by a crash investigation program, have been shown to be hazardous due to inadequate lighting.
- Locations where the night/day ratio of serious crashes is higher than the average of similar locations.
- Specific locations that have a significant number of night time crashes and where a large percentage of these night time crashes result in injuries or fatalities.

C.2 Criteria Based Upon Analysis and Investigation

- Locations requiring a rapid sequence of decisions by the road user.
- Locations where night sight distance problems exist, with consideration to headlight limitations (i.e., where vertical and horizontal curvature adversely affect illumination by headlamps).
- Locations having discomforting or disabling glare.
- Locations where background lighting exists, particularly if this could be distracting or confusing to the road user.
- Locations where improved delineation of the highway alignment is needed.

C.3 General Criteria

- Roundabouts and signalized intersections.
- Urban streets, particularly with high speed, high volumes, or frequent turning movements.
- Urban streets of any category experiencing high night time volumes or speeds or that have frequent signalization or turning movements.
- Areas frequently congested with vehicular and/or pedestrian traffic.
- Pedestrian and bicyclist crossings (intersections or mid-block locations)
- Transit stops and hubs, passenger rail stations.
- Areas such as entertainment districts, sporting arenas, shopping centers, beach access points, parks, and other locations that generate higher volumes of pedestrian activity.
- Schools, places of assembly, , or other pedestrian or bicyclist generators.
- High density land use areas.
- Central business districts.
- Junctions of major highways in rural areas.
- Rest areas/picnic shelters/trail heads/recreational facilities.

D TYPES OF LUMINAIRES

Examples of common types of lighting are identified and discussed below. Other types of lighting may be desired and currently in use for specific applications.

- Light Emitting Diode (LED) – is the preferred light source for street lighting. Light produced by LED lamps have a CCT of 4000°K to 6000°K which is a white to bluish color. The average rated life for LED can vary from 50,000 to 100,000 hours. To provide sufficient lumen levels for roadway applications, most LED fixtures have an initial luminous efficiency of around 75 lumens per watt.

- High Pressure Sodium (HPS) Lamps –Light produced by HPS lamps has a correlated color temperature (CCT) around 2100°K which is a warm yellow color. The average rated life for an HPS lamp is from 24,000 to 30,000 hours. HPS lamps have a very high initial luminous efficiency of over 100 lumens per watt.

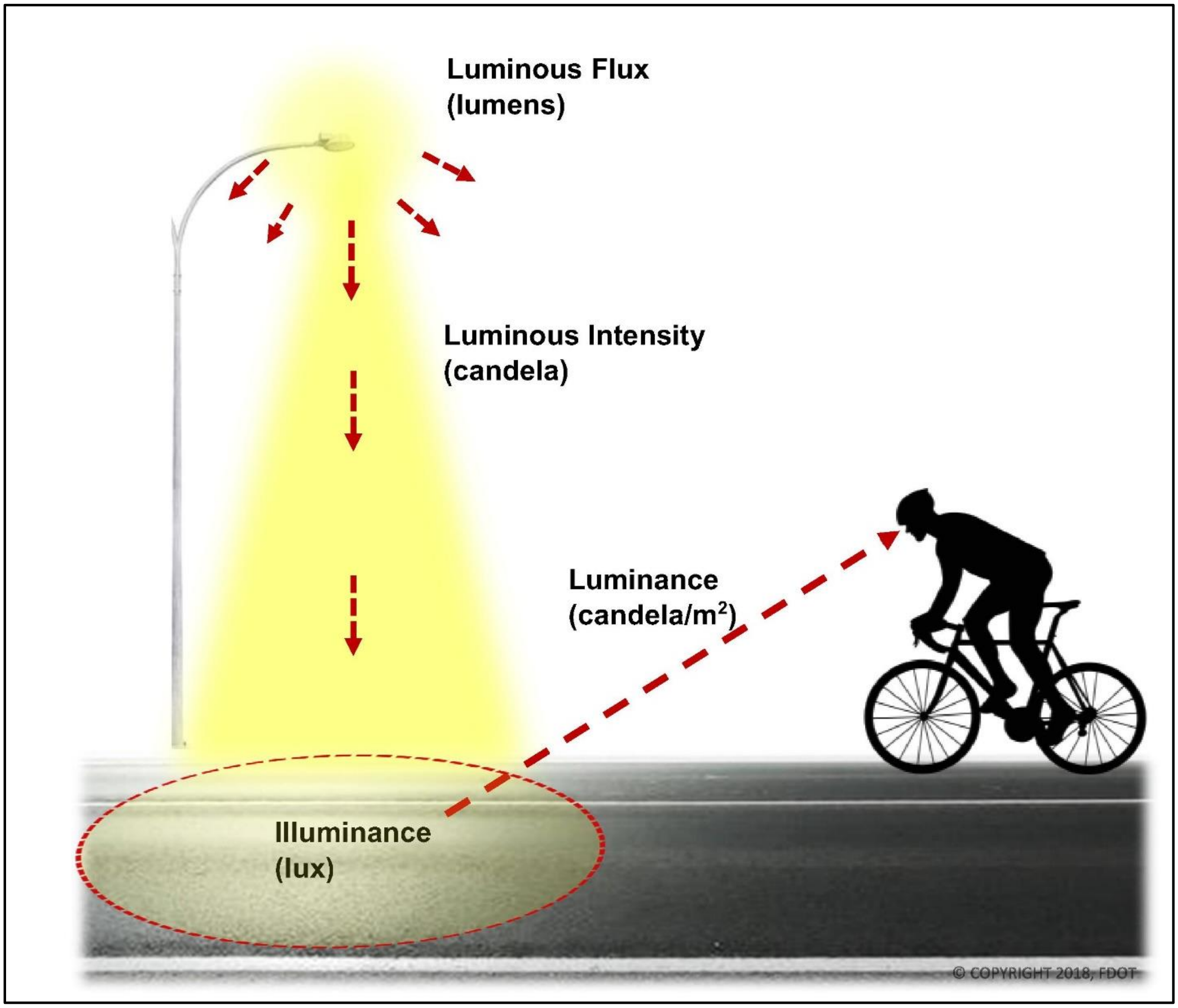
- Metal Halide (MH) Lamps – is used for overhead lighting of commercial parking lots, sports facilities, retail stores and street lighting. Light produced by MH lamps has a CCT of 3800°K to 4000°K which is a white color. The average rated life of a MH lamp can vary from 9,000 to 20,000 hours. MH lamps have a high initial luminous efficiency of around 75 - 100 lumens per watt.

E LIGHTING DESIGN TECHNIQUES

The accepted methods for achieving a given lighting condition are known as either level of illuminance or level of luminance. Both methods of calculation are dependent upon light being reflected toward the observer's eye. Horizontal illuminance is used for intersections and interchanges and includes a variable for surface type. Horizontal and vertical illuminance is the preferred method for pedestrian areas. The luminance method can be used for straight roadways and streets, based upon the appropriate choice of surface type.

Figure 6 – 1 Illuminance and Luminance illustrates how illuminance and luminance are measured. Illuminance is the measure of the amount of light flux falling on a surface and is measured in foot candles. Luminance is a measure of the amount of light flux leaving a surface and is measured in candelas per meter squared.

Figure 6 – 1 Illuminance and Luminance



E.1 Illuminance

The illuminance method determines the amount of light falling on the roadway surface or on vertical surfaces from the roadway lighting system. Because the amount of light seen by the driver is the portion that reflects from the pavement towards the driver, and because different pavements exhibit varied reflectance characteristics, different illuminance levels are needed for each type of standard roadway surface. Illuminance is easily calculated and measurable and is not observer or pavement dependent.

E.2 Luminance

The luminance method determines how “bright” the road is by determining the amount of light reflected from the pavement in the direction of the driver. It uses the reflective characteristics (R-classification) noted in Table 6 – 1 Road Surface Classifications for the standard roadway surface types and a specific observer position.

The R-classification system is a measure of the lightness (white to black) and specularity (shininess) of roadway surfaces. A system of pavement reflectance values divides the pavement characteristics into four categories: R1, R2, R3 and R4. These categories are based upon the ***American National Standard Practice for Roadway Lighting*** and have been adopted by ***AASHTO*** in their ***Roadway Lighting Design Guide***.

Table 6 – 1 Road Surface Classifications

Class	Q0*	Description	Mode of Reflectance
R1	0.10	Portland cement concrete road surface. Asphalt road surface with a minimum of 12% of the aggregates composed of artificial brightener or aggregates.	Mostly diffuse
R2	0.07	Asphalt road surface with an aggregate composed of minimum 60% gravel (size greater than 0.4 in.). Asphalt road surface with 10 to 15% artificial brightener in aggregate mix. (Not normally used in North America).	Mixed (diffuse and specular)
R3	0.07	Asphalt road surface (regular and carpet seal) with dark aggregates (e.g., trap rock, blast furnace slag); rough texture after some months of use typical highways).	Slightly specular.
R4	0.08	Asphalt road surface with very smooth texture.	Mostly specular.

* Q_0 = representative mean luminance coefficient.

E.3 Lighting Design Levels

The level of illumination for streets and highways should not be less than those shown in Table 6 – 2 Illuminance and Luminance Design Values. When adding supplemental lighting for pedestrian activity, ensure lighting is compatible with any existing lighting in the corridor and minimizes glare.

These levels are for the purpose of highway safety and do not apply to lighting levels required for crime reduction. Further information may be found in the ***AASHTO Roadway Lighting Design Guide (2005).***

Table 6 – 2 Illuminance and Luminance Design Values

Roadway and Walkway Classification	Off-Roadway Light Sources	Illuminance Method					Luminance Method			Additional Values (both Methods)
		Average Maintained Illuminance (Horizontal)				Illuminance Uniformity Ratio	Average Maintained Luminance			Veiling Luminance Ratio
		R1	R2	R3	R4		Lavg	Uniformity		
	General Land Use	(foot -candles) (min)	(foot-candles) (min)	(foot-candles) (min)	(foot-candles) (min)	avg/min (max) (6)	cd/m2 (min)	Lavg/Lmin (max)	Lmax/Lmin (max)	Lv(max)/Lavg (max)(3)
Principal Arterials (partial or no control of access)	Commercial	1.1	1.6	1.6	1.4	3:1	1.2	3:1	5:1	0.3:1
	Intermediate	0.8	1.2	1.2	1.0	3:1	0.9	3:1	5:1	0.3:1
	Residential	0.6	0.8	0.8	0.8	3:1	0.6	3.5:1	6:1	0.3:1
Minor Arterials	Commercial	0.9	1.4	1.4	1.0	4:1	1.2	3:1	5:1	0.3:1
	Intermediate	0.8	1.0	1.0	0.9	4:1	0.9	3:1	5:1	0.3:1
	Residential	0.5	0.7	0.7	0.7	4:1	0.6	3.5:1	6:1	0.3:1
Collectors	Commercial	0.8	1.1	1.1	0.9	4:1	0.8	3:1	5:1	0.4:1
	Intermediate	0.6	0.8	0.8	0.8	4:1	0.6	3.5:1	6:1	0.4:1
	Residential	0.4	0.6	0.6	0.5	4:1	0.4	4:1	8:1	0.4:1
Local	Commercial	0.6	0.8	0.8	0.8	6:1	0.6	6:1	10:1	0.4:1
	Intermediate	0.5	0.7	0.7	0.6	6:1	0.5	6:1	10:1	0.4:1
	Residential	0.3	0.4	0.4	0.4	6;1	0.3	6:1	10:1	0.4:1
Alleys	Commercial	0.4	0.6	0.6	0.5	6:1	0.4	6:1	10:1	0.4:1
	Intermediate	0.3	0.4	0.4	0.4	6:1	0.3	6:1	10:1	0.4:1
	Residential	0.2	0.3	0.3	0.3	6:1	0.2	6:1	10:1	0.4:1

Continued next page

Table 6 – 2
Illuminance and Luminance Design Values
(Continued)

Sidewalks	Commercial	0.9	1.3	1.3	1.2	3:1	Use illuminance requirements
	Intermediate	0.6	0.8	0.8	0.8	4:1	
	Residential	0.3	0.4	0.4	0.4	6:1	
Pedestrian Ways and Bicycle Ways(2)	All	1.4	2.0	2.0	1.8	3.1	

Notes

1. Meet either the Illuminance design method requirements or the Luminance design method requirements and meet veiling luminance requirements for both illuminance and Luminance design methods.
2. Assumes a separate facility. For Pedestrian Ways and Bicycle Ways adjacent to roadway, use roadway design values. Use R3 requirements for walkway/bikeway surface materials other than the pavement types shown.
3. Lv (max) refers to the maximum point along the pavement, not the maximum in lamp life. The Maintenance factor applies to both the Lv term and the Lavg term.
4. There may be situations when a higher level of illuminance is justified. The higher values for freeways may be justified when deemed advantageous by the agency to mitigate off-roadway sources.
5. Physical roadway conditions may require adjustment of spacing determined from the base levels of illuminance indicated above.
6. Higher uniformity ratios are acceptable for elevated ramps near high-mast poles.
7. See AASHTO publication entitled, “A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets” for roadway and walkway classifications.
8. R1, R2, R3 and R4 are Road Surface Classifications, defined in the AASHTO Roadway Lighting Design Guide and further described in Table 6.2.

F UNIFORMITY OF ILLUMINATION

To avoid vision problems due to varying illumination, it is important to maintain illumination uniformity over the roadway. It is recommended the ratio of the average to the minimum initial illumination on the roadway be between 3:1 to 4:1.

A maximum to minimum uniformity ratio of 10:1 should not be exceeded. It is important to allow time for the driver's eye to adjust to lower light levels. The first light poles should be located on the side of the incoming traffic approaching the illuminated area. The eye can adjust to increased or increasing light level more quickly. In transition from a lighted to an unlighted portion of the highways, the level should be gradually reduced from the level maintained on the lighted section. This may be accomplished by having the last light pole occur on the opposite roadway. The roadway section following lighting termination should be free of hazards or decision points. Lighting should not be terminated before changes in background lighting or roadway geometry, or at the location of traffic control devices.

It is also important to ensure color consistency when lighting a highway/pedestrian corridor. Mixing of different types of lighting may reduce the lighting uniformity. As we transition to LED, it is acceptable to have mixed lighting segments along the same corridor.

The use of spot lighting at unlit intersections with a history of nighttime crashes is an option.

Close coordination between the Engineer of Record and the responsible local governmental agency is essential.

G UNDERPASSES AND OVERPASSES

One of the criteria to be followed to determine requirements for underpass lighting is the relative level between illumination on the roadway inside and outside of the underpass. The height, width, and length of the underpass determines the amount of light penetration from the exterior.

The need for lighting of independent sidewalks or shared use paths should be evaluated on a project specific basis. Considerations include the likelihood of night time use, the role of the facility in the community's bicycle and pedestrian network, and whether alternatives are available for night time travel.

When lighting an underpass, use a wall-mounted luminaire that is attached to a pier, pier cap, or the wall copings underneath the bridge.

G.1 Daytime Lighting

A gradual decrease in the illumination level from day time level on the roadway, sidewalk or path to the underpass should be provided. Consider daytime lighting for vehicles in underpasses greater than 80 feet in length.

Supplemental lighting of sidewalks or shared use paths in roadway underpasses less than 80 feet in length should be considered. Sidewalks and shared use paths on independent alignments with little natural light should be illuminated, especially if the exit is not visible upon entry.

G.2 Night Lighting

The night time illumination level in the underpass of the roadway should be maintained near the night time level of the approach roadway. Lighting of sidewalks or shared use paths adjacent to roadways in underpasses should be considered. Sidewalks and shared use paths on independent alignments open to travel during darkness should be illuminated. Due to relatively low luminaire mounting heights in underpasses, care should be exercised to avoid glare.

H DECORATIVE ROADWAY LIGHTING

Decorative or architectural roadway lighting is acceptable provided it meets the minimum design criteria and the objectives contained in this Manual. Examples include architectural lighting posts, cross arms, wall brackets, bollards, and light fixtures.

I ADAPTIVE LIGHTING

Some locations such as coastal roadways where sea turtles may be affected, may require lower lighting levels and different colors than what might normally be provided. FHWA's publication ***The Guidelines for the Implementation of Reduced Lighting on Roadways*** describes a process by which an agency or a lighting designer can select the required lighting level for a road or street and implement adaptive lighting for a lighting installation or lighting retrofit. This document supplements existing lighting guidelines.

J OVERHEAD SIGN LIGHTING

If the visibility of the sign due to roadway geometry or retro reflectivity of the sign sheeting is inadequate, overhead sign lighting should be provided. It is recommended that the level of illumination for overhead signs not be less than guidelines found in Table 6 – 3 Illuminance and Luminance Levels for Sign Lighting. See ***Chapter 18 – Signing and Marking*** for signage retroreflectivity requirements.

Table 6 – 3 Illuminance and Luminance Levels for Sign Lighting

Ambient Luminance	**Sign Illuminance**		**Sign Luminance***	
	Footcandles	**Lux**	**Candelas per Square Meter**	**Candelas per Square Foot**
Low	10 - 20	100 - 200	22 - 44	2.2 – 4.4
Medium	20 - 40	200 - 400	44 - 89	4.4 – 8.9
High	40 - 80	400 - 800	89 - 78	89 – 178

Source: AASHTO Roadway Lighting Design Guide (October, 2005), Table 10 – 1 Illuminance and Luminance Levels for Sign Lighting.

*Based upon a maintained reflectance of 70 percent for white sign letters.

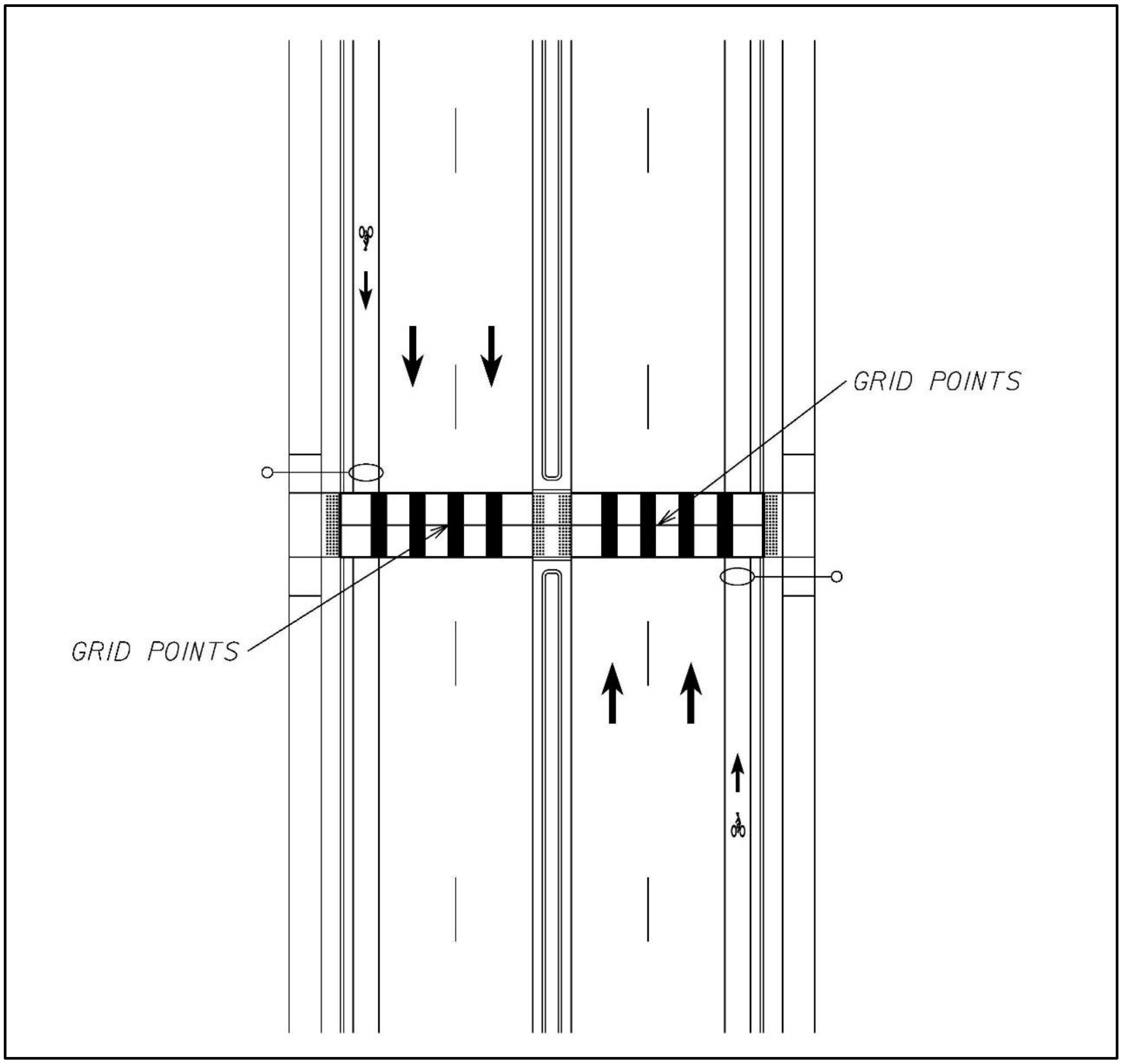
K ROUNDABOUTS

Roundabouts should be supplemented with roadway lighting. Where pedestrians are expected, provide additional lighting of 2.0-foot candles of maintained vertical illumination, measured at 5 feet from the road surface. Calculate the vertical illuminance for the crosswalk on each near side approach entering and exiting the roundabout.

L MIDBLOCK CROSSWALKS

At midblock pedestrian crossings, provide 2.0-foot candles of maintained vertical illumination, measured at 5 feet from the road surface. Calculate the vertical illuminance for the crosswalk on each near side approach.

Figure 6 – 2 Horizontal and Vertical Illuminance for Mid-Block Crosswalk



M MAINTENANCE

A program of regular preventive maintenance should be established to ensure levels of illumination do not go below required values. The program should be coordinated with lighting design to determine the maintenance period. Factors for consideration include a decrease in lamp output, luminaire components becoming dirty, and the physical deterioration of the reflector or refractor. The maintenance of roadway lighting should be incorporated in the overall maintenance program specified in ***Chapter 10 – Maintenance and Resurfacing***.

N LIGHT POLES

Light poles should not be placed in the sidewalk when adequate right of way is available beyond the sidewalk. Placement of lighting structures and achieved illumination may be limited by existing conditions such as driveways, overhead and underground utilities, drainage structures, and availability of right of way.

Light poles should not be placed so as to provide a hazard to errant vehicles. Non-frangible light poles should be placed outside of the clear zone. They should be as far removed from the travel lane as possible or behind adequate guardrail or other barriers. Light poles should be placed on the inside of the curves when feasible. Foundations or light poles and rigid auxiliary lighting components that are not behind suitable barriers should be constructed flush with or below the ground level.

The use of high mast lighting should be considered, particularly for lighting interchanges and other large plaza areas. This use tends to produce a more uniform illumination level, reduces glare, and allows placement of the light poles farther from the roadway. Additional emphasis lighting should be considered to illuminate specific and desired pedestrian crossings.

The placement of light poles should not interfere with the driver's sight distance or visibility of signs, signals, or other traffic control devices. In addition, the ***National Electrical Code (NEC)*** requires a working area for safety purposes around the poles. Further criteria regarding the placement of roadside structures, including light poles, is specified in ***Chapter 4 – Roadside Design***.

O REFERENCES FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES

The publications referenced in this chapter can be obtained at the following web sites.

- Roadway Lighting, ANSI/RP-8-14
  http://www.ies.org/store/product/roadway-lighting-ansiies-rp814-1350.cfm

- Design Guide for Residential Street Lighting (2015), Illuminating Engineering Society
  https://www.ies.org/store/design-guides/design-guide-for-residential-street-lighting/

- AASHTO - Roadway Lighting Design Guide (October 2005)
  https://bookstore.transportation.org

- Guidelines for the Implementation of Reduced Lighting on Roadways PUBLICATION NO. FHWA-HRT-14-050 JUNE 2014
  http://www.fhwa.dot.gov/publications/research/safety/14050/14050.pdf

- The Lighting Handbook, 10th Edition, Illuminating Engineering Society (IESA)
  https://www.ies.org/store/lighting-handbooks/lighting-handbook-10th-edition/

- National Electric Code
  https://www.nfpa.org/NEC/About-the-NEC/Free-online-access-to-the-NEC-and-other-electrical-standards

CHAPTER 7

RAIL-HIGHWAY CROSSINGS

TABLES

FIGURES

CHAPTER 7

RAIL-HIGHWAY CROSSINGS

A INTRODUCTION

The basic design for grade crossings should be similar to that given for highway intersections in ***Chapter 3*** – ***Geometric Design***. Rail-highway grade crossings should be limited in number and should, where feasible, be accomplished by grade separations. Where at-grade crossings are necessary, adequate traffic control devices and proper crossing design are required to limit the probability of crashes.

B OBJECTIVE AND PRIORITIES

The primary objective in the design, construction, maintenance, and reconstruction of rail-highway crossings is to provide safety for both rail and roadway vehicles in a feasible and efficient manner. The achievement of this objective may be realized by utilizing the following techniques in the listed sequence of priority.

B.1 Conflict Elimination

The elimination of at grade rail-highway conflicts is the most desirable procedure for promoting safe and efficient traffic operations. This may be accomplished by the closing of a crossing or by utilizing a grade separation structure.

B.2 Hazard Reduction

The design of new at-grade crossings should consider the objective of hazard reduction. In addition, an effective program of reconstruction should be directed towards reducing crash potential at existing crossings.

The regulation of intersections between railroads and all public streets and highways in Florida is vested in the ***Florida Administrative Code, (Rule Chapter 14-57: Railroad Safety and Clearance Standards, and Public Railroad-Highway Grade Crossings.*** This rule contains minimum requirements for all new grade crossings.

The Department's rail office has other documents available that contain additional guidance for the design, reconstruction, and upgrading of existing rail-highway grade crossings, and may be contacted for further information.

C RAIL-HIGHWAY GRADE CROSSING NEAR OR WITHIN PROJECT LIMITS

Federal-aid projects must be reviewed to determine if a rail-highway grade crossing is within the limits of or near the terminus of the project. If such rail-highway grade crossing exists, the project must be upgraded to meet the requirements of the ***Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (2009 Edition with Revision Numbers 1 and 2, May 2012) (MUTCD)*** in accordance with ***Title 23, United States Code (U.S.C.), Chapter 1, Section 109(e)*** *and* ***23 C.F.R. 646.214(b).***

These requirements are located in ***Chapter 8*** of the ***MUTCD***. "Near the terminus" is defined as being either of the following:

- If the project begins or ends between the crossing and the MUTCD-mandated advanced placement distance for the advanced (railroad) warning sign. See ***MUTCD, Table 2C-4 (Condition B, Column "0" mph)*** for this distance.
- An intersection traffic signal within the project is linked to the crossing's flashing light signal and gate.

D DESIGN OF RAIL-HIGHWAY CROSSINGS

The primary requirement for the geometric design of a grade crossing is that it provides adequate sight distance for the motorist to make an appropriate decision as to stop or proceed at the crossing.

D.1 Sight Distance

The minimum sight distance requirements for streets and highways at rail-highway grade crossings are similar to those required for highway intersections (***Chapter 3 – Geometric Design***).

D.1.a Stopping Sight Distance

The approach roadways at all rail-highway grade crossings should consider stopping sight distance no less than the values given in ***Chapter 3,*** Table 3 – 3 Minimum Stopping Sight Distances for the approach to stop signs. This distance shall be measured to a stopping point prior to gates or stop bars at the crossing, but not less than 15 feet from the nearest track. All traffic control devices shall be visible from the driver eye height of 3.50 feet.

D.1.b Sight Triangle

At grade crossings without train activated signal devices, a sight triangle should be provided.

The provision of the capability for defensive driving is an important aspect of the design of rail-highway grade crossings. An early view of an approaching train is necessary to allow the driver time to decide to stop or to proceed through the crossing.

The size of this sight triangle, which is shown in Figure 7 – 1 Visibility Triangle at Rail-Highway Grade Crossings, is dependent upon the train speed limit, the highway design speed, and the highway approach grade. The minimum distance along the highway (d_H), includes the requirements for stopping sight distance, the offset distance (D) from the edge of track to the stopped position (15 feet), and the eye offset (d_e) from the front of vehicles (8 feet); (Figure 7 – 1, Case A). The required distance (d_T) along the track, given in Table 7 – 1 Sight Distance at Rail-Highway Grade Crossings, is necessary to allow a vehicle to stop or proceed across the track safely. Where the roadway is on a grade, the lateral sight distance (d_T) along the track should be increased as noted (Table 7 – 1). This lateral sight distance is desirable at all crossings. In other than flat terrain it may be necessary to rely on speed control signs and devices and to predicate sight distance on a reduced speed of operation. This reduced speed should never be less than 15 mph and preferably 20 mph.

D.1.c Crossing Maneuvers

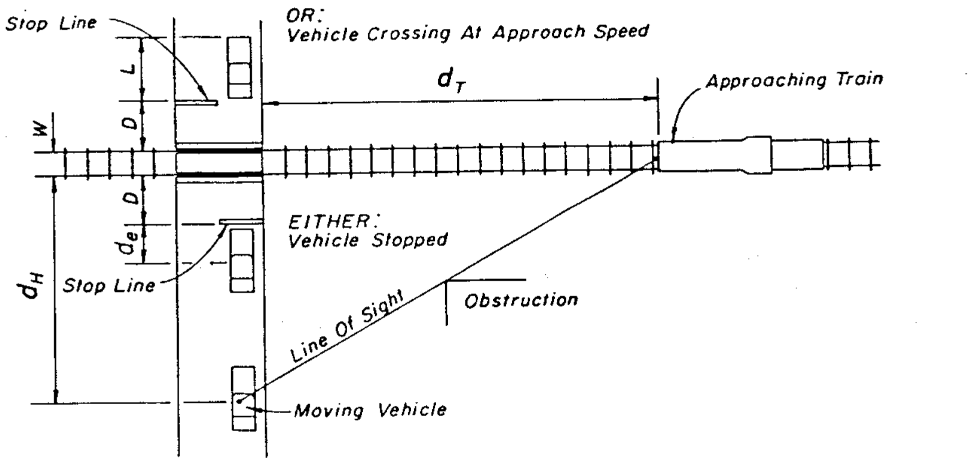
The sight distance required for a vehicle to cross a railroad from a stop is essentially the same as that required to cross a highway intersection as given in ***Chapter 3 – Geometric Design***.

An adequate clear distance along the track in both directions should be provided at all crossings. This distance, when used, shall be no less than the values obtained from Figure 7 – 1 Visibility Triangle at Rail-Highway Grade Crossings and Table 7 – 1 (Case B), Sight Distance at Rail-Highway Grade Crossings. Due to the greater stopping distance required for trains, this distance should be increased wherever possible.

The crossing distance to be used shall include the total width of the tracks, the length of the vehicle, and an initial vehicle offset. This offset shall be at least 10 feet back from any gates or flashing lights, but not less than 15 feet from the nearest track. The train speed used shall be equal to or greater than the established train speed limit.

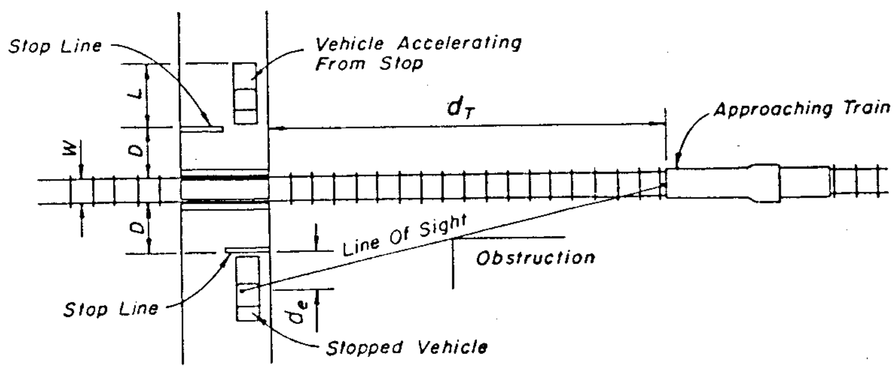
The setback for determining the required clear area for sight distance should be at least 10 feet more than the vehicle offset. Care should be exercised to ensure signal supports and other structures at the crossing do not block the view of drivers preparing to cross the tracks.

Figure 7 – 1 Visibility Triangle at Rail-Highway Grade Crossings



CASE A

APPROACHING VEHICLE TO SAFELY CROSS OR STOP AT RAILROAD CROSSING



CASE B

VEHICLE DEPARTING FROM STOPPED POSITION TO SAFELY CROSS RAILROAD TRACK

For d_H and d_T values and crossing conditions see Table **7-1.**

Table 7 – 1 Sight Distance at Rail-Highway Grade Crossings

Design Sight Distances for Combinations of Train and Highway Vehicle Speeds Conditions:								
Single Track 90° Crossing Design Vehicle WB-62FL and WB-67 (L=73.5' d_e=8') Flat Highway Grades			Track Width (W) = 5' Vehicle Stop Position (D) = 15' No Train Activated Warning Devices					
Train Speed (mph)	Case B Vehicle Departure From Stop	Case A Moving Vehicle						
	Vehicle Speed (mph)							
	0	10	20	30	40	50	60	70
	d_t (feet) Sight Distance Along Railroad Track							
10	255	155	110	102	102	106	112	119
20	509	310	220	203	205	213	225	239
30	764	465	331	305	307	319	337	358
40	1019	619	441	407	409	426	450	478
50	1274	774	551	509	511	532	562	597
60	1528	929	661	610	614	639	675	717
70	1783	1084	771	712	716	745	787	836
80	2038	1239	882	814	818	852	899	956
90	2292	1394	992	915	920	958	1012	1075
100	2547	1548	1102	1017	1023	1064	1124	1194
110	2802	1703	1212	1119	1125	1171	1237	1314
120	3057	1858	1322	1221	1227	1277	1349	1433
130	3311	2013	1433	1322	1329	1384	1461	1553

(Continued on Next Page)

Table 7 – 1
Sight Distance at Rail-Highway Grade Crossings
(continued)

d_H (feet) Sight Distance Along Highway							
	69	135	220	324	447	589	751

Notes: 1. Sight distances are required in all quadrants of the crossing.

2. Corrections must be made for conditions other than shown in the table, such as, multiple rails, skewed angle crossings, ascending and descending grades, and curvature of highways and rails. For condition adjustments and additional information refer to Railroad-Highway Grade Crossings under ***Chapter 9*** of "***A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets", AASHTO (2011)***. Additional information is available on FHWA's website for ***Highway-Rail Grade Crossing Surfaces*** and ***NCHRP Synthesis 250 Highway – Rail Grade Crossing Surfaces, TRB, (1998).***"

Source: Developed from ***Table 9 – 32, A Policy on Geometric Design of Highway and Streets, AASHTO (2011).***

D.2 Approach Alignment

The alignment of the approach roadways is a critical factor in developing a safe grade crossing. The horizontal and vertical alignment, and particularly any combination thereof, should be as gentle as possible.

D.2.a Horizontal Alignment

The intersection of a highway and railroad should be made as near to the right angle (90 degrees) as possible. Intersection angles less than 70 degrees should be avoided. The highway approach should, if feasible, be on a tangent, because the use of a horizontal curve tends to distract the driver from a careful observation of the crossing. The use of superelevation at a crossing is normally not possible, since this would prevent the proper grade intersection with the railroad.

D.2.b Vertical Alignment

The vertical alignment of the roadway on a crossing is an important factor in safe vehicle operation. The intersection of the tracks and the roadway should constitute an even plane. All tracks should, preferably, be at the same elevation, thus allowing a smooth roadway through the crossing. Where the railroad is on a curve with superelevation, the vertical alignment of the roadway shall coincide with the grade established by the tracks.

Vertical curvature on the crossing should be avoided. This is necessary to limit vertical motion of the vehicle.

The vertical alignment of the approach roadway should be adjusted when rail elevations are raised to prevent abrupt changes in grade and entrapment of low clearance vehicles

The roadway approach to crossing should also coincide with the grade established by the tracks. This profile grade, preferably zero, should be extended a reasonable distance (at least two times the design speed in feet) on each side of the crossing. Where vertical curves are required to approach this section, they should be as gentle as possible. The length of these vertical curves shall be of sufficient length to provide the required sight distance.

D.3 Highway Cross Section

Preserving the continuity of the highway cross section through a grade crossing is important to prevent distractions and to avoid hazards at an already dangerous location.

D.3.a Pavement

The full width of all travel lanes shall be continued through grade crossings. The crown of the pavement shall be transitioned gradually to meet the cross sectional grade of the tracks. This pavement cross slope transition shall be in conformance with the requirements for superelevation runoff. The lateral and longitudinal pavement slopes should be designed to direct drainage away from the tracks.

D.3.b Shoulders

All shoulders shall be carried through rail-highway grade crossings without interruption.

The use of full-width paved shoulders is required at all new crossings to maintain a stable surface for emergency maneuvers. The shoulders should be paved a minimum distance of 50 feet on each side of the crossing, measured from the outside rail. It is desirable to pave 100 feet on either side to permit bicycles to exit the travel lane, slow for their crossing, and then make an adequate search before selecting a gap for a return to the travel lane. See ***Chapter 3, Table 3 – 11 Shoulder Widths for Rural Highways*** for further information on shoulder width.

D.3.c Medians

It is recommended that the full median width on divided highways should be continued through the crossing. The median should be contoured to provide a smooth transition on the tracks.

A raised median is the ideal deterrent to discourage motorists from driving around the gates to cross the tracks or making a U-turn prior to the tracks. Flush medians should have channelization devices as a deterrent. Railroad signals and gate assemblies should be installed in the median only when gate arms of 36 feet will not adequately span the approach roadway.

Figure 7 – 2 Flush Median Channelization Devices

Alexander Street, SR 39A, Plant City, FL 1

D.3.d Sidewalks and Shared Use Paths

To provide an accessible route for pedestrians at grade rail-highway crossings, new or existing sidewalks and shared use paths shall be continued across the rail crossing. The surface of the crossing shall be:

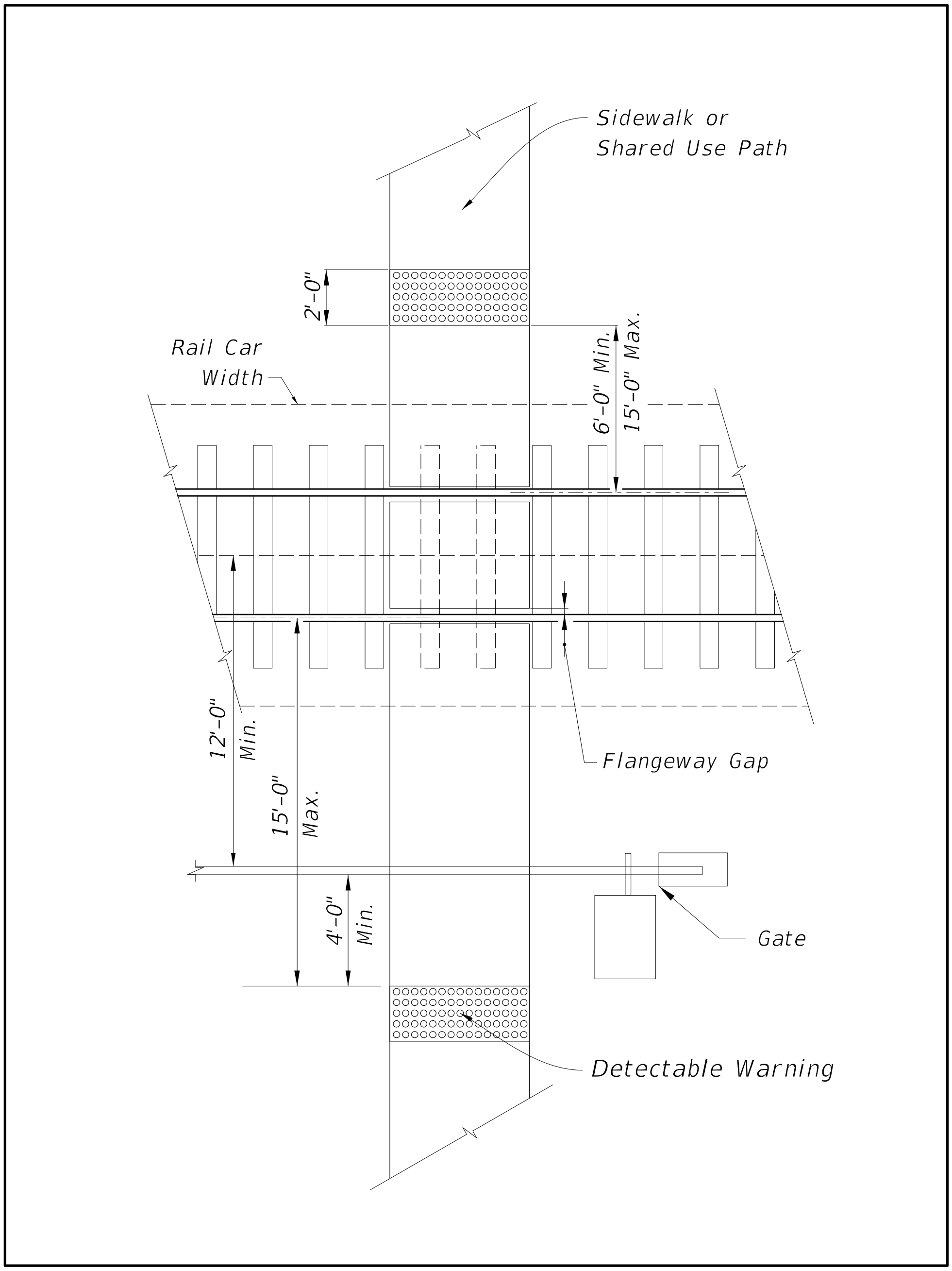
- firm, stable and slip resistant,
- level and flush with the top of rail at the outer edges of the rails, and
- area between the rails align with the top of rail.

Detectable warnings shall be placed on each side of the rail-highway crossing, extend 2.0 feet in the direction of pedestrian travel and the full width across the sidewalk or shared use path, as shown in Figure 7 – 3 Pedestrian Crossings.

The edge of the detectable warning nearest the rail crossing shall be 6.0 to 15.0 feet from the centerline of the nearest rail. Where pedestrian gates are provided, detectable warnings shall be placed a minimum of 4.0 feet from the side of the gates opposite the rail, and within 15.0 feet of the centerline of the nearest rail.

If traffic control signals are in operation at a crossing that is used by pedestrians or bicyclists, an audible device such as a bell shall also be provided and operated in conjunction with the traffic control signals. See ***MUTCD, Chapters 8B and 8C*** for further information and to determine if additional signals, signs, or pedestrian gates should be included. See ***MUTCD, Chapter 8D*** for additional information on designing crossings for shared use paths.

Figure 7 – 3 Pedestrian Crossings

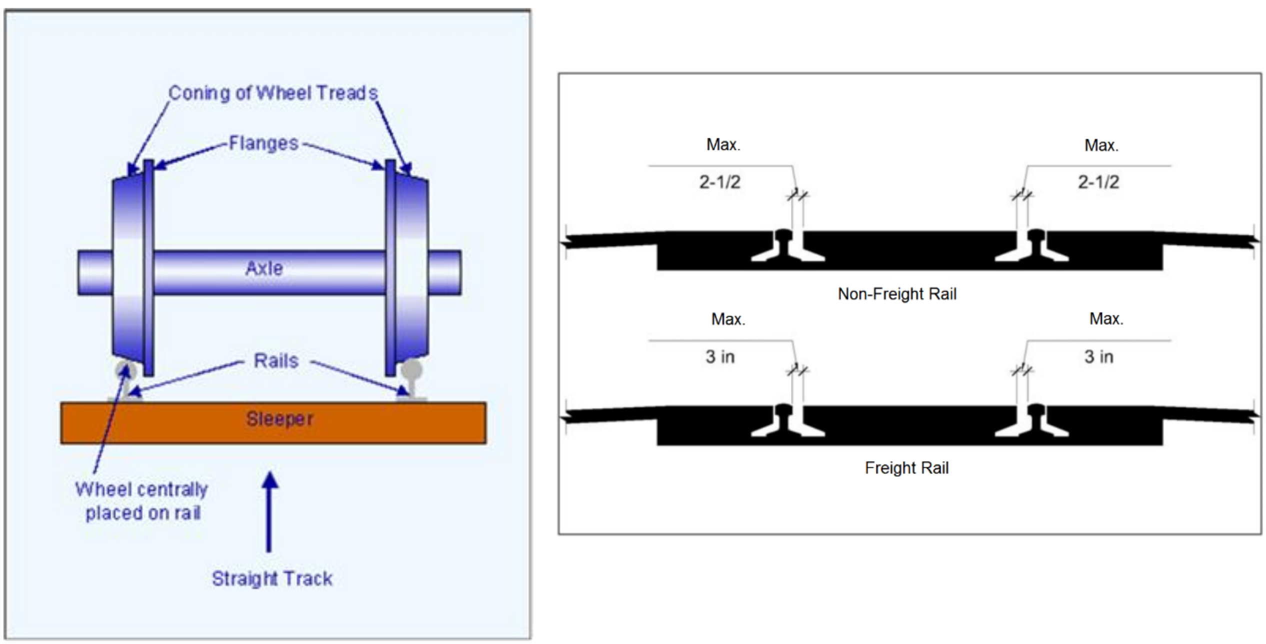


Note: Pedestrian gates may be installed on the outside of the sidewalk/shared use path or in the utility strip.

Flangeway gaps are necessary to allow the passage of train wheel flanges; however, they pose a potential hazard to pedestrians who use wheelchairs because the gaps can entrap the wheelchair casters. Flangeway gaps at pedestrian at-grade rail crossings shall be 2 ½” maximum on non-freight rail track and 3” maximum on freight rail track.

Figure 7 – 4 Flangeways and Flangeway Gaps illustrates where the flanges are located on the wheel, how they interact with the rails, and the maximum gap allowed.

Figure 7 – 4 Flangeways and Flangeway Gaps



See ***Chapter 8 – Pedestrian Facilities*** and ***Chapter 9 – Bicycle Facilities*** for further information on designing sidewalks and shared use paths. The ***2006 Americans with Disabilities Act – Standards for Transportation Facilities*** and the ***2017 Florida Accessibility Code*** impose additional requirements for the design and construction of pedestrian facilities.

D.3.e Roadside Clear Zone

Although it is often not practical to maintain the full width of the roadside clear zone, the maximum clear area feasible should be provided. This clear zone shall conform to the requirements for slope and change in grade for roadside clear zones.

D.3.f Auxiliary Lanes

Auxiliary lanes are permitted but not encouraged at signalized rail-highway grade crossings that have a large volume of bus or truck traffic required to stop at all times. These additional lanes should be restricted for the use of these stopping vehicles. The approaches to these auxiliary lanes shall be designed as storage for deceleration lanes. The exits shall be designed as acceleration lanes.

D.4 Roadside Design

The general requirements for roadside design given in ***Chapter 3 – Geometric Design*** and ***Chapter 4 – Roadside Design***, should be followed at rail-highway grade crossings. Supports for traffic control devices may be required within the roadside recovery area. Due to the structural requirements and the necessity for continuous operation, the use of a breakaway design is not recommended. The use of a guardrail or other longitudinal barrier is also not recommended, because an out of control vehicle would tend to be directed into the crossing.

In order to reduce the hazard to errant vehicles, all support structures should be placed as far from the traveled way as practicable.

D.5 Vertical Clearance

Minimum vertical clearances for grade separated rail-highway crossings are shown in Table 7 – 2 Minimum Vertical Clearances for New Bridges. Minimum vertical clearance is the least distance between the bottom of the superstructure and the top of the highest rail utilized anywhere within the horizontal clearance zone.

Table 7 – 2 Minimum Vertical Clearances for New Bridges

Facility Type	Clearance
Railroad over Roadway	16'-6"
Roadway over Railroad[1]	23'-6"
Pedestrian over Railroad[1]	23'-6"

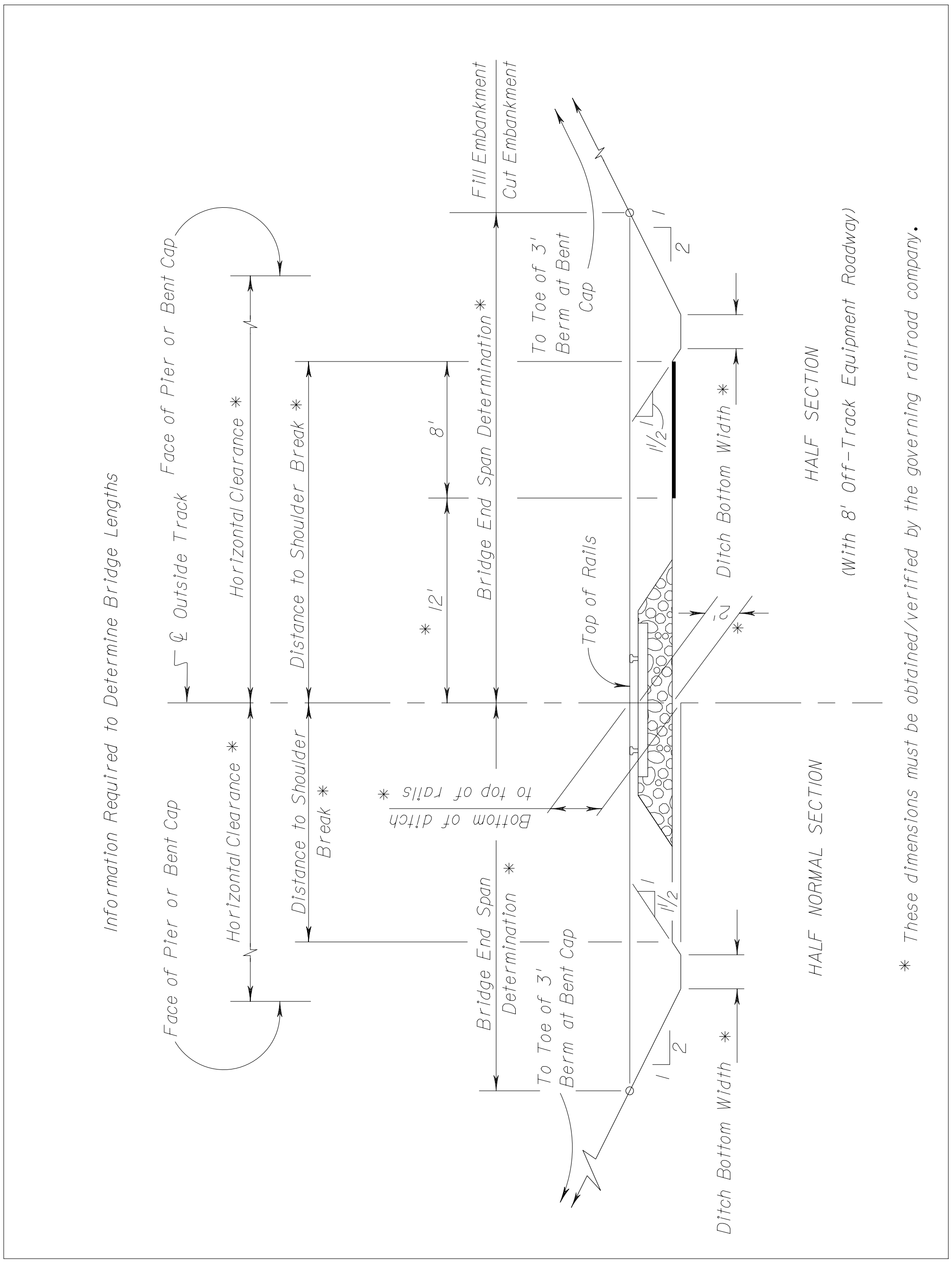
1. Over High Speed Rail Systems, see the latest version of ***American Railway Engineering and Maintenance-of-Way Association (AREMA)*** guidelines, or the design office of the high-speed rail line of interest for specific guidelines and specifications. Over Electrified Railroad, the minimum vertical clearance shall be 24 feet 3 inches. (See ***Department Topic No. 000-725-003: South Florida Rail Corridor Clearance***.)

For any construction affecting existing bridge clearances (e.g., bridge widenings or resurfacing) vertical clearances less than 16' - 0" shall be maintained or increased. If reducing the design vertical bridge clearance to a value between 16' - 0" and 16' - 2", the design vertical clearance dimension in the plans shall be stated as a minimum.

D.6 Horizontal Clearance

Horizontal clearances shall be measured in accordance with Figure 7 – 5 Track Section. The governing railroad company occasionally may accept a waiver from normal clearance requirements if justified; i.e., for designs involving widening or replacement of existing overpasses. The Department's District Rail Coordinator should be consulted if such action is being considered for FDOT owned rail corridors. For other rail crossings, coordinate with the owner of the rail corridor.

Figure 7 – 5 Track Section



The minimum horizontal clearances measured from the centerline of outermost existing or proposed tracks to the face of pier cap, bent cap, or any other adjacent structure are shown in Table 7 – 3 Horizontal Clearances for Railroads but must be adjusted for certain physical features and obstructions such as track geometry and physical obstructions.

Table 7 – 3 Horizontal Clearances for Railroads

Minimum Clearance Requirements	Normal Section[1]	With 8' Required Clearance for Off-Track[2]	Temporary Falsework Opening
With Crash Walls	18 ft.	22 ft.	10 ft.
Without Crash Walls	25 ft.	25 ft.	N/A

[1] Any proposed structure over the South Florida Rail Corridor shall be designed and constructed to provide a horizontal clear span of a minimum of 100 feet but not less than 25 feet from the center line of the outermost existing or proposed tracks. (See ***Department Topic No. 000-725-003-j: South Florida Rail Corridor Clearance.***)

[2] The additional 8 ft. horizontal clearance for off-track equipment shall be provided only when specifically requested in writing by the railroad.

D.6.a Adjustments for Track Geometry

When the track is on a curve, the minimum horizontal clearance shall be increased at a rate of 1.5 inches for each degree of curvature. When the track is superelevated, clearances on the inside of the curve will be increased by 3.5 inches horizontally per inch of superelevation. For extremely short radius curves, the AREMA requirements shall be consulted to assure proper clearance.

D.6.b Adjustments for Physical Obstructions

Columns or piles should be kept out of the ditch to prevent obstruction of drainage. Horizontal clearance should be provided to avoid the need for crash walls unless extenuating circumstances dictate otherwise.

Figure 7 – 5 Track Sections shows horizontal dimensions from the centerline of track to the points of intersection of a horizontal plane at the rail elevation with the embankment slope. These criteria may be used to establish the preliminary bridge length, which normally is also the length of bridge eligible for FHWA participation; however, surrounding topography, hydraulic conditions, and economic or structural considerations may warrant a decrease or an increase of these dimensions. These dimensions must be coordinated with the governing railroad company.

The ***Department's Structures Design Guidelines, Section 2.6.7*** provide additional information on the design of structures over or adjacent to railroad and light rail tracks.

D.7 Access Control

The general criteria for access control in ***Chapter 3 – Geometric Design*** for streets and highways should be maintained in the vicinity of rail-highway grade crossings. Private driveways should not be permitted within 150 feet, nor intersections within 300 feet, of any grade crossing.

D.8 Parking

No parking shall be permitted within the required clear area for the sight distance visibility triangle.

D.9 Traffic Control Devices

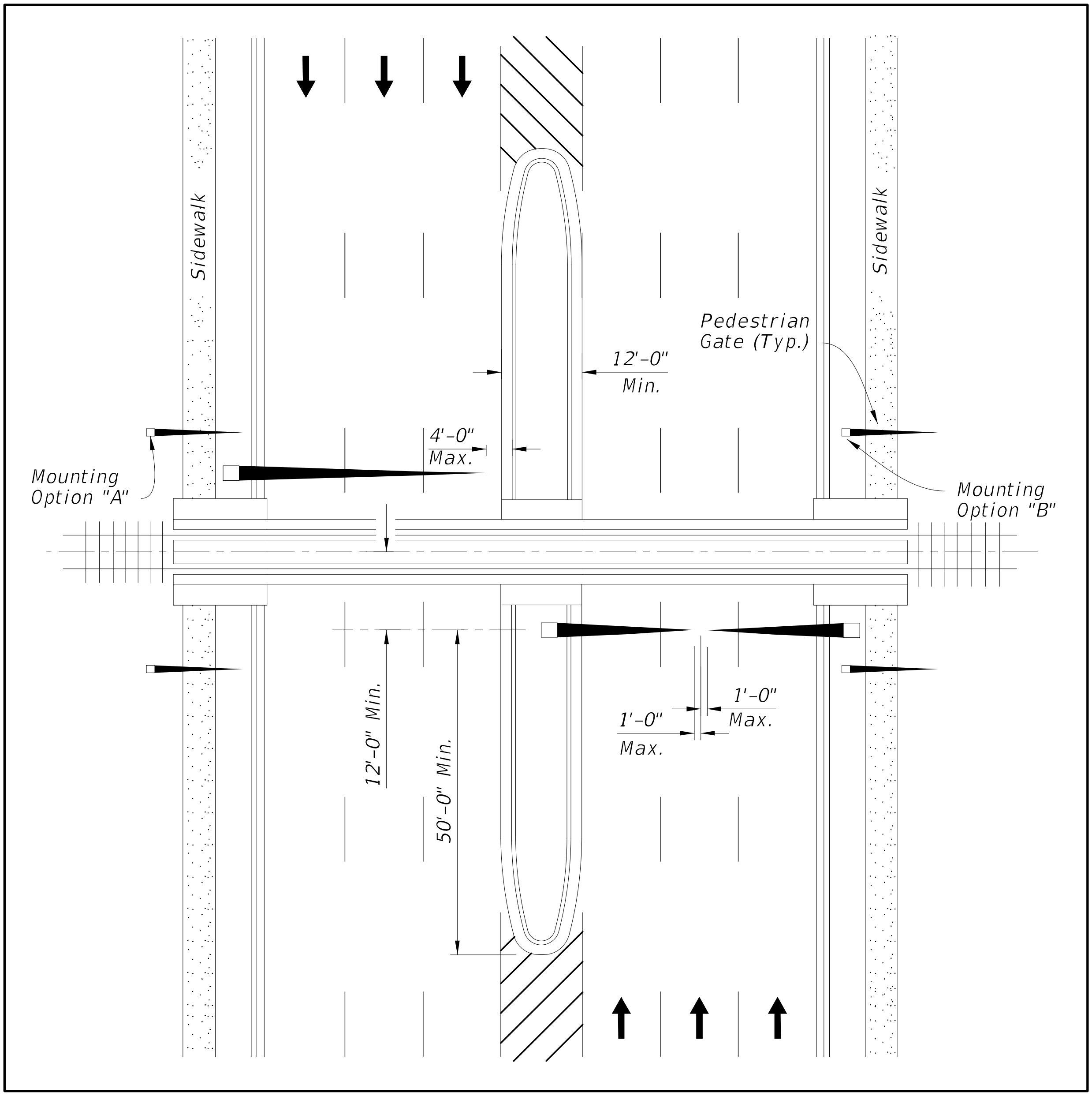
The proper use of adequate advance warning and traffic control devices is essential for all grade crossings. Advance warning should include pavement markings and two or more signs on each approach. Each new crossing should be equipped with train-activated flashing signals.

Automatic gates, when used, should ideally extend across all lanes, but shall at least block one-half of the inside travel lane. It is desirable to include crossing arms across sidewalks and shared use paths.

Traffic control devices shall meet the requirements of the ***MUTCD***. See Section E of this chapter for additional requirements for traffic control devices in Quiet Zones.

Figure 7 – 6 Median Signal Gates for Multilane Curbed Sections provides an example of gate installation when a median is present.

Figure 7 – 6 Median Signal Gates for Multilane Curbed Sections



D.10 Rail-Highway Grade Crossing Surface

Each crossing surface should be compatible with highway user requirements and railroad operations at the site. When installing a new rail-highway crossing or reworking an existing at-grade crossing, welded rail should be placed the entire width from shoulder point to shoulder point. Surfaces should be selected to be as maintenance free as possible.

D.11 Roadway Lighting

The use of roadway lighting at grade crossings should be considered to provide additional awareness to the driver. Illumination of the tracks can also be a beneficial safety aid.

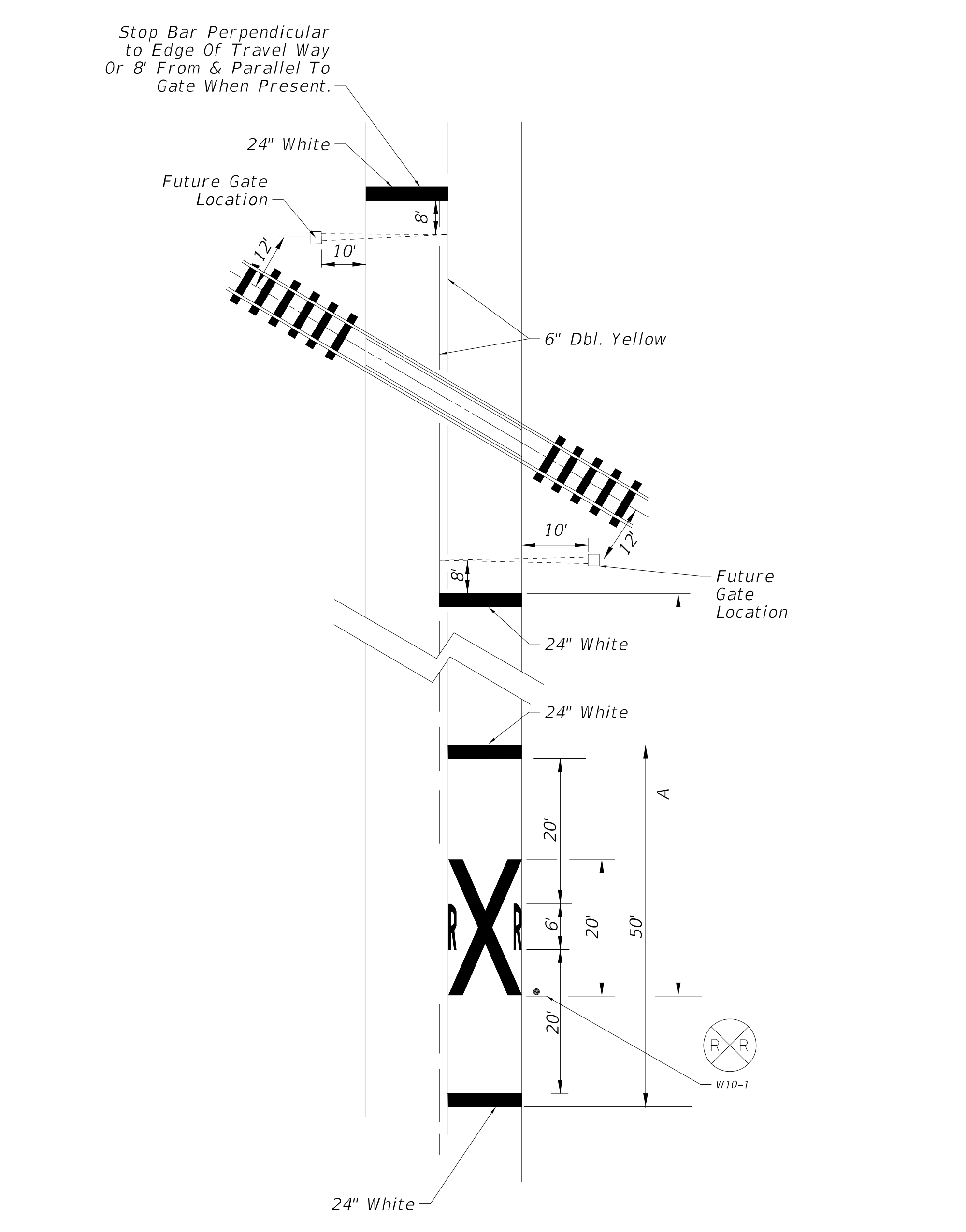
D.12 Crossing Configuration

Recommended layouts for grade crossings are shown in Figures 7 – 7 Passive Rail-Highway Grade Crossing Configuration and 7 – 8 Active Rail-Highway Grade Crossing Configuration. The distance "A" in the Figures is determined by speed and shown in the ***MUTCD, Table 2C – 4. Guidelines for the Advance Placement of Warning Signs***. Although the design of each grade crossing must be "tailored" to fit the existing situation, the principles given in this section should be followed in the design of all crossings. Additional information on the design of rail-highway crossings can be found in the Department's ***Design Standards, Index 17881 and 17882***.

Passive rail-highway grade crossings include traffic control devices that provide static messages of warning, guidance, and, in some instances, mandatory action for the driver. *(Source: **FHWA Railroad-Highway Grade Crossing Handbook**)*

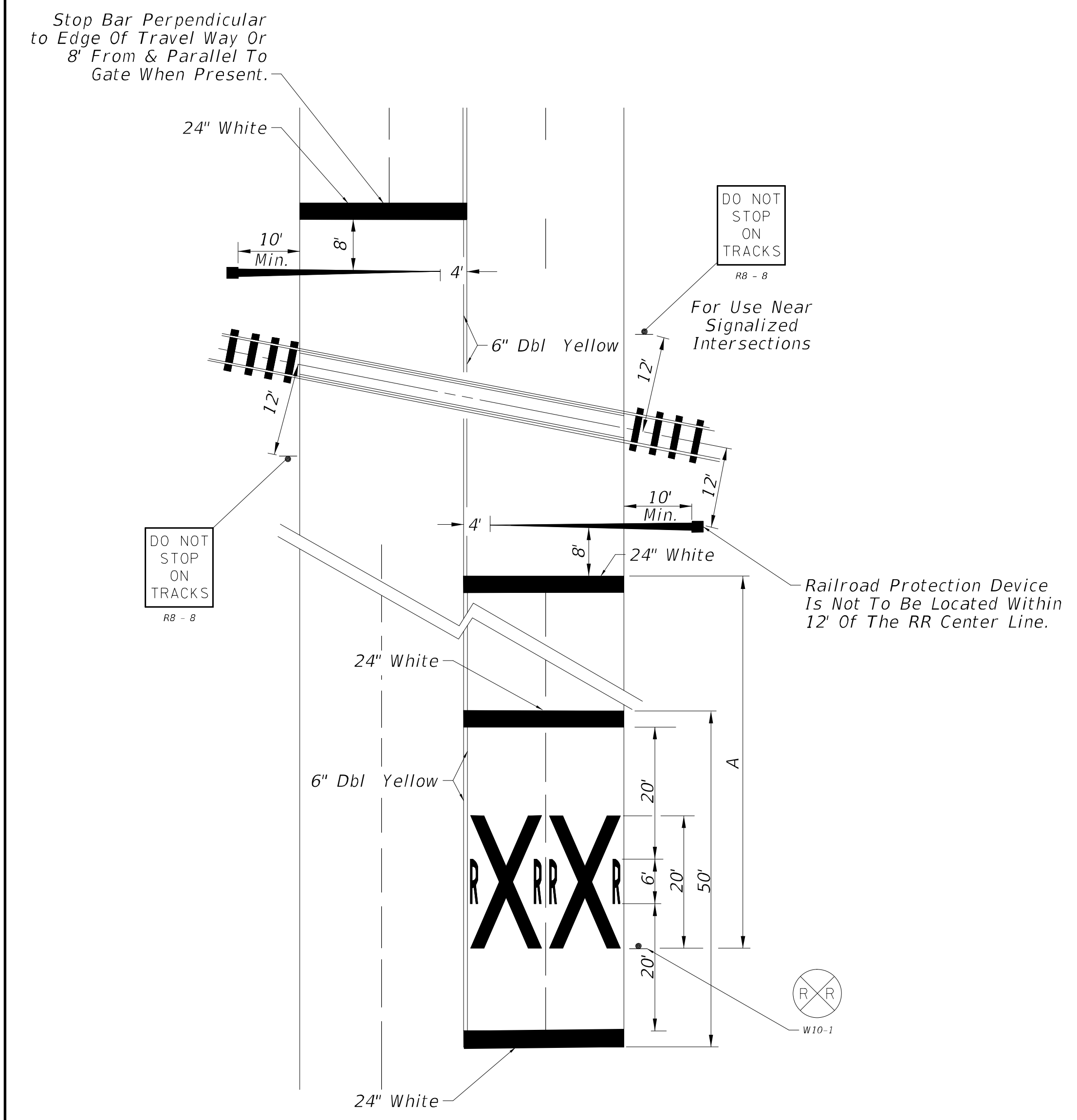
Active rail-highway grade crossings include traffic control devices that give advance notice of the approach of a train. *(Source: **FHWA Railroad-Highway Grade Crossing Handbook**).*

Figure 7 – 7 Passive Rail-Highway Grade Crossing Configuration



Note: The distance “A” is determined by speed and shown in the ***MUTCD, Table 2C – 4. Guidelines for the Advance Placement of Warning Signs***.

Figure 7 – 8 Active Rail-Highway Grade Crossing Configuration



Note: The distance “A” is determined by speed and shown in the ***MUTCD, Table 2C – 4. Guidelines for the Advance Placement of Warning Signs***.

E QUIET ZONES

Quiet Zone means a segment of a rail line that includes public rail-highway crossings at which locomotive horns are not routinely sounded. The Federal Railroad Administration (FRA) has established guidelines the applying jurisdiction must follow for approval of quiet zones. Applying entities can go to the FRA's website and the ***Code of Federal Regulations (CFR), Title 49, Subtitle B, Chapter II, Part 222*** for further information on the process for approval of Quiet Zones.

Coordinate with the Department's District Rail Coordinator to determine if crossings are located within designated Quiet Zones for State owned rail corridors or crossings of state highways. State owned rail corridors include the ***Central Florida Rail Corridor*** and ***South Florida Rail Corridor***. For other rail crossings, coordinate with the local government who maintains the crossing roadway, sidewalk or shared use path to determine if the location has been approved by the FRA for a Quiet Zone.

For a crossing within a Quiet Zone that requires supplemental safety measures, approved supplemental safety measures include:

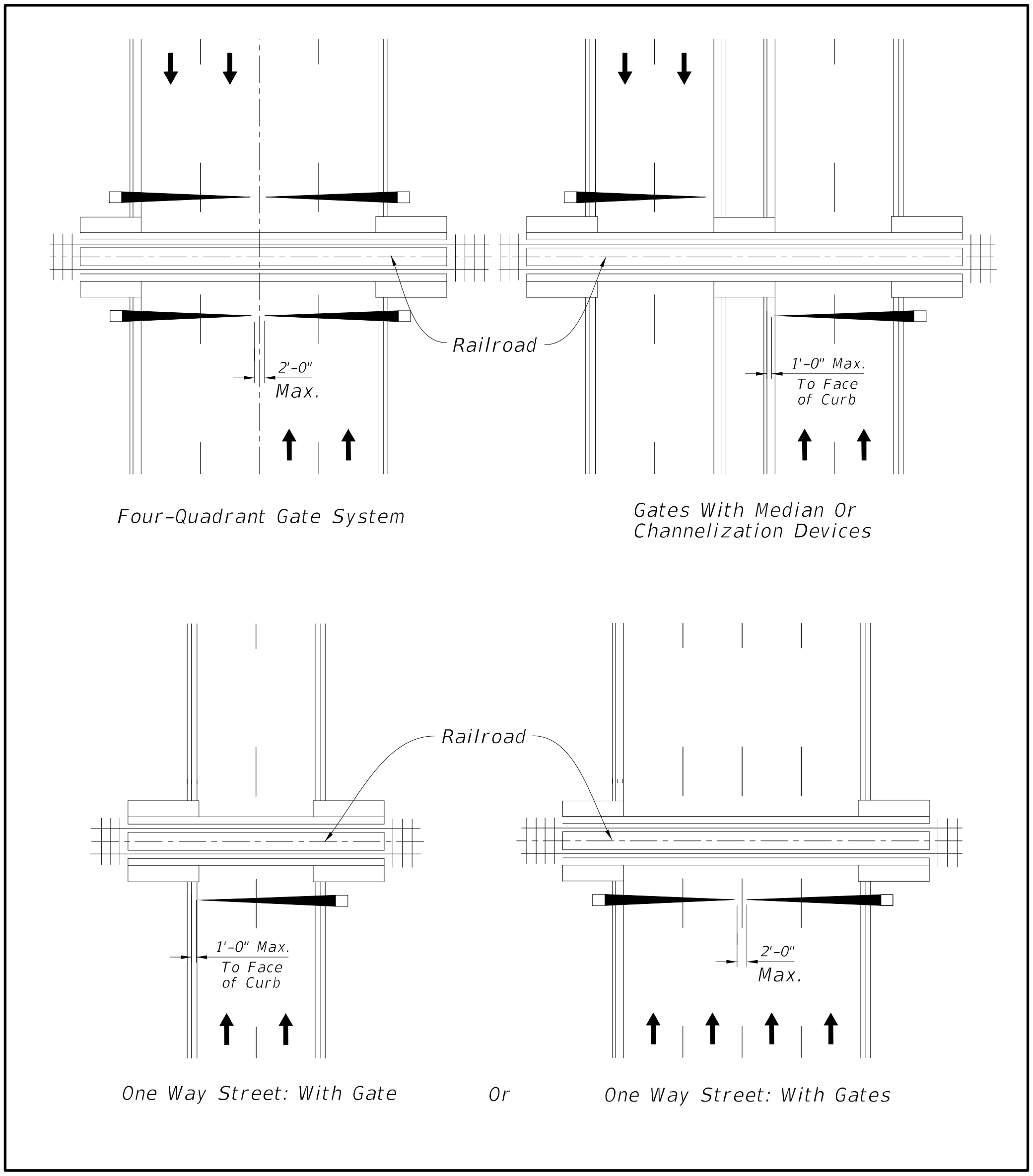
- Temporary closure of a public railroad-highway-rail grade crossing;
- Four-quadrant gate systems;
- Gates with medians or channelization devices;
- One way street with gate(s); and
- Permanent closure of a public highway-rail grade crossing.

The ***CFR, Title 49, Chapter II, Part 222, Appendix A, Approved Supplemental Safety Measures*** provides additional information on the design of Quiet Zones to meet federal approval. The ***CFR*** also requires that any traffic control device and its application where used as part of a Quiet Zone shall comply with all applicable provisions of the ***MUTCD.*** See ***MUTCD, Part 8, Traffic Control for Railroad and Light Rail Transit Grade Crossings*** for further information. Pedestrian gates, audible device, and detectable warnings are required when a sidewalk or shared use path is present or proposed.

For Quiet Zones that cross state owned rail corridors, the Department's ***Design Manual, Chapter 220 Railroads*** provides additional information.

Figure 7 – 9 Gate Configurations for Quiet Zones illustrates the maximum gap allowed for gates at rail-highway crossings within Quiet Zones, based upon ***CFR, Title 49, Chapter II, Part 222.***

Figure 7 – 9 Gate Configuration for Quiet Zones



F HIGH SPEED RAIL

The establishment of high-speed rail service is governed by ***49 U.S. Code 26106 – High-Speed Rail Corridor Development***.

The ***High-Speed Rail (HSR) Strategic Plan*** divides potential operations into four categories or generic descriptions:

- HSR – Express. Frequent express service between major population centers 200 - 600 miles apart, with few intermediate stops. Top speeds of at least 150 mph on completely grade-separated, dedicated rights-of-way (with the possible exception of some shared track in terminal areas). Intended to relieve air and highway capacity constraints.

- HSR – Regional. Relatively frequent service between major and moderate population centers 100 - 500 miles apart, with some intermediate stops. Top speeds of 110 - 150 mph, grade-separated, with some dedicated and some shared track (using positive train control (PTC) technology). Intended to relieve highway and, to some extent, air capacity constraints.

- Emerging HSR. Developing corridors of 100 - 500 miles, with strong potential for future HSR Regional and/or Express service. Top speeds of up to 80 - 110 mph on primarily shared track (eventually using PTC technology), with advanced grade crossing protection or separation. Intended to develop the passenger rail market and provide some relief to other modes.

- Conventional Rail. Traditional intercity passenger rail services of more than 100 miles with as little as 1 to as many as 7 - 12 daily frequencies; may or may not have strong potential for future high-speed rail service. Top speeds of up to 79 mph generally on shared track. Intended to provide travel options and to develop the passenger rail market for further development in the future.

Further information on the implementation of high-speed rail service can be found on the Federal Railroad Administration's website ***High Speed Rail Overview***.

G MAINTENANCE AND RECONSTRUCTION

The inspection and maintenance of all features of rail-highway grade crossings shall be an integral part of each highway agency's and railroad company's regular maintenance program (***Chapter 10 – Maintenance And Resurfacing***). Items that should be given a high priority in this program include: pavement stability and skid resistance, clear sight distance, and all traffic control and protective devices.

The improvement of all substandard or hazardous conditions at existing grade crossings is extremely important and should be incorporated into the regular highway reconstruction program. The objective of this reconstruction program should be to upgrade each crossing to meet these standards. The priorities for reconstruction should be based upon the guidelines set forth by the Department.

H REFERENCES FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES

The following is a list of publications that for further guidance:

- Federal Highway Administration Railroad-Highway Grade Crossing Handbook, Revised Second Edition, August 2007
  http://safety.fhwa.dot.gov/xings/com_roaduser/07010/

- Code of Federal Regulations (CFR), Title 49 Transportation, Part 222, Use of Locomotive Horns at Public Highway-Rail Grade Crossings
  http://www.ecfr.gov/cgi-bin/text-idx?tpl=/ecfrbrowse/Title49/49cfr222_main_02.tpl

- The Train Horn Rule and Quiet Zones
  https://www.fra.dot.gov/Page/P0104

- MUTCD, Part 8, Traffic Control for Railroad and Light Rail Transit Grade Crossings
  http://mutcd.fhwa.dot.gov/pdfs/2009r1r2/part8.pdf

- The American Railway Engineering and Maintenance-of-Way Association (AREMA)
  https://www.arema.org/

- Florida Administrative Code, (Rule 14-57: Railroad Safety and Clearance Standards, and Public Railroad-Highway Grade Crossings
  https://www.flrules.org/gateway/RuleNo.asp?title=Railroad Safety And Clearance Standards, And Public Railroad-Highway Grade Crossings&Id=14-57.011

- Florida Department of Transportation Rail Contacts
  http://www.dot.state.fl.us/rail/contacts.shtm

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

CHAPTER 8

PEDESTRIAN FACILITIES

FIGURES

CHAPTER 8

PEDESTRIAN FACILITIES

A INTRODUCTION

Pedestrian facilities shall be given full consideration in the planning and development of transportation facilities, including the incorporation of such facilities into state, regional, and local transportation plans and programs under the assumption that transportation facilities will be used by pedestrians. Pedestrian facilities should be considered in conjunction with the construction, reconstruction, or other significant improvement of any transportation facility. Special emphasis should be given to projects in or within 1 mile of an urban area.

In addition to the design criteria provided in this chapter, the ***2006 Americans with Disabilities Act Standards for Transportation Facilities*** as required by ***49 C.F.R 37.41 or 37.43*** and the ***2017 Florida Accessibility Code for Building Construction*** as required by ***61G20-4.002*** impose additional requirements for the design and construction of pedestrian facilities. Examples of pedestrian facilities include sidewalks, shared use paths, over and under passes, curb ramps, median refuges, and crosswalks.

Each highway agency responsible for a system of streets and highways should establish and maintain a program for implementing pedestrian facilities, and for maintaining existing pedestrian facilities.

B TYPES OF PEDESTRIAN FACILITIES

There are several ways in which pedestrians can be accommodated in the public right of way

B.1 Sidewalks

Sidewalks are walkways parallel to the roadway and designed for use by pedestrians. Sidewalks should be provided along both sides of roadways that are in or within one mile of an urban area. If sidewalks are constructed on the approaches to bridges, they should be continued across the structure. If continuous sidewalks are constructed on only one side of the street, pedestrians should be provided access to facilities and services located on the opposite side of the street. Newly constructed, reconstructed, or altered sidewalks shall be accessible to and usable by persons with disabilities.

The minimum width of a sidewalk shall be 5 feet on both curb and gutter and flush shoulder roadways. The minimum separation for a 5-foot sidewalk from the back of curb is 2 feet. If the sidewalk is located adjacent to the curb, the minimum width of sidewalk is 6 feet. For sidewalks, not adjacent to the curb, at least a 1-foot wide graded area should be provided on both sides, flush with the sidewalk and having a maximum 1:6 slope. Wider sidewalks should be considered in Central Business Districts and in areas where heavy two-way pedestrian traffic is expected.

A 5-foot wide (minimum) sidewalk that connects a transit stop or facility with an existing sidewalk or shared use path shall be included to comply with ADA accessibility standards. ***Chapter 13 – Transit*** provides illustrations of the connection between the sidewalk and transit facility.

Particular attention shall be given to pedestrian accommodations at the termini of each project. If full accommodations cannot be provided due to the limited scope or phasing of a roadway project or an existing sidewalk is not present at the termini, an extension of the sidewalk to the next appropriate pedestrian crossing or access point should be considered. If pedestrian facilities are provided, they shall be connected with facilities (e.g. sidewalks, shared use path, and crosswalks on the adjoining projects.

For new construction and reconstructed roadways, grades on sidewalks or shared use paths shall not exceed 5%, unless accessible ramps and landings are provided. However, in a roadway right of way, the grade of sidewalks or shared use paths is permitted to equal the general grade established for the adjacent street or highway. There should be enough sidewalk or path cross slope to allow for adequate drainage, however the maximum shall be no more than 2% to comply with ADA requirements.

Where existing physical constraints make it impracticable for altered elements, spaces, or facilities to fully comply with the requirements for new construction, compliance is required to the extent practicable within the scope of the project. Existing physical constraints include, but are not limited to, underlying terrain, right-of-way availability, underground structures, adjacent developed facilities, drainage, or the presence of a notable natural or historic feature. The location of new poles or relocated poles shall provide at least 48” minimum unobstructed sidewalk width.

Evaluate existing driveways and turnouts for compliance to ADA requirements. Nonconforming driveways are not required to be upgraded if it is not feasible within the scope of the project.

Additional information on designing accessible pedestrian facilities is provided by the United States Access Board at the following web site:

Proposed Guidelines for Pedestrian Facilities in the Public Right-of-Way

Edge drop-offs should be avoided. When drop-offs cannot be avoided, they should be shielded as discussed in Section F, Drop-Off Hazards for Pedestrians.

For additional information concerning the design of sidewalks, refer to ***Section C.7.d*** of ***Chapter 3 – Geometric Design***.

B.2 Shared Use Paths

Paths are usually set back from the roadway and separated by a green area, ditch, swales or trees. Shared use paths are intended for the use by both pedestrians and bicyclists and shall be accessible. For additional information concerning the design of shared-use paths, refer to ***Chapter 9 – Bicycle Facilities***.

B.3 Shared Streets

Shared uses of a street for people walking, bicycling and driving are referred to as shared streets. These are usually specially designed spaces such as pedestrian streets which are local urban streets with extremely low vehicle speed.

B.4 Shoulders

Highway shoulders are not intended for frequent use by pedestrians, but do accommodate occasional pedestrian traffic. Highway shoulders often have cross slopes which exceed 2%; consequently they are not considered or expected to fully meet ADA criteria.

C MINIMIZING CONFLICTS

The planning and design of new streets and highways shall include provisions that support pedestrian travel and minimize vehicle-pedestrian conflicts. These may include:

- Sidewalks and/or shared use paths parallel to the roadway
- Marked pedestrian crossings
- Raised median or refuge islands
- Pedestrian signal features such as pedestrian signal heads and detectors
- Transit stops and shelters

In some situations it may be possible to eliminate a vehicle-pedestrian conflict through close coordination with the planning of pedestrian facilities and activity outside of the highway right of way. Care should be exercised to ensure the elimination of a given conflict point does not transfer the problem to a different location. Any effort to minimize or eliminate conflict points must consider the mobility needs of the pedestrian. The desired travel path should not be severed and the number of required crossing points and/or walking distances should not be significantly increased. Some crossings should be redesigned rather than eliminated or relocated.

C.1 General Needs

Minimizing vehicle-pedestrian conflicts can be accomplished by providing adequate horizontal, physical, or vertical (primarily for crossings) separation between the roadway and the pedestrian facility.

C.2 Horizontal Separation

The development of independent systems for pedestrian and motor vehicular traffic is the preferred method for providing adequate horizontal separation.

C.2.a General Criteria

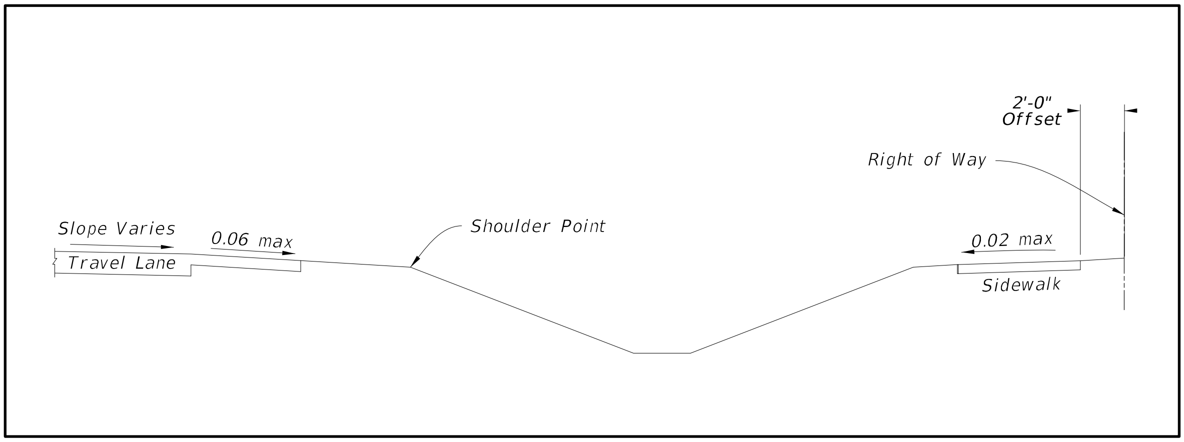
New sidewalks should be placed as far from the roadway as practical in the following sequence of desirability:

1. As near the right of way line as possible. (ideally, 3 feet of width should be provided behind the sidewalk for above ground utilities)
2. Outside of the clear zone.
3. Sufficiently off-set from the curb to allow for the placement of street trees, signs, utilities, parking meters, benches or other street furniture outside of the sidewalk in urban locations (e.g. town center, business or entertainment district).
4. Five feet from the shoulder point on flush shoulder roadways.
5. At the grass shoulder point of flush shoulder roadways.

Figure 8 – 1 Shoulder Point with Sidewalk provides an illustration of the location of the shoulder point.

On arterial or collector roadways, sidewalks shall not be constructed contiguous to the roadway pavement, unless a curb or other barrier is provided. Nearing intersections, the sidewalk should be transitioned as necessary to provide a more functional crossing location that also meets driver expectation. Further guidance on the placement of stop or yield lines and crosswalks is provided in the ***MUTCD, Part 3***.

Figure 8 – 1 Shoulder Point with Sidewalk



C.2.b Buffer Widths

Providing a buffer can improve pedestrian safety and enhance the overall walking experience. Buffer width is defined as the space between the sidewalk and the edge of traveled way. On-street parking or bike lanes can also act as an additional buffer. The planting strip or buffer strip should be 6 feet where practical to eliminate the need to narrow or reroute sidewalks around driveways. With this wider buffer strip, the sidewalk is placed far enough back so that the driveway slope does not have to encroach into the sidewalk.

C.3 Other Considerations

When designing urban highways, the following measures may be considered to help increase the safe and efficient operation of the highway for pedestrians:

- Use narrower lanes and introduce raised medians to provide pedestrian refuge areas
- Provide pedestrian signal features and detectors
- Prohibit right turn on red
- Control, reduce, or eliminate left and/or right turns
- Prohibit free flow right turn movements
- Reduce the number of lanes

D BARRIER SEPARATION

Barriers may be used to assist in the separation of motor vehicular and pedestrian traffic.

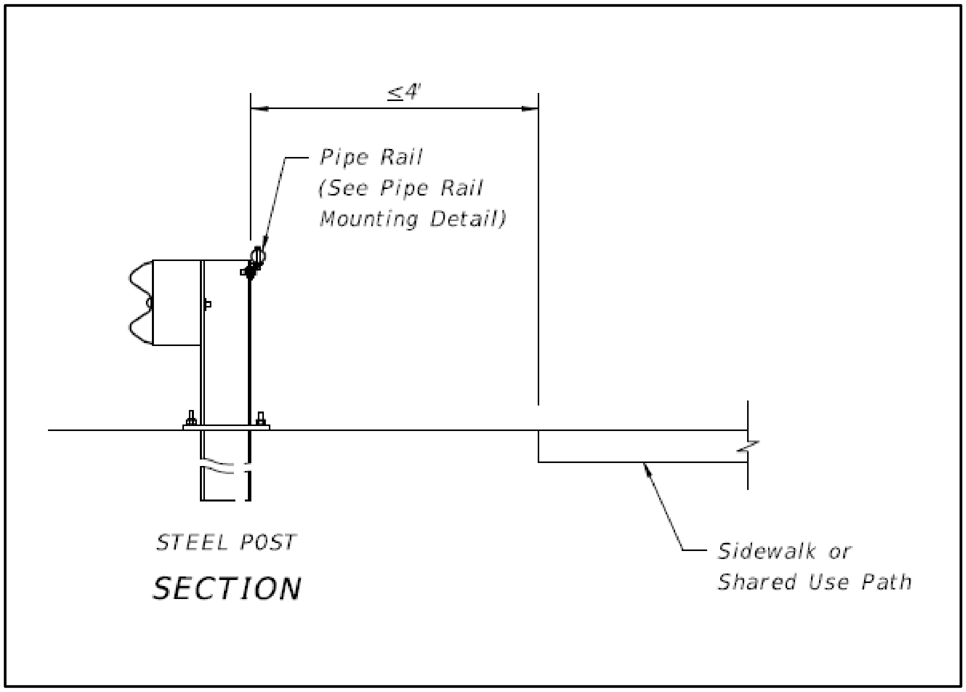
D.1 Longitudinal Barriers

Longitudinal barriers such as guardrails, rigid barriers, and bridge railings are designed primarily to redirect errant vehicles away from roadside hazards. These barriers can also be used to provide valuable protection of pedestrian facilities from out of control vehicles.

Where adequate horizontal separation is not feasible, or where there is a significant hazard from out of control vehicles, longitudinal barriers may be utilized. If electing to use barriers, special consideration should be made to ensure proper sight distance near driveways and intersections is maintained. See Chapter 4, Figure 4 – 8 Location of Guardrail for information on the correct placement of a sidewalk in conjunction with a guardrail.

When a sidewalk or shared use path is within 4 feet of the back of a guardrail with steel posts, a pipe rail should be installed on the back of the post. For a guardrail with timber posts, the bolt ends should be trimmed flush with the post or recessed. See Figure 8 – 2 Guardrail with Pipe Rail Detail for an illustration of when a pipe rail is needed. Additional information on the design of guardrails adjacent to a sidewalk or shared use path can be found in the Department's ***Standard Plans, Index 536-001*** **.**

Figure 8 – 2 Guardrail with Pipe Rail Detail



D.2 Fencing, Pedestrian Channelization Devices or Landscaping

Fencing, pedestrian channelization devices or landscaping may be used to discourage pedestrian access to the roadway and aid in channeling pedestrian traffic to the proper crossing points. These should not be considered a substitute for longitudinal barriers, but may be used in conjunction with redirection devices.

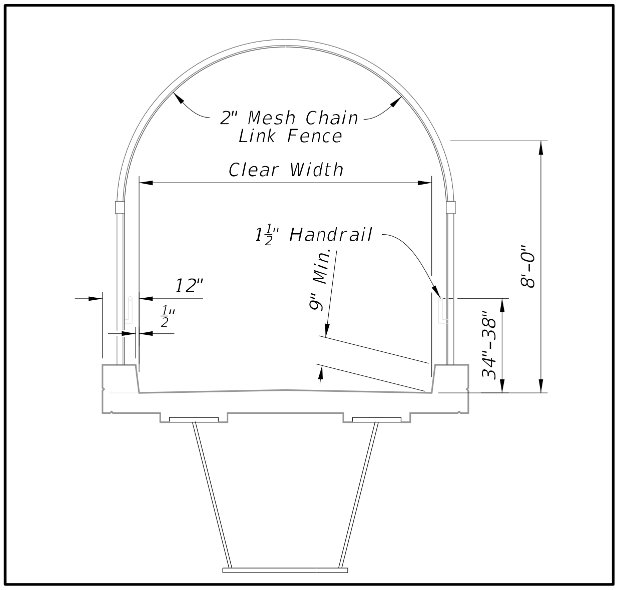
E GRADE SEPARATION

Grade separation may be selectively utilized to support the crossing of large pedestrian volumes across highways where the traffic volume on the roadway is at or near capacity or where speeds are high. Overpasses or underpasses may be justified at major pedestrian generators such as schools, shopping centers, sports and amusement facilities, transit centers, commercial buildings, parks and playgrounds, hospitals, and parking facilities.

The minimum clear width of any stand-alone pedestrian overpass or underpass on a pedestrian accessible route is 8 feet. However, if the contiguous sidewalk or path is greater than 8 feet wide, the clear width of the overpass or underpass should match that width. The minimum clear height of a pedestrian overpass or underpass is 8 feet. See Figure 8 – 3 Pedestrian Bridge Typical Section for an example of a pedestrian bridge typical section.

The ***FDOT Structures Manual - Volume 1 - Structures Design Guidelines (SDG), Section 10*** provide additional guidance on engineered steel and concrete pedestrian bridges.

Figure 8 – 3 Pedestrian Bridge Typical Section



Notes: 1. Pedestrian handrails may be required. See the ***2006 Americans with Disabilities Act Standards for Transportation Facilities***.

2. Other superstructure configurations may be used provided an 8 ft. minimum headroom is maintained.

E.1 Overpasses

Pedestrian overpasses are typically bridge structures over major roadways or railroads. Overpasses should provide elevator access if they are not designed to provide accessible ramps with compliant slopes, level landings, and handrails on both sides. Bridges over roadways should be covered or screened to reduce the likelihood of objects being dropped or thrown below. The area adjacent to overpasses may be fenced to prevent unsafe crossings and to channel pedestrians to the overpass structure.

E.2 Underpasses

Pedestrian underpasses or tunnels perform the same function as overpasses. Their use is convenient when the roadway is elevated above the surrounding terrain.

Underpasses should be adequately maintained to reduce potential problems in lighting, cleaning, policing, and flooding and to maximize safety. The area adjacent to underpasses may be fenced to prevent unsafe crossings and to channel pedestrians to the underpass structure.

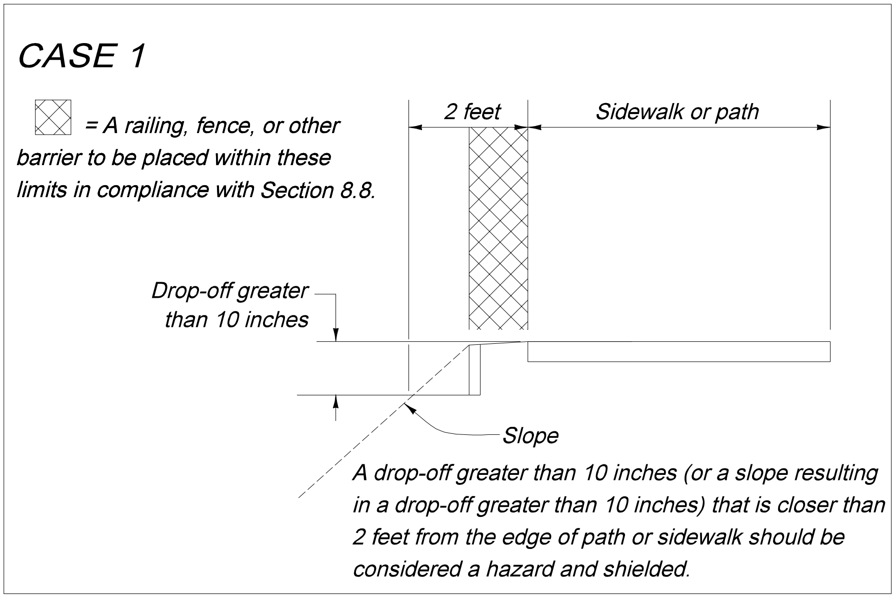
F DROP-OFF HAZARDS FOR PEDESTRIANS

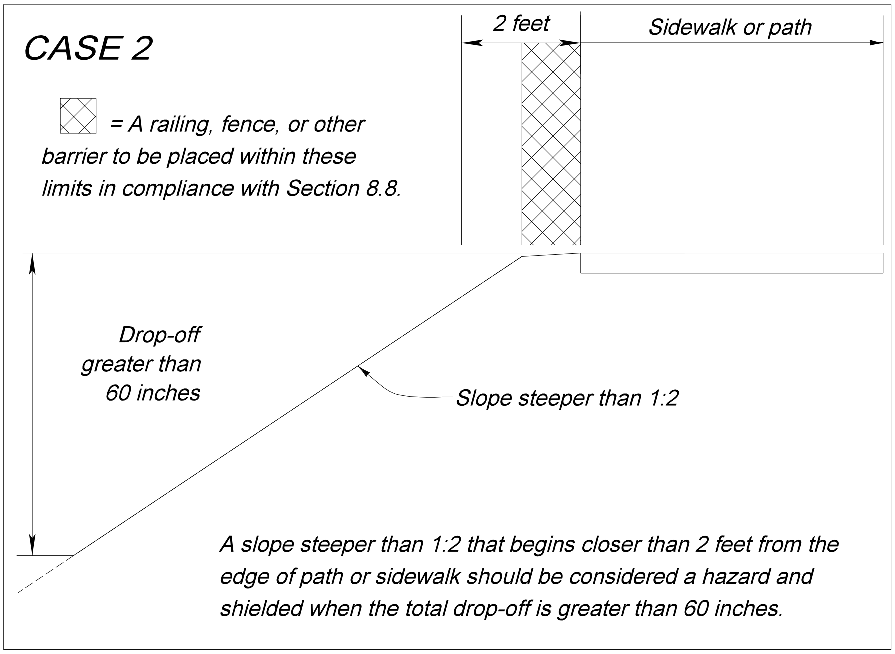
Drop-off hazards are defined as steep or abrupt downward slopes that can be perilous to pedestrians and bicyclists. Consider shielding any drop-off determined to be a hazard. Care should be taken when using Pedestrian/Bicycle Railings or fencing near intersections or driveways as they could obstruct the driver's line of sight. To reduce the need for railings as a sidewalk or shared use path approaches an intersection, consider extending cross drains and side drains to minimize drop-offs.

There are two cases that require shielding as shown in Figure 8 – 4 Drop-Off Hazards for Pedestrians and Bicyclists. Depending on the depth of the drop-off and severity of the conditions below, shielding may be necessary for cases other than described above.

Railings or fences should be provided for vertical drop-off hazards or where shielding is required. The standard height for a pedestrian/bicycle railing is 42 inches. A 48 inch tall pedestrian/bicycle railing should be used when sidewalk grades are steeper than 5% and bicycle travel is expected. A standard railing is generally intended for urbanized areas, locations attaching to bridge rail or along concrete walkways. Fencing is generally intended for use in rural areas along paths and trails.

Figure 8 – 4 Drop-Off Hazards for Pedestrians and Bicyclists





G PEDESTRIAN CROSSINGS

The design of pedestrian crossings and parallel pathways within the right of way shall be considered an integral part of the overall design of a street or highway.

The development of protection at any remaining crossings or conflict points must be adequate to achieve a total pedestrian transportation mode that is reasonably safe.

G.1 Crosswalks

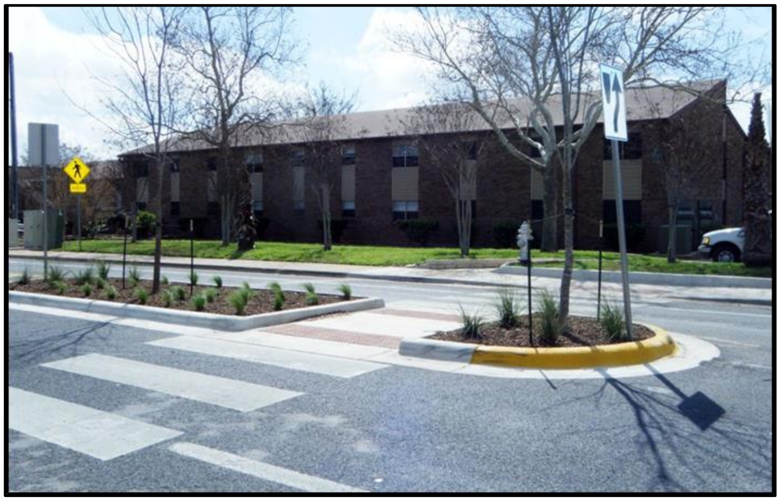
The design of pedestrian crosswalks should be based on the following requirements:

- Crosswalks should be placed at locations with sufficient sight distances
- At crossings, the roadway should be free from changes in alignment or cross section
- The entire length of crosswalk shall be visible to drivers at a sufficient distance to allow a stopping maneuver
- Stop bars or yield markings, in conjunction with the appropriate signing, shall be provided at all marked crosswalks
- Crosswalks shall be easily identified and clearly delineated, in accordance with the ***Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD)* and *Rule 14-15.010*, F. A. C.**

G.1.a Marked Crosswalks

Marked crosswalks are one tool to allow pedestrians to cross the roadway safely. They are often used in combination with other treatments (signs, flashing beacons, curb extensions, pedestrian signals, raised median or refuge islands, and enhanced overhead lighting). Marked crosswalks serve two purposes: 1) to inform motorists of the location of a pedestrian crossing so that they have time to lawfully yield to or stop for a crossing pedestrian; and 2) to assure the pedestrian that a legal crosswalk exists at a particular location. See Figure 8 – 5 Pedestrian Median Refuge with Curb Extensions for an example of a pedestrian median refuge with a curb extension.

Figure 8 – 5 Pedestrian Median Refuge with Curb Extension



Urban Street Design Guide, National Association of City Transportation Officials (NACTO)

Marked crosswalks on an uncontrolled leg of an intersection or a mid-block location shall be supplemented with other treatments (such as signing, beacons, curb extensions, raised medians, raised traffic islands, or enhanced overhead lighting) when any of the following conditions exist:

1. Where posted speeds are greater than 40 mph.
2. On a roadway with 4 or more lanes without a raised median or raised traffic island that has an ADT of 12,000 or greater.
3. On a roadway with 4 or more lanes with a raised median or raised traffic island that has or is projected to have (within 5 years) an ADT of 15,000 or greater.

See ***Chapter 6 – Lighting*** for information on illuminating crosswalks and pedestrian facilities.

Additional guidance on marked crosswalks can be found in the ***AASHTO Guide for the Planning, Design, and Operation of Pedestrian Facilities*** and ***FHWA's Safety Effects of Marked vs. Unmarked Crosswalks at Uncontrolled Locations: Executive Summary and Recommended Guidelines.***

Marked crosswalks can also be used to create midblock crossings.

G.1.b Midblock Crosswalks

Midblock crosswalks facilitate crossings to places that people want to go but that are not well served by the existing sidewalk or path network. These pedestrian crossings commonly occur at schools, parks, museums, waterfronts, and other destinations. Designers should study both existing and projected pedestrian volumes in assessing warrants for midblock crossings to account for latent demand.

Midblock crossings are located according to a number of factors including pedestrian volume, traffic volume, roadway width, traffic speed and type, desired paths for pedestrians, land use, and to accommodate transit connectivity. Midblock crossings should not be installed where sight distance or sight lines are limited for either the motorist or pedestrian.

Midblock crossings should be marked and signed in accordance with the ***MUTCD***. See Figure 8 – 6 Raised Midblock Crosswalks for an example of a midblock crosswalk.

Figure 8 – 6 Raised Midblock Crosswalk

Suwannee Street, Tallahassee, Florida

Crosswalks may be supplemented with Pedestrian Hybrid Beacons (PHB) or Rectangular Rapid Flashing Beacons (RRFBs). Illumination should be evaluated if night-time pedestrian activity is expected. See ***Chapter 6 – Lighting*** for further information.

A PHB is a special type of beacon used to warn and control traffic at an unsignalized location to assist pedestrians in crossing a street or highway at a marked crosswalk. ***Chapter 4F. Pedestrian Hybrid Beacons, MUTCD*** provides additional information regarding their installation. See Figure 8 – 7 Pedestrian Hybrid Beacon for an example of a pedestrian hybrid beacon.

Figure 8 – 7 Pedestrian Hybrid Beacon (PHB)

16th Street South, St. Petersburg, Florida

The RRFB uses rectangular-shaped high-intensity LED-based indications, flashes rapidly in a wig-wag "flickering" flash pattern, and is mounted immediately between the crossing sign and the sign's supplemental arrow plaque. Use of PHBs should be limited to locations with the most critical safety concerns, such as pedestrian and school crosswalks across uncontrolled approaches.

The use of RRFBs require interim approval from FHWA. The **MUTCD** provides further information on obtaining ***interim approval*** for the use of RRFBs. See Figure 8 – 8 Pedestrian Median Refuge with Rectangular Rapid Flashing Beacon for an example of a Rectangular Rapid Flashing Beacon (RRFB).

Figure 8 – 8 Pedestrian Median Refuge with Rectangular Rapid Flashing Beacons (RRFB)

4th Street North, St. Petersburg, Florida

G.2 Curb Ramps and Blended Transitions

A continuous accessible pedestrian route, including curb ramps and blended transitions is needed along pedestrian networks. Blended transitions are raised pedestrian street crossings, depressed corners or similar connections between pedestrian access routes at the level of the sidewalk or shared use path and level of the pedestrian street crossing that have a grade of 5% or less. Blended transitions can be used when geometrics and allocated space doesn’t allow for separated curb ramps.

Include sidewalk curb ramps at the following locations:

- At curbed returns for intersections and turnouts. Include a landing at the top of each ramp.
- On curbed roadways between intersections where a crosswalk has been established, such as midblock crossings and side streets.

Relocate or adjust pull boxes, manholes and other types of existing surface features to meet the ADA requirements for nonslip top surfaces, ¼ inch height protrusion, and slopes flush with the surrounding surface.

Curb ramps should be in line with the crossing. At intersections where more than one road is crossed, provide curb ramps at both ends of each crossing. Crossings are required to meet the same grade and cross slope requirements as sidewalks. Where criteria for maximum cross slope of the crossing cannot be met, provide the minimum attainable cross slope. When following the profile grade of the roadway, curb ramp slopes should not exceed 15 feet in length.

Provide transition slopes (flared sides) where a pedestrian circulation path crosses the curb ramp. The maximum slope of transition slopes is 1:10, measured parallel with and adjacent to the curb line.

When altering an existing pedestrian facility and conditions preclude the accommodation of a curb ramp slope of 1:12, provide a slope from 1:12 to 1:10 with a maximum rise of 6 inches.

Further information on curb ramps, landings and blended transitions is provided in the Department's ***Standard Plans, Index 522-002***

G.3 Detectable Warnings

Install detectable warnings to cover the full width of the walking surface and 2 feet in length. They are required on sidewalks and shared use paths at the following locations:

- Curb ramps and blended transitions at street crossings
- Cut-through pedestrian refuge islands or medians six feet wide or greater
- Pedestrian at-grade rail crossings

- Commercial driveways with a stop sign, yield sign or traffic signal
- Boarding and alighting areas adjacent to the roadway at bus stops where there is an at-grade connection to the roadway
- Edges of rail boarding platforms not protected by screens or guards

Detectable warnings are not required where sidewalk intersects urban flared turnouts or sidewalks that run continuously through driveways. Do not place detectable warnings on transition slopes or over grade breaks.

The detectable warning systems on the Department's ***Approved Product List (APL)*** are designed to work with concrete surfaces. In areas where the pedestrian facility has an asphalt surface, such as a shared use path, specify an appropriate detectable warning system. In these cases, consider including a short section of concrete that will accommodate any system.

Further information on detectable warnings are provided in the Department's ***Standard Plans, Index 522-002.***

G.4 Controls

Signs, signals, and markings should be utilized to provide the necessary information and direction for pedestrians. All directions and regulations should be clear, consistent and logical, and should, at a minimum, conform to the requirements given in the ***MUTCD***. The use of accessible pedestrian signals that include audible and/or vibro-tactile, and visual signals should be considered for pedestrian traffic control and regulation.

G.5 Sight Distance

The general requirements for sight distances for the driver are given in ***Chapter 3 - Geometric Design***.

Stopping sight distances greater than the minimum should be provided at all pedestrian crossings. These sight distances should include a clear view of the pedestrian approach pathway. Where parallel pedestrian pathways are within the roadside recovery area, or where casual pedestrian crossings are likely, the normal required stopping sight distance should also include a clear view of the entire roadside recovery area.

Sight distances shall be based upon a driver's eye and object height as discussed in ***Chapter 3 – Geometric Design***. Due to the small size of some pedestrians (particularly children), they are generally easy to confuse with other background objects.

Parking shall be prohibited where it would interfere with the required sight distance. Particular care should be exercised to ensure ample mutual sight distances are provided at all intersections and driveways.

G.6 Rail Crossings

Roadways, sidewalks and shared use paths at grade may cross light rail, street car rail, passenger rail, and freight railroads. Special design considerations are needed for these pedestrian intersections so that pedestrians are warned of the crossing and potential presence of a train. In addition, these crossings have specific accessibility requirements relating to surface continuity which must be met. See ***Chapter 7 – Rail-Highway Crossings*** for further information. The ***Federal Railroad Administration*** may impose additional requirements for the design and construction of rail crossings.

H LIGHTING

Lighting of the roadway itself is not only important for the safety of vehicular traffic, but also valuable for the protection of pedestrians. Vehicle headlamps often do not provide sufficient lighting to achieve the required stopping sight distance. Since this requirement is of vital importance at any potential pedestrian crossing point, lighting of the crossing should be considered. Lighting a street or highway is also valuable in improving the pedestrian's view of oncoming vehicles. At intersections or other locations with vehicle turning maneuvers, vehicle headlights may not be readily visible to the pedestrian.

Lighting shall be provided in pedestrian underpasses and should be considered on pedestrian overpasses. All pedestrian lighting shall be vandal resistant. The installation of daytime lighting is warranted when underpass user visibility requirements are not met with sunlight. Pedestrian underpass and overpass lighting should conform to the general lighting requirements given in the American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO) Roadway Lighting Design Guide.

The general requirements for lighting on streets and highways are given in ***Chapter 6 – Lighting***. Pathways adjacent to a street or highway should not be illuminated to a level more than twice that of the roadway itself.

In general, lighting should be considered as warranted when it is necessary, at night, to provide the mutual sight distance capabilities described in the preceding ***Chapter 3 – Geometric Design***. Locations with significant night time pedestrian traffic that should be considered for lighting of the roadway and adjacent pedestrian facilities include the following:

- Any street or highway that meets the warranting criteria given in ***Chapter 6 – Lighting***
- Streets and highways with speed limits in excess of 40 mph that do not have adequate pedestrian conflict elimination
- Sections of highway with minimal separation of parallel pedestrian pathways
- Intersections, access and decision points, and areas adjacent to changes in alignment or cross sections
- Areas adjacent to pedestrian generators
- Transit stops and other mass transit transfer locations
- Parking facilities

- Entertainment districts, sports/recreation complexes, schools, and other activity centers generating night travel
- Pedestrian crossings
- Any location where improvement of night time sight distance will reduce the hazard of vehicle-pedestrian conflicts

See ***Chapter 6 – Lighting*** for further information on lighting of pedestrian facilities and shared use paths.

I REFERENCES FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES

- Florida Department of Transportation Transit Facility Design
  http://www.dot.state.fl.us/transit/Pages/NewTransitFacilitiesDesign.shtm
- USDOT/FHWA ADA Standards for Accessible Design (ADAAG)
  http://www.access-board.gov/guidelines-and-standards/buildings-and-sites/about-the-ada-standards/ada-standards
- 2006 Americans with Disabilities Act Standards for Transportation Facilities
  https://www.access-board.gov/guidelines-and-standards/transportation/facilities/ada-standards-for-transportation-facilities
- 2012 Florida Accessibility Code for Building Construction
  https://www.flrules.org/gateway/ruleno.asp?id=61G20-4.002
- AASHTO – Guide for the Planning, Design, and Operation of Pedestrian Facilities
  https://bookstore.transportation.org/
- AASHTO – Roadway Lighting Design Guide I
  https://bookstore.transportation.org/
- NACTO Urban Streets Design Guide
  http://nacto.org/usdg
- Designing Walkable Urban Thoroughfares (CNU and ITE)
  http://www.cnu.org/streets
- Project Management Handbook (CSS)
  http://www.dot.state.fl.us/projectmanagementoffice/Publications/default.shtm
- FHWA Policy Memo for Flexibility in Pedestrian and Bicycle Facility Design
  http://www.fhwa.dot.gov/environment/bicycle_pedestrian/guidance/design_guidance/design_flexibility.cfm
- AASHTO Load and Resistance Factor Design (LRFD) Bridge Design Specifications, 6h Edition, (2012) with 2013 Interim Revisions
  https://bookstore.transportation.org/Home.aspx
- Federal Railroad Administration General Manual - Policies, Procedures, and General Technical Bulletins (July 2014)
  http://www.fra.dot.gov/Elib/Details/L16208

CHAPTER 9

BICYCLE FACILITIES

TABLES

FIGURES

CHAPTER 9

BICYCLE FACILITIES

A INTRODUCTION

Bicycle facilities should be given full consideration in the planning and development of transportation facilities, including the incorporation of such facilities into state, regional, and local transportation plans and programs under the assumption that transportation facilities will be used by cyclists. Bicycle facilities should be established in conjunction with the construction, reconstruction, or other change of any transportation facility and special emphasis should be given to projects in or within 1 mile of an urban area. The provision for bicycle facilities is also desirable for resurfacing, restoration & rehabilitation (RRR) projects.

Bicycle and pedestrian facilities are not required to be established:

1. Where their establishment would be contrary to public safety;
2. When the cost would be excessively disproportionate to the need or probable use; or
3. Where other available means or factors indicate an absence of need.

Appropriately designed and located bicycle facilities play an important role in supporting bicycle travel. Bicyclists should be considered in all phases of transportation planning, design, construction and maintenance activities. Particular emphasis should be given to new construction, reconstruction, intersection improvement, and transit projects. Bicycle facilities can include bicycle lanes, paved shoulders, wide curb lanes, shared lanes, shared use paths, and bicycle parking facilities.

In addition to the design criteria provided in this chapter, the ***2006 Americans with Disabilities Act Standards for Transportation Facilities*** as required by ***49 C.F.R 37.41*** or ***37.43*** and the ***2017 Florida Accessibility Code for Building Construction*** as required by ***61G20-4.002*** impose additional requirements for the design and construction of facilities such as shared use paths and structures that include provisions for pedestrians.

B ON-STREET FACILITIES

Provisions for bicycle traffic should be incorporated in the original roadway design. All roadways, except where bicycle use is prohibited by law, should be designed, constructed and maintained under the assumption they will be used by bicyclists. Roadway conditions should be favorable for bicycling, with smooth pavement and limited changes in elevation along edge lines. Drainage inlets and utility covers that cannot be moved out of the travel way should be designed flush with grade, well seated, and make use of bicycle-compatible grates and covers.

Railroad grade crossings on a diagonal can cause steering difficulties for bicyclists. Crossings for bicycle facilities should be perpendicular to the rail. This can be accomplished with a widened shoulder or bicycle lane, or separate path. Consideration should be given to improving the smoothness of the crossing and reducing the width and depth of the flangeway opening. Flangeway fillers can be used on heavy rail lines to minimize the size of the opening adjacent to the rail.

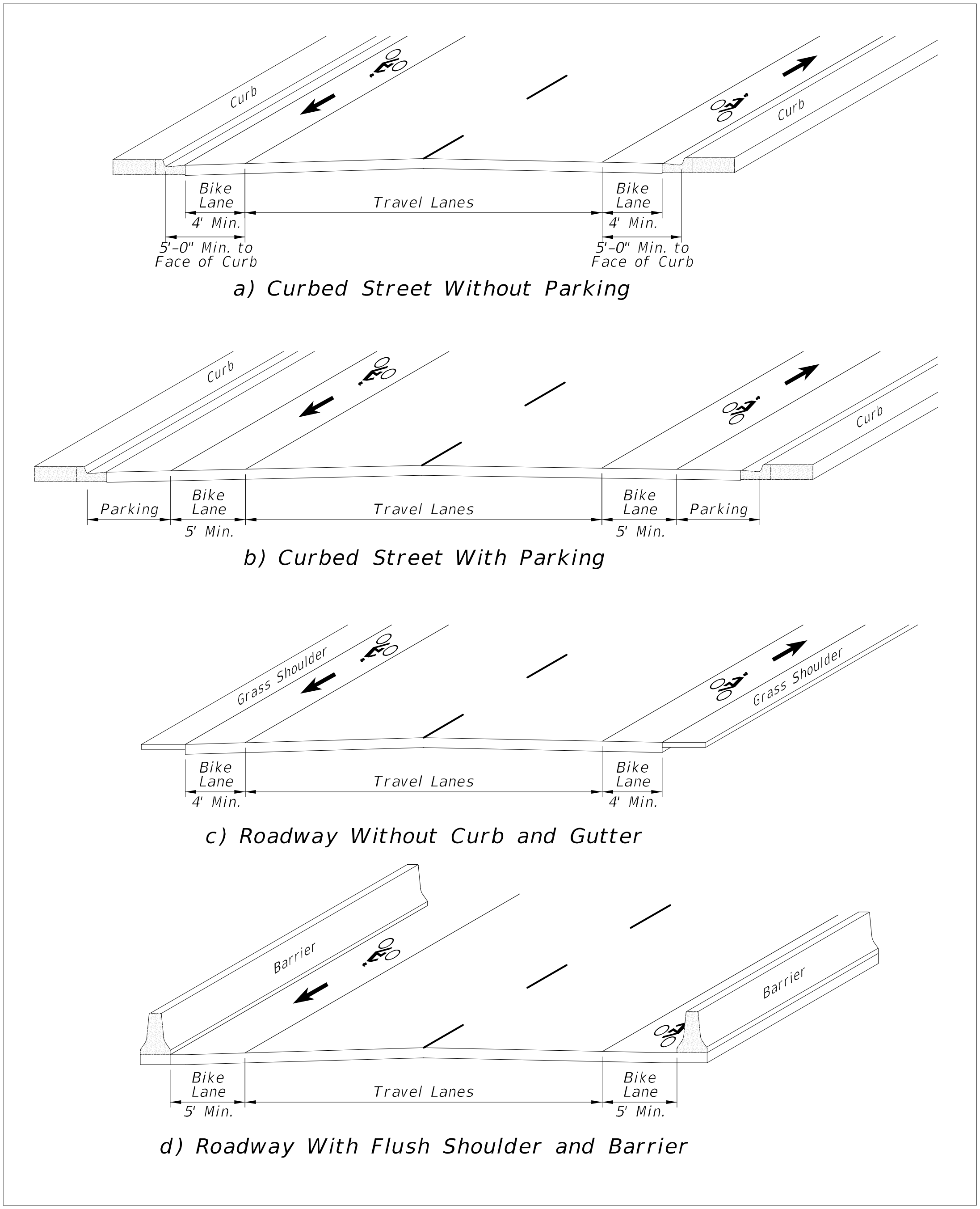
Bicycle lanes, paved shoulders, wide curb lanes, or shared lanes should be included to the fullest extent feasible. The appropriate selection of a bicycle facility depends on many factors, including motor vehicle and bicycle traffic characteristics, adjacent land use and expected growth patterns. All new or reconstructed arterial and collector roadways, in and within one mile of an urban area, should include bicycle lanes.

Rumble strips used in a traffic lane to alert operators to conditions ahead (e.g. stop signs, traffic signals or curves) should provide clear space (free of rumble strips) for bicyclists. This clear space may be a paved shoulder or if no paved shoulder is present, a minimum of 1.5 feet of clear space at the outermost portion of the lane.

B.1 Bicycle Lanes

Bicycle lanes delineate available roadway space for preferential use by bicyclists; providing more predictable movements by motorists and bicyclists. Bicycle lanes also help increase the total capacity of highways carrying mixed bicycle and motor vehicle traffic. Bicycle lanes shall have a minimum functional width of 4 feet. At least 1 foot additional width is needed when the bicycle lane is adjacent to a curb or other barrier, on-street parking is present, there is substantial truck traffic (>10%), or posted speeds exceed 50 mph. Minimum bicycle lane widths are illustrated in Figure 9 – 1 Minimum Widths for Bicycle Lanes. The 4-foot bicycle lane shown in the flush shoulder typical section assumes the grass portion of the shoulder provides emergency maneuvering room.

Figure 9 – 1 Minimum Widths for Bicycle Lanes



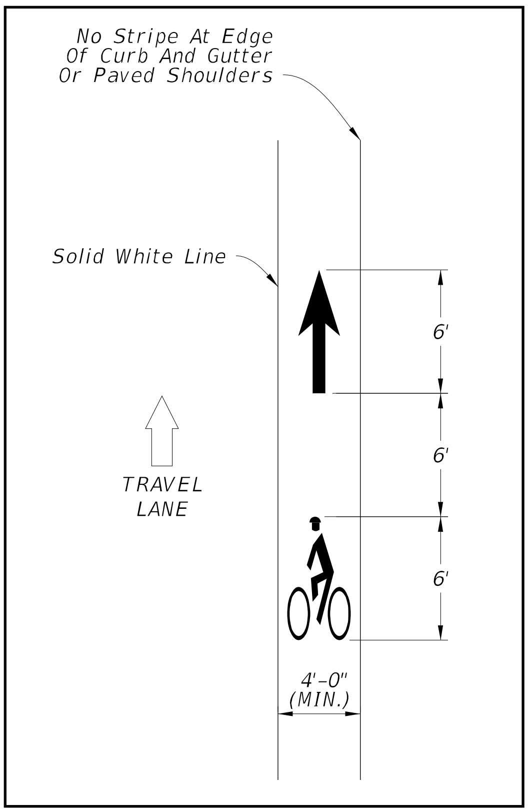
Bicycle lanes are one-way facilities and carry bicycle traffic in the same direction as the adjacent motor vehicle traffic. A bicycle lane should be delineated from the travel lanes with a solid white line and be marked with the bicycle symbol and arrow as shown in Figure 9 – 2 Detail of Bicycle Lane Markings. The dimensions for each pavement marking is 72" long, separated by 72".

The recommended placement of bicycle lane markings is:

a) At the beginning of a bicycle lane, on the far side of major intersections, and prior to and within the bicycle lane between a through lane and turn lane.

b) Along the roadway as needed to provide a maximum spacing of 1,320 for posted speeds less than or equal to 45 mph, 2,640 feet for a posted speed of 50 mph or greater.

Figure 9 – 2 Detail of Bicycle Lane Markings



If used, bike lane signs and plaques should be placed in advance of the upstream end of the bicycle lane, at the downstream end of the bicycle lane, and at periodic intervals based upon prevailing speed of bicycle and other traffic, block length, and distances from adjacent intersections, and other considerations. They should only be used in conjunction with marked bicycle lanes. Bike lane signs are not required.

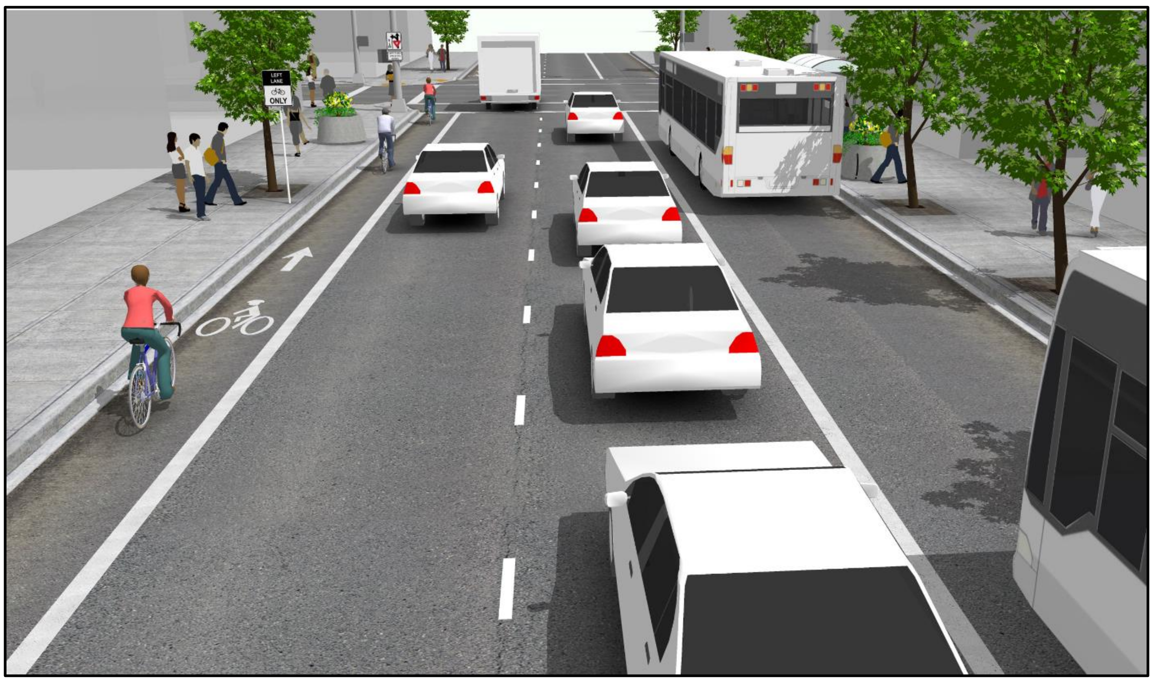
Figure 9 – 3 Bicycle Lanes

NACTO Urban Bikeway Design Guide, National Association of City Transportation Officials

A through bicycle lane shall not be positioned to the right of a right turn only lane or to the left of a left turn only lane. For new construction, reconstruction, and traffic operations projects, where bicycle lanes are provided between the through lane and right turn lane, bus bay or parking lane they shall be a minimum of 5 feet wide. For bicycle lanes adjacent to parking lanes, if the parking volume is substantial or the turnover is high a width of 6-7 feet is desirable to avoid opening vehicle doors.

On one-way streets, bicycle lanes should generally be placed on the right side of the street. A bicycle lane on the left side of the street can be considered when a bicycle lane on the left will substantially decrease the number of conflicts, such as those caused by frequent bus traffic, heavy right turning movements, high-turnover parking lanes, or if there are a significant number of left turning bicyclists. See Figure 9 – 4 Left Side Bicycle Lanes for an illustration.

Figure 9 – 4 Left Side Bicycle Lanes



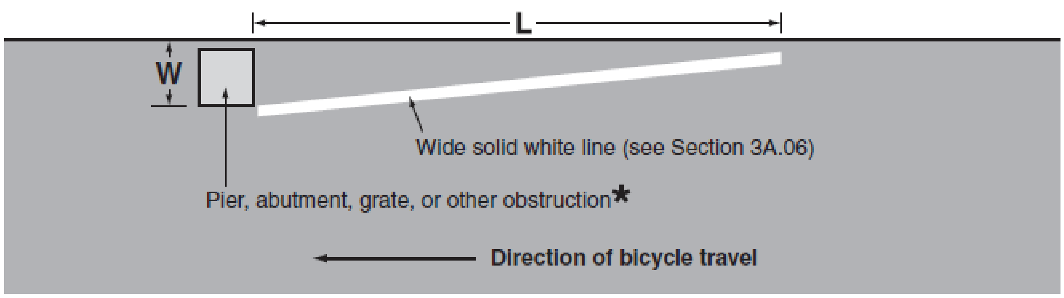
NACTO Urban Bikeway Design Guide, National Association of City Transportation Officials

Bicycle lanes shall not be provided on the circular roadway of a roundabout, and shall be transitioned prior to the roundabout in accordance with the MUTCD.

Existing drainage inlets, grates and utility covers shall be evaluated as to whether they present an obstruction to bicyclists, and should be relocated out of the cyclist's path of travel. Drainage inlets, grates and utility covers to remain should be adjusted to be flush with the adjacent pavement surface, utilize a grate recommended for bicycle travel, and may be marked as an obstruction.

Advance warning of an inlet or other obstruction may be provided as shown in the ***MUTCD, Part 9***. Additional information on appropriate drainage inlets in or near pedestrian and bicycle facilities can be found in the Department's ***Drainage Manual, Section 3.7.4 Inlet Placement, January 2018 Edition.***

Figure 9 – 5 Example of Obstruction Pavement Markings



B - Obstruction at edge of path or roadway

L = WS, where W is the offset in feet and S is bicycle approach speed in mph

* Provide an additional foot of offset for a raised obstruction and use the formula L = (W+1) S for the taper length

Traffic signals should be responsive to bicyclists. Regular maintenance of bicycle lanes should be a priority, since bicyclists are unable to use a lane with potholes, debris or broken glass.

In conjunction with resurfacing projects, the roadway width shall be redistributed when practical to provide for bicycle facilities. The types of bicycle facilities considered for implementation include buffered bicycle lanes, bicycle lanes, wide outside lanes, and shared lanes. Lane widths on urban multilane roadways and two-lane curb and gutter roadways may be reduced as shown in Table 9 – 1 Lane Widths to provide for bicycle facilities.

Table 9 – 1 Lane Widths
Urban Multilane or Two-Lane with Curb and Gutter

Design Year AADT	Design Speed (mph)	Minimum Thru Lane (ft.)	Minimum Turn Lane (ft.)	Minimum Parking Lane (ft.)
ALL	ALL	10 [1]	9 [2]	7 [3]

1. 11 ft. where either of the following conditions exist:
   a) Trucks are >10% of Design Year Traffic.
   b) Design Speed is 40 mph or greater.
2. 10 ft. for 2 Way Left Turn Lanes.
3. A minimum width of 7 ft. measured from face of curb may be left in place. Otherwise provide 8 ft. minimum, measured from face of curb.

Various configurations of bicycle lanes on curb and gutter and flush shoulder typical sections are illustrated in Figures 9 – 6 to 9 – 23.

Figure 9 – 6 Bicycle Lane Markings

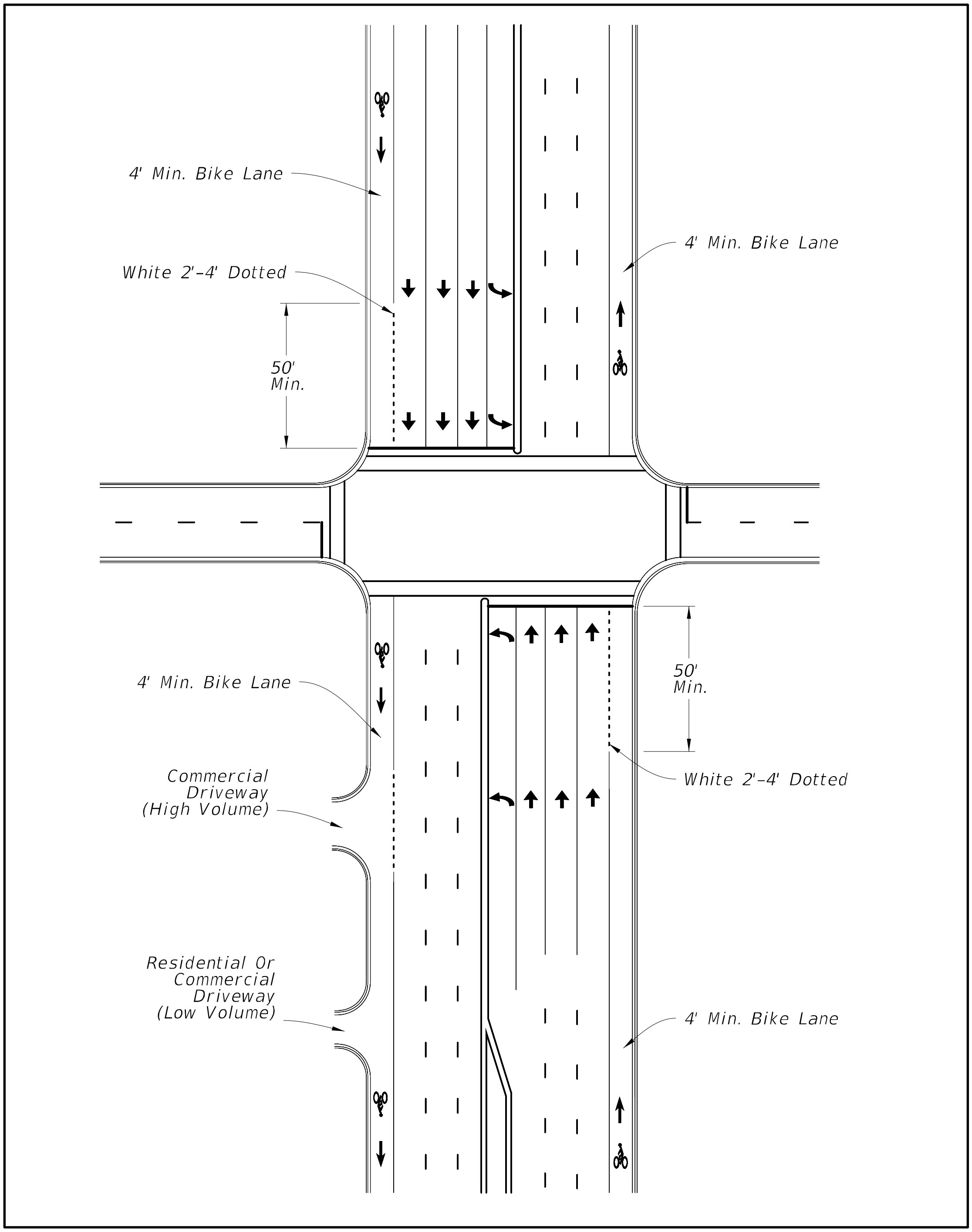


Figure 9 – 7 Bicycle Lanes with Separate Right Turn Lane (Curb and Gutter)

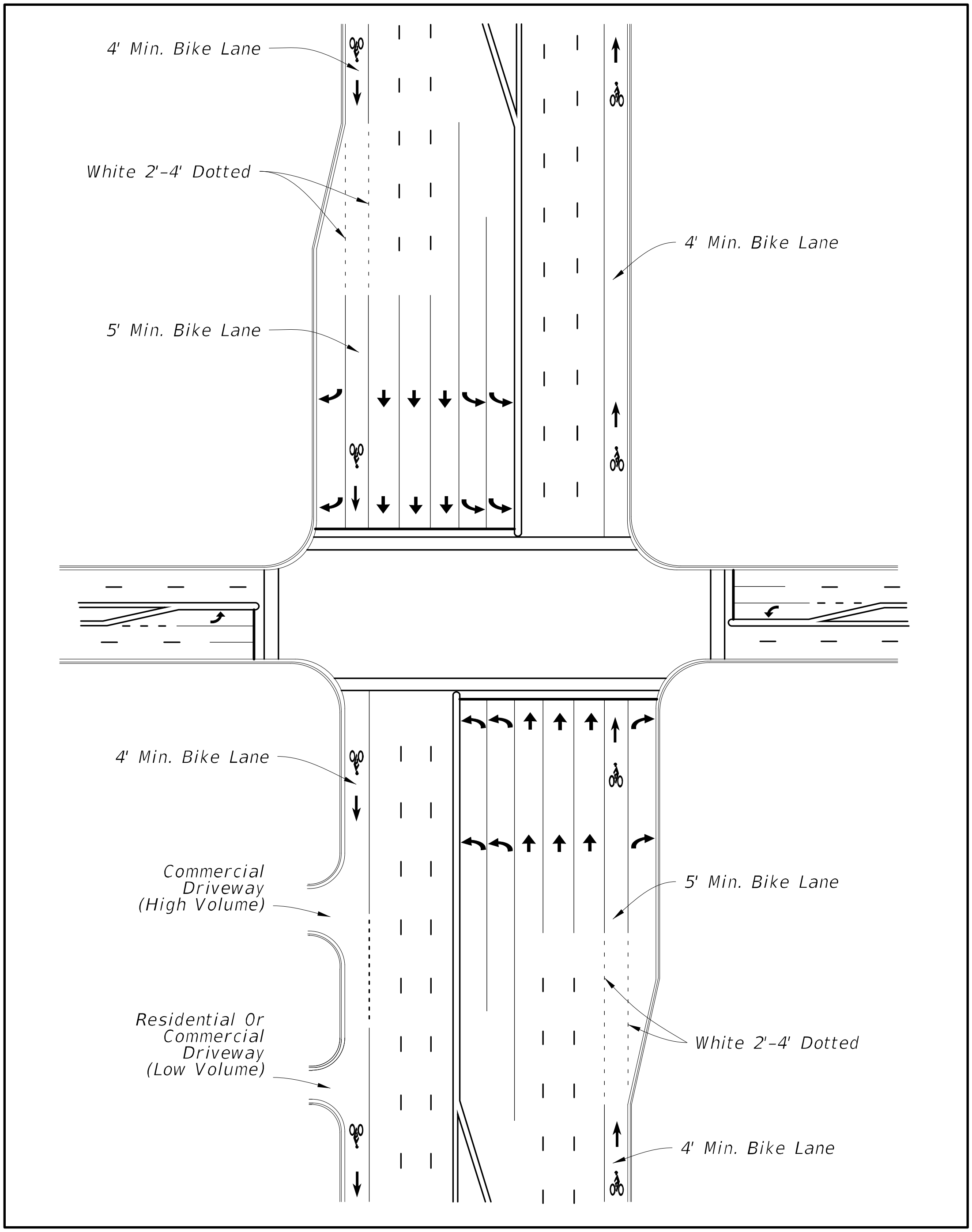


Figure 9 – 8 Bicycle Lanes with On Street Parking, No Right Turn Lane (Curb and Gutter)

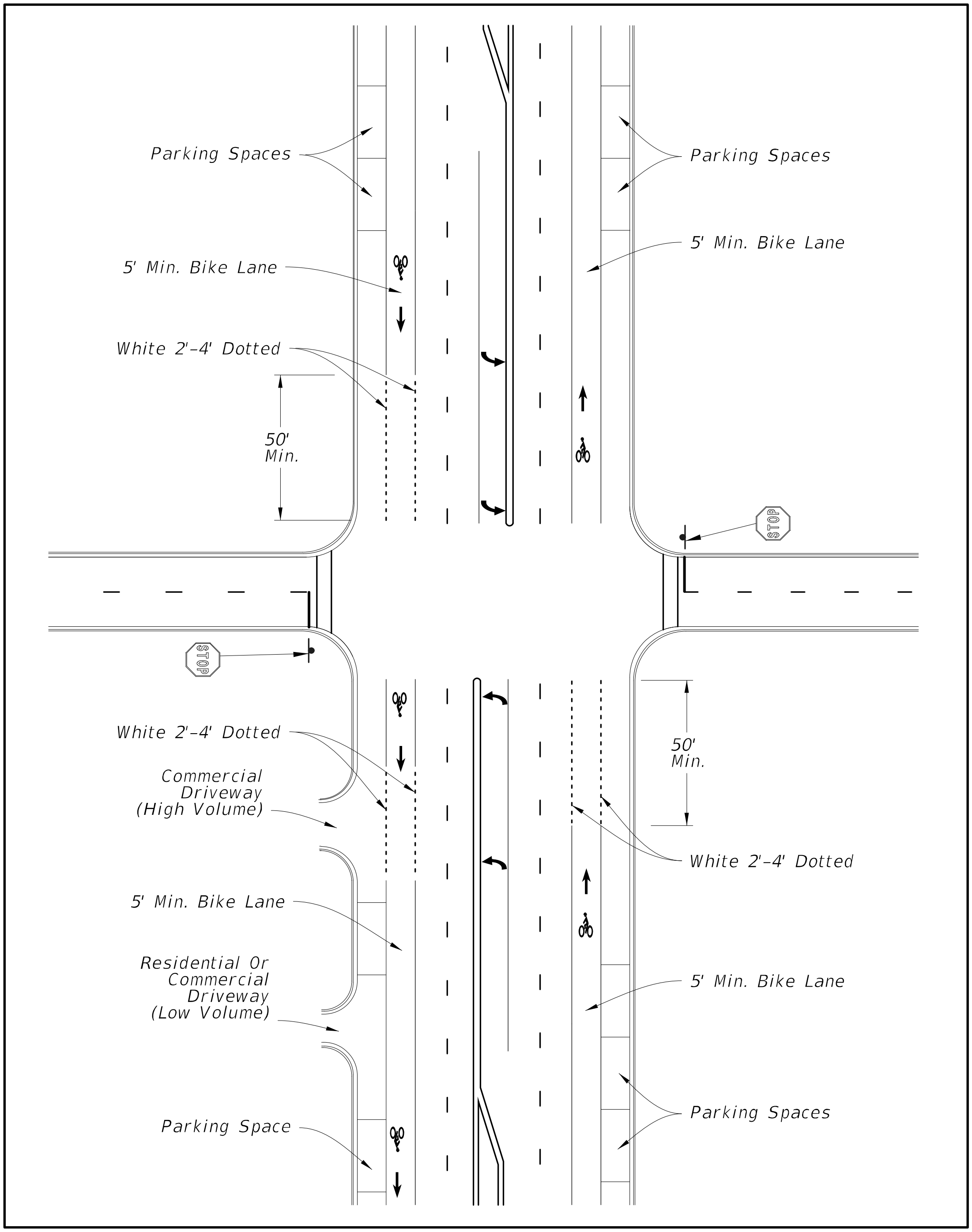


Figure 9 – 9 Bicycle Lane with Right Turn Drop Lane (Curb and Gutter)

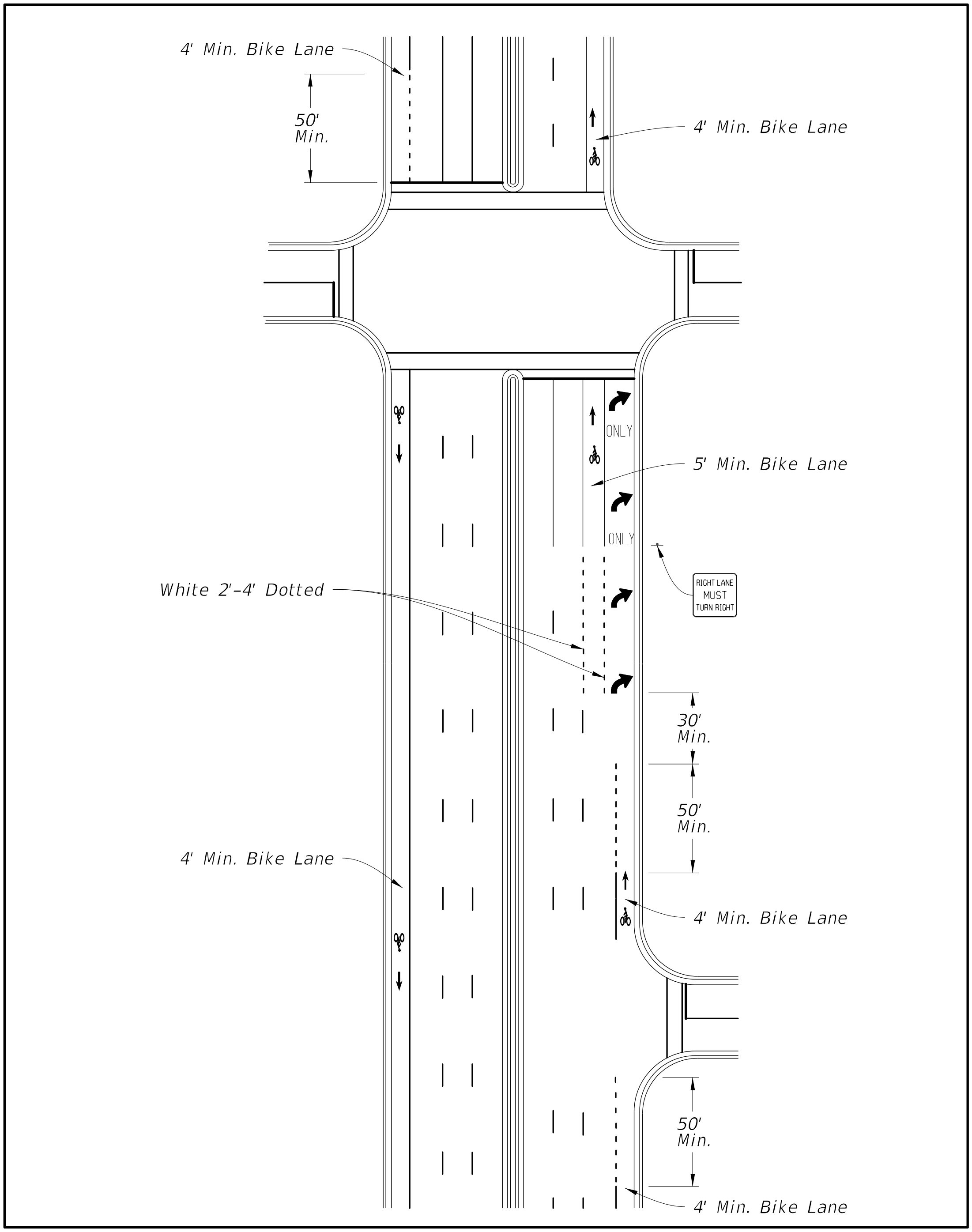


Figure 9 – 10 "Tee" Intersection with Bicycle Lane, Separate Right and Left Turn Lanes (Curb and Gutter)

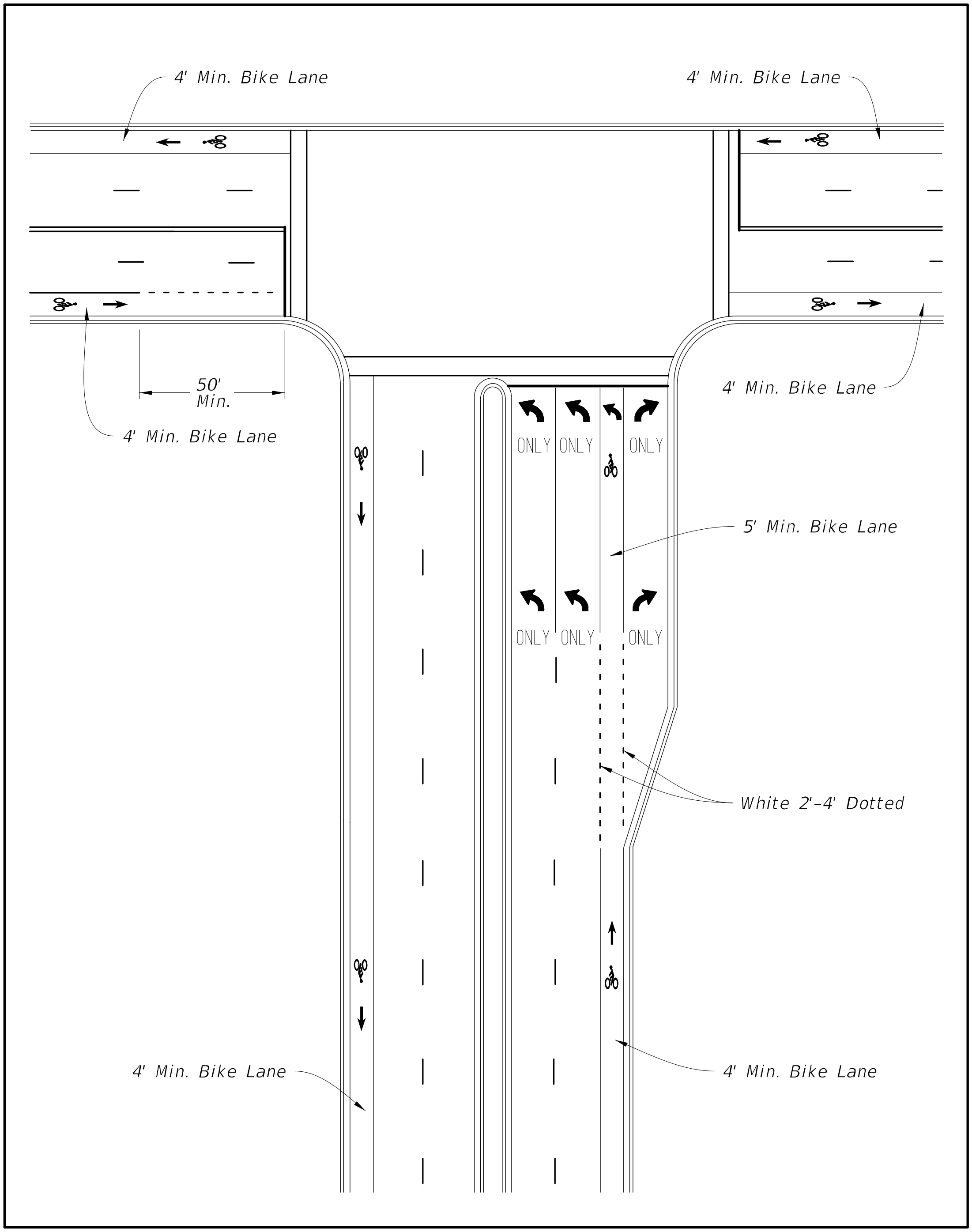


Figure 9 – 11 "Tee" Intersection with Bicycle Lanes, Left Turn Lane and Right Turn Drop Lane (Curb and Gutter)

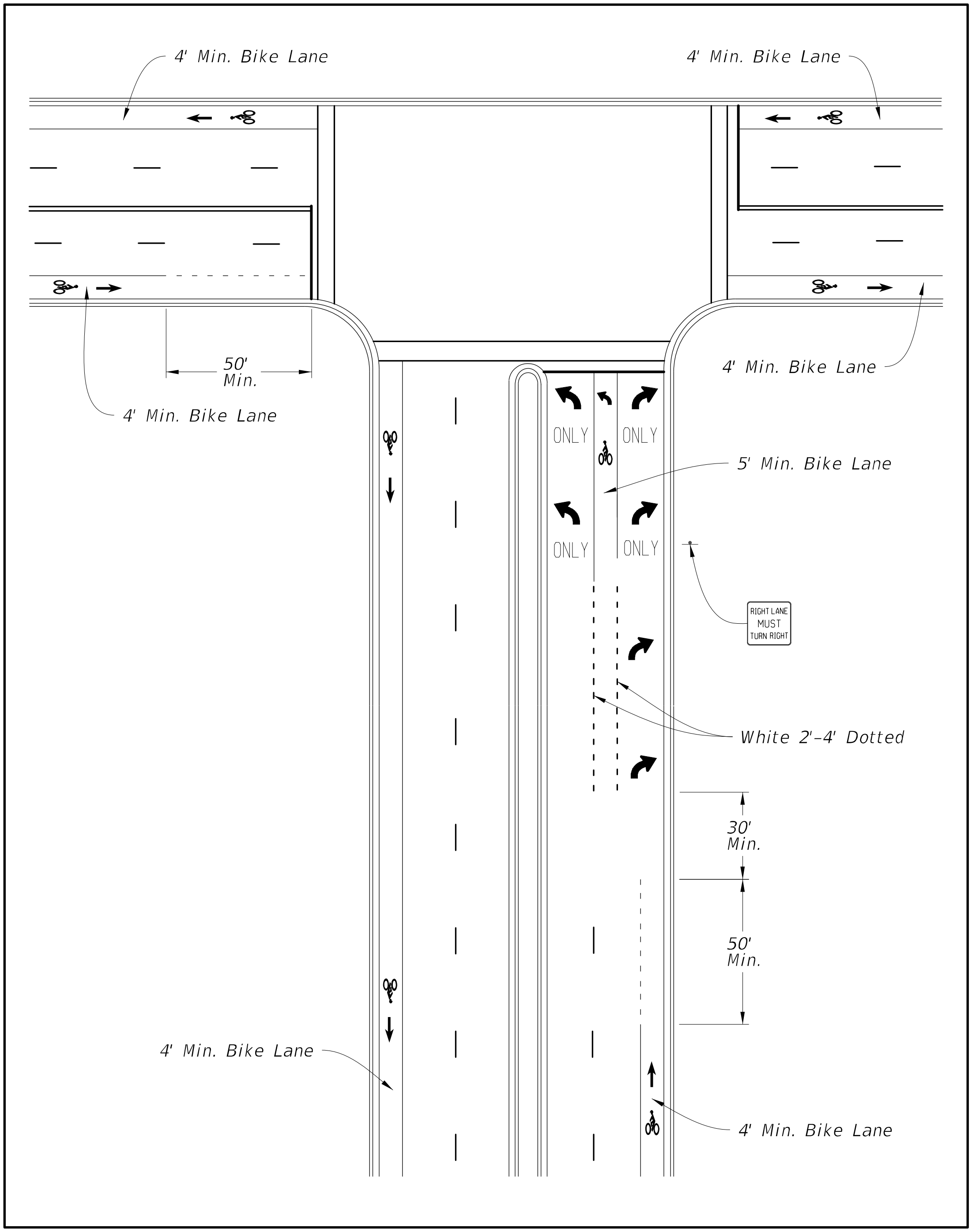


Figure 9 – 12 Bicycle Lanes with No Right Turn Lane (Flush Shoulder)

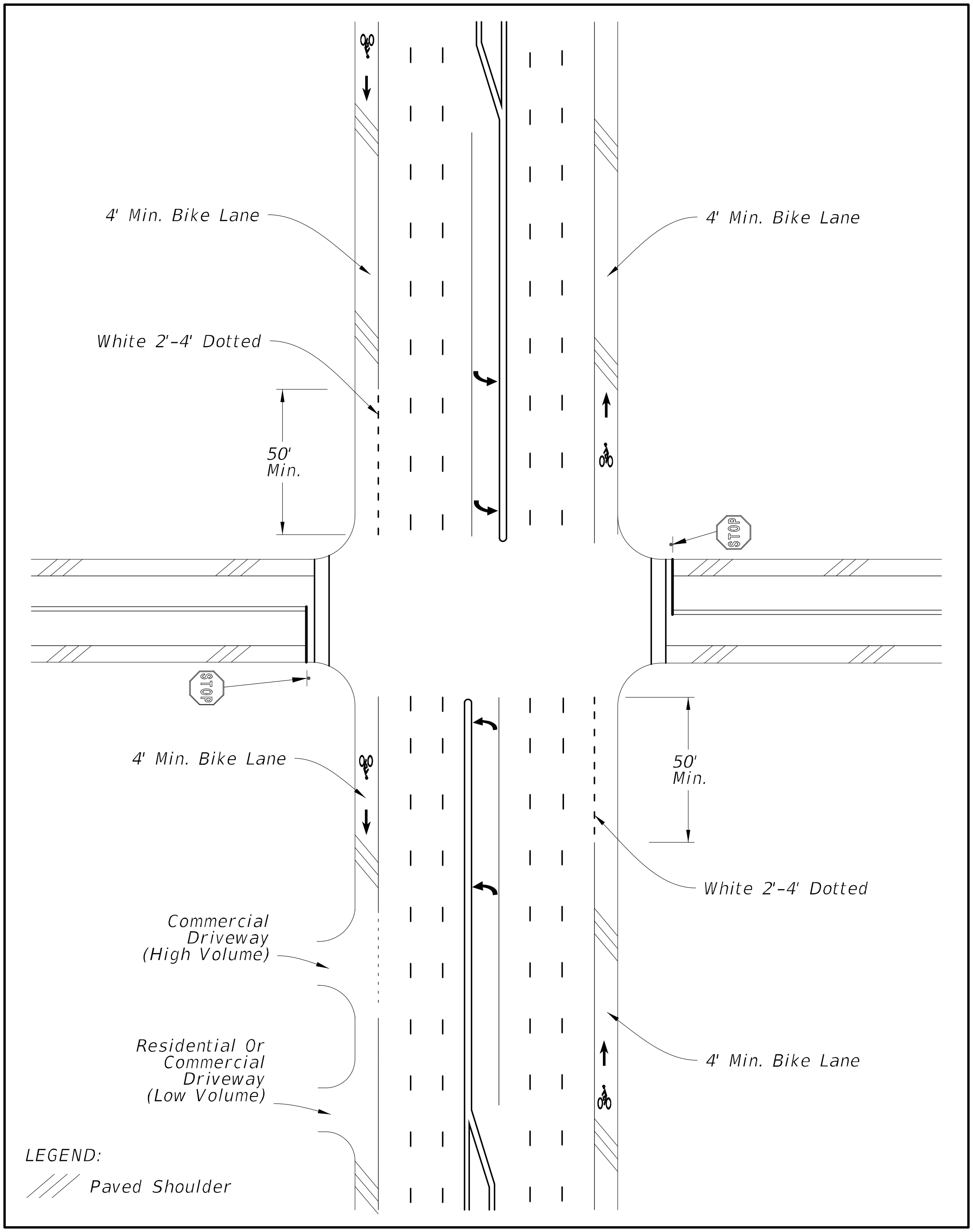


Figure 9 – 13 Bicycle Lane with Separate Right Turn Lane (Flush Shoulder)

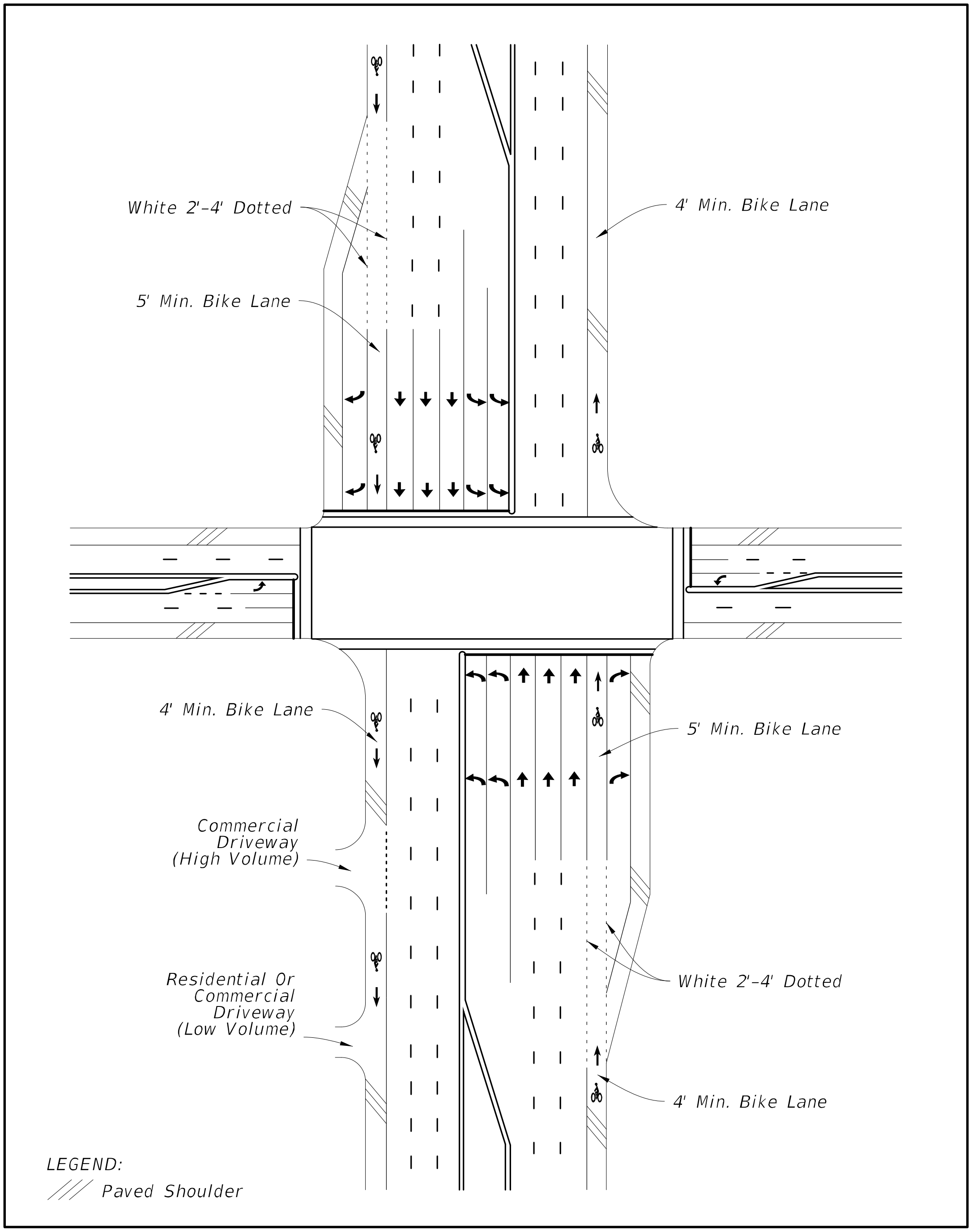


Figure 9 – 14 Bicycle Lanes with Bus Bay, No Right Turn Lane (Curb and Gutter)

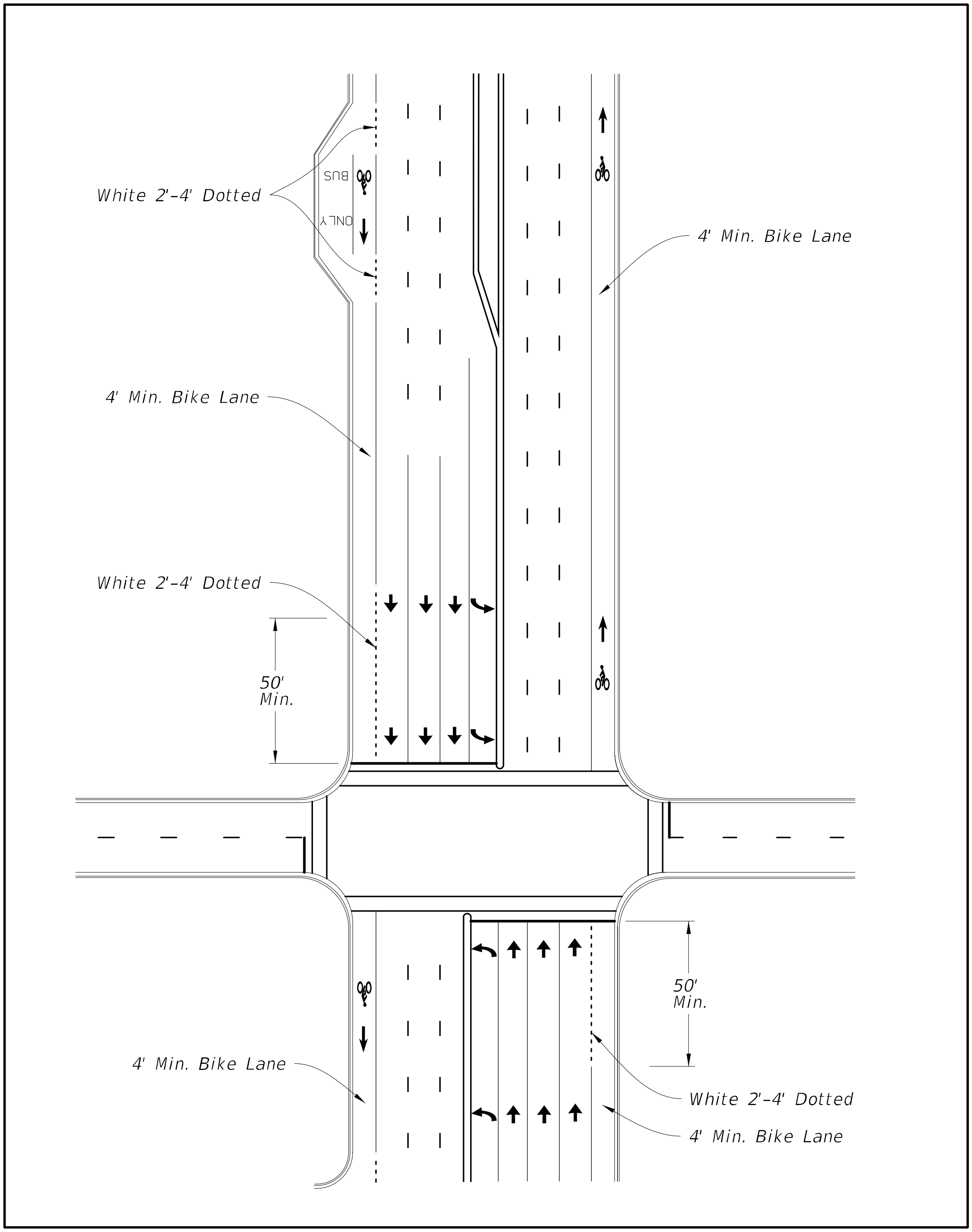
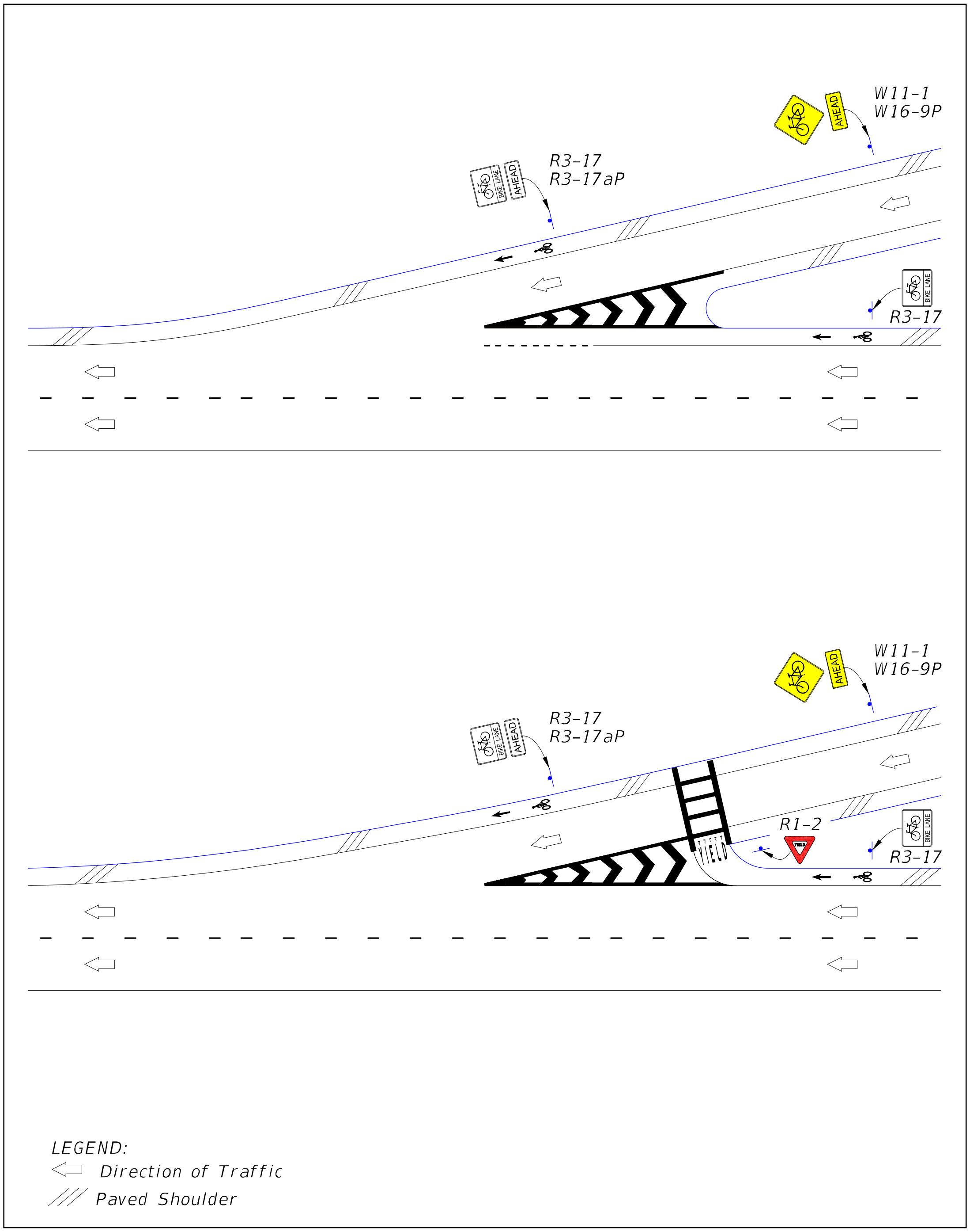


Figure 9 – 15 Bicycle Lanes on Interchange Ramps (Flush Shoulder)



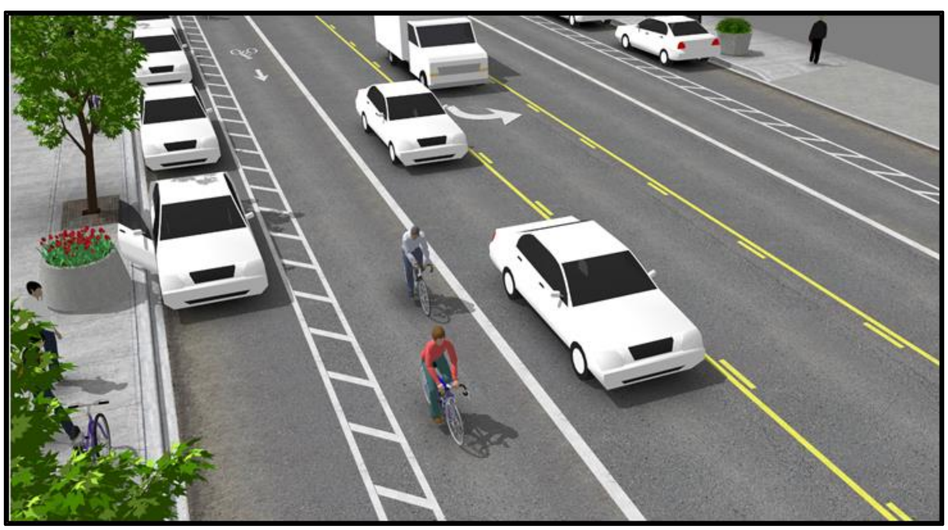
B.2 Buffered Bicycle Lanes

Buffered bicycle lanes are bicycle lanes separated from either the adjacent travel lane or parking lane with a marked buffer area. They provide greater shy distance between motor vehicles and bicyclists and encourage bicyclists to ride outside of the "door zone" of parked cars. Typical applications include streets with high travel speeds, high traffic volumes, high amounts of truck or transit traffic, or where there are underutilized travel lanes or extra pavement width.

The bicycle lane symbol and arrow markings shall be used, along with longitudinal lines to create the buffer. There are several options for marking the buffer area, including a wide solid double line (crossing prohibited), wide solid single line (crossing discouraged) or wide dotted single line (crossing permitted to make right hand turn). Where the buffer space is wider than 4 feet and crossing the buffer is prohibited, chevron markings should be placed in the buffer area.

At an intersection approach, the buffer striping should transition to a wide dotted stripe using a 2/4 skip pattern. The transition should begin 150 feet in advance of an intersection to provide sufficient distance for an automobile or truck to merge into the bicycle lane before turning right. Figures 9 – 16, 17 and 18 provide examples of buffered bicycle lanes. ***Chapter 3D. Markings for Preferential Lanes*** of the ***MUTCD*** provides additional information on the striping of buffered bicycle lanes.

Figure 9 – 16 Buffered Bicycle Lane Adjacent to On-Street Parking



NACTO Urban Bikeway Design Guide, National Association of City Transportation Officials

Figure 9 – 17 Buffered Bicycle Lane Markings

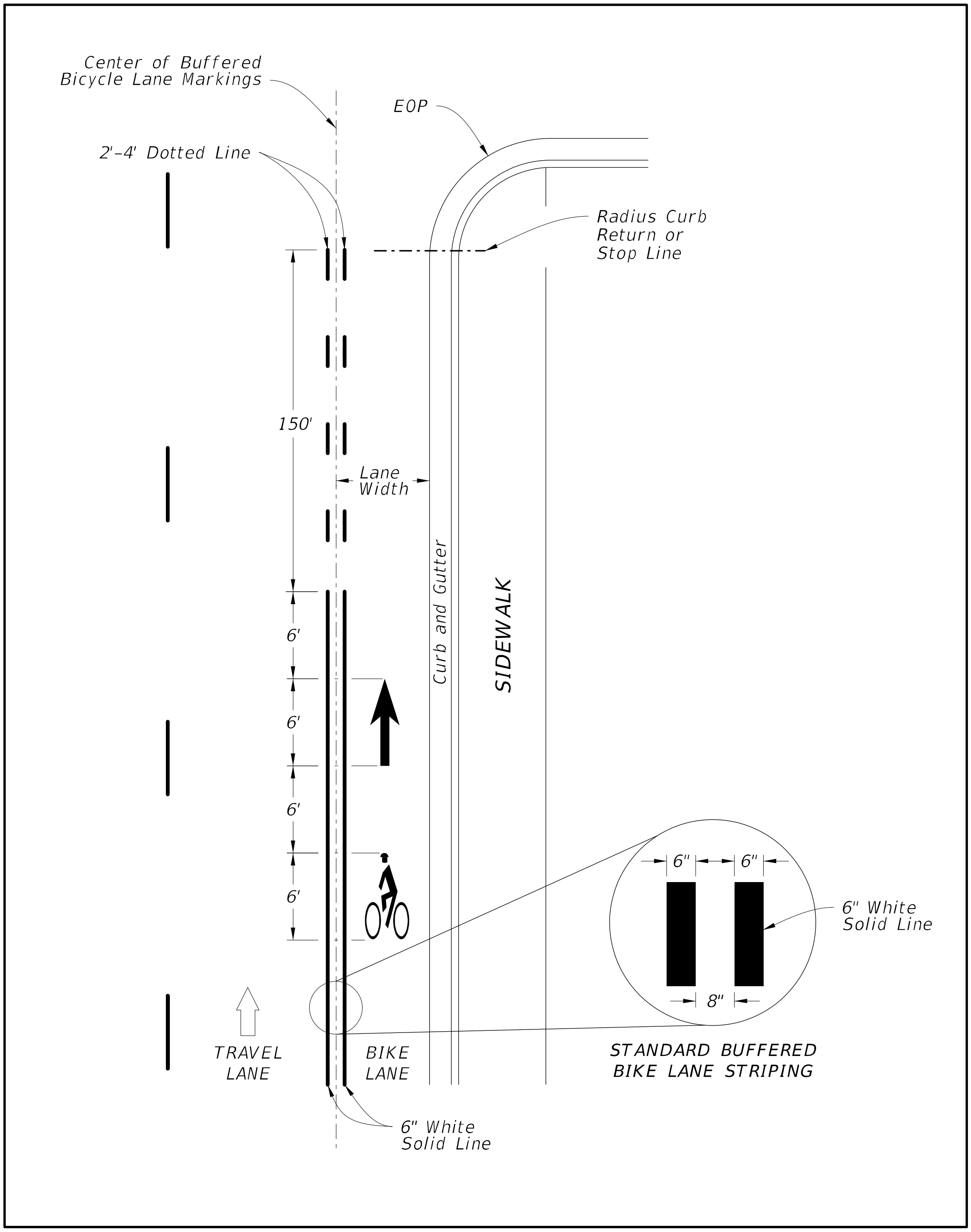
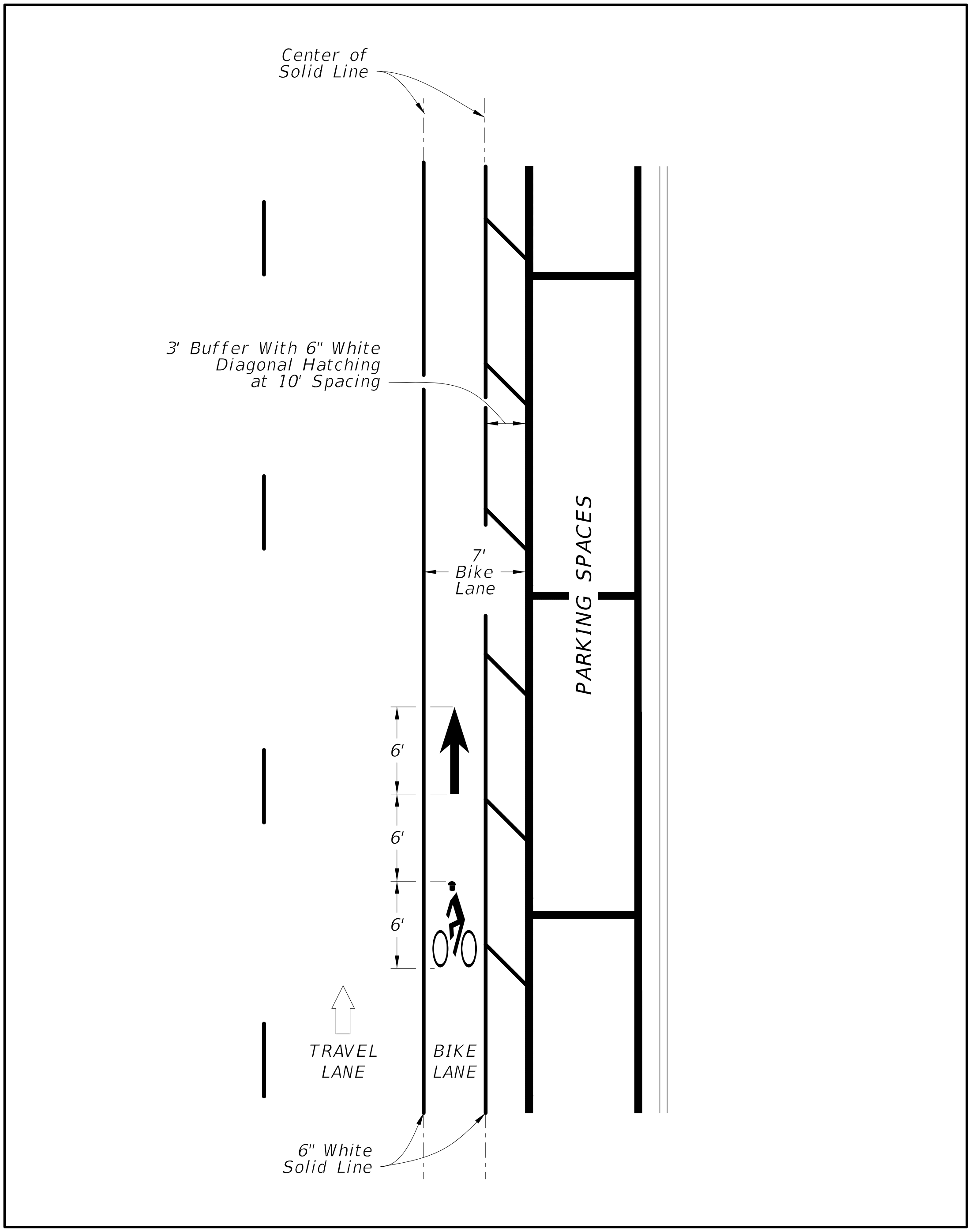


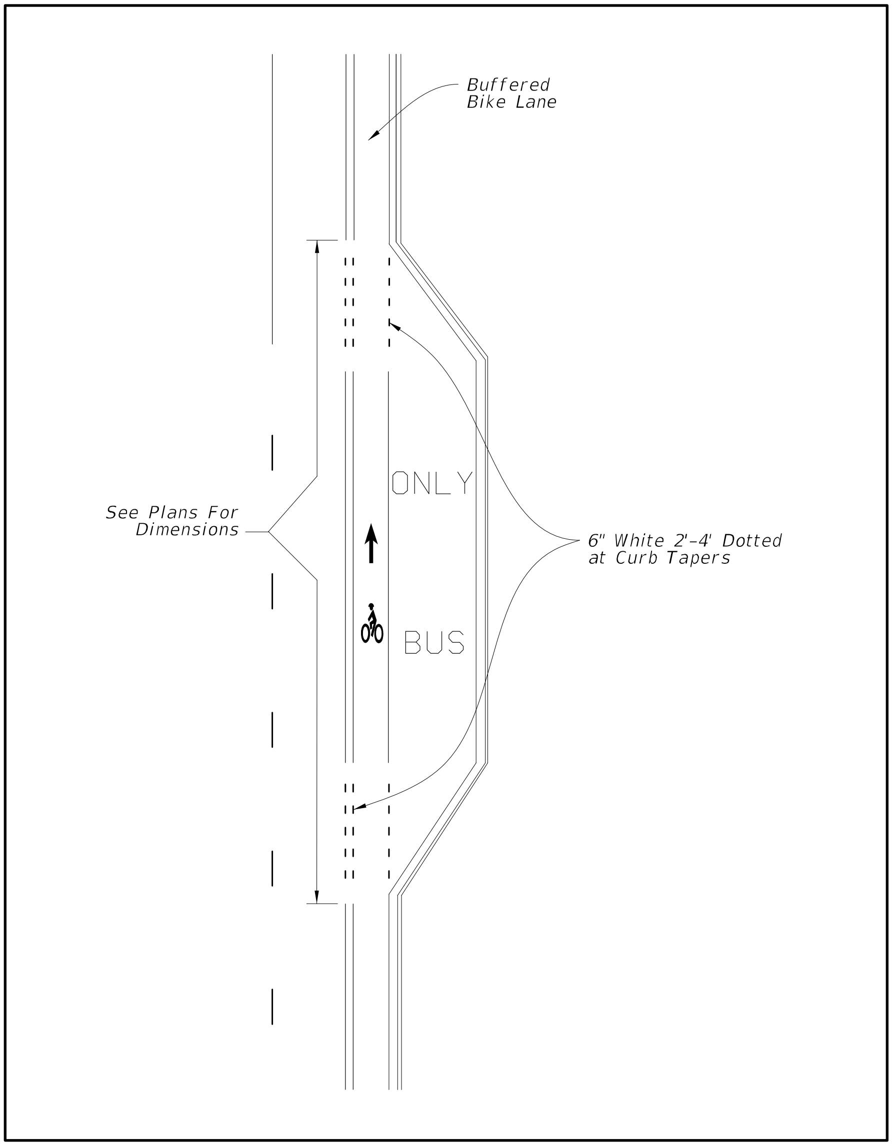
Figure 9 – 18 Buffered Bicycle Lane Markings with On-Street Parking



B.3 Bicycle Lane with Bus Bay

When a bus bay is provided on roadways with bicycle lanes, the bicycle lane shall be continued adjacent to the bus bay. Figure 9 – 19 Buffered Bicycle Lane with Bus Bay Marking provides an example of a buffered bicycle lane with a bus bay.

Figure 9 – 19 Buffered Bicycle Lane with Bus Bay Marking (Curb and Gutter)



B.4 Green Colored Bicycle Lanes

The Federal Highway Administration (FHWA) has issued an Interim Approval for the use of green colored pavement in bicycle lanes and in extensions of bicycle lanes through intersections and other traffic conflict areas. Colored pavements shall not replace or be used in lieu of required markings for bike lanes as defined in the ***MUTCD***, but shall only supplement such markings. Traffic conflict areas include where the:

- bicycle lane crosses a right turn lane,
- traffic in a right turn lane crosses a bike lane, or
- bicycle lane is adjacent to a dedicated bus bay.

The Interim Approval may be found at the following website and provides further information on how to submit a written request to use green colored pavement:

http://mutcd.fhwa.dot.gov/res-interim_approvals.htm

The effectiveness of green colored pavement may be maximized if the treatment is used only where the path of bicyclists and other road users cross and yielding must occur. Because colored pavements are addressed in the 2009 MUTCD, they are by definition a traffic control device whose need should be demonstrated before they are used. A need for this treatment can be demonstrated by either of the following:

1. A history of 3 or more motor vehicle-bicycle crashes exists at or adjacent to the traffic conflict area over the most recent three-year period, or
2. A government agency has observed and documented conflicts (failure of the motor vehicle to yield to the bicyclist) between cyclists and motor vehicles at an average rate of two per peak hour. The documentation for conflicts shall include observations from a minimum of two separate data collection periods, conducted on different days in a one month period, and include at least one weekday and one weekend count period during peak bicycle travel times. Each period should be at least 2 hours in duration. Peak times vary by region and surrounding land use, but are typically:

    - Weekday, 11:00 AM to 1:00 PM
    - Weekday, 5:00 PM to 7:00 PM
    - Saturday, 8:00 AM to 2:00 PM

When used in conjunction with white skip lines, such as when extending a bike lane across a right turn lane or access to a bus bay, the transverse colored marking shall match the 2’-4’ white skip line pattern of the bike lane extension. The green colored pavement should begin as a solid pattern 50 feet in advance of the skip striping, match the 2’ 4’ skip through the conflict area, and then resume the solid color for 50’ after the conflict area, unless such an extent is interrupted by a stop bar or an intersection curb radius. Details of each installation and associated pavement markings shall be shown in the plans. Figures 9 – 20, 21, 22 and 23 illustrate how the green portion of the bicycle lane may be marked.

Materials permitted to color the bike lane green shall be non-reflective and fall within the color parameters defined by FHWA in their interim approval. Materials which have been tested to meet these requirements can be found in ***FDOT’s Approved Product List for Specification 523, Patterned Pavement.***

Figure 9 – 20 Green Bicycle Lane with Separate Right Turn Lane

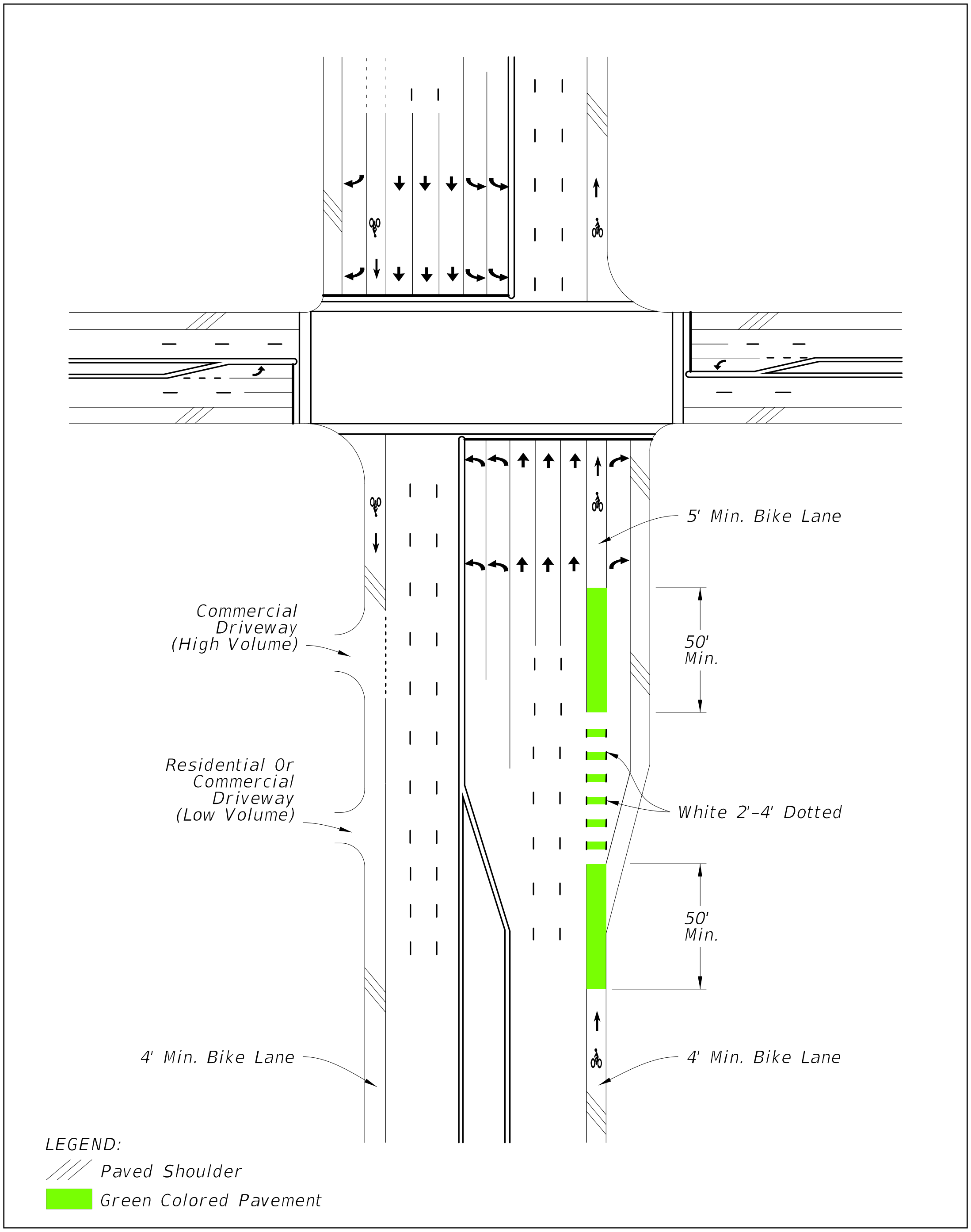


Figure 9 – 21 Green Bicycle Lane with Right Turn Drop Lane

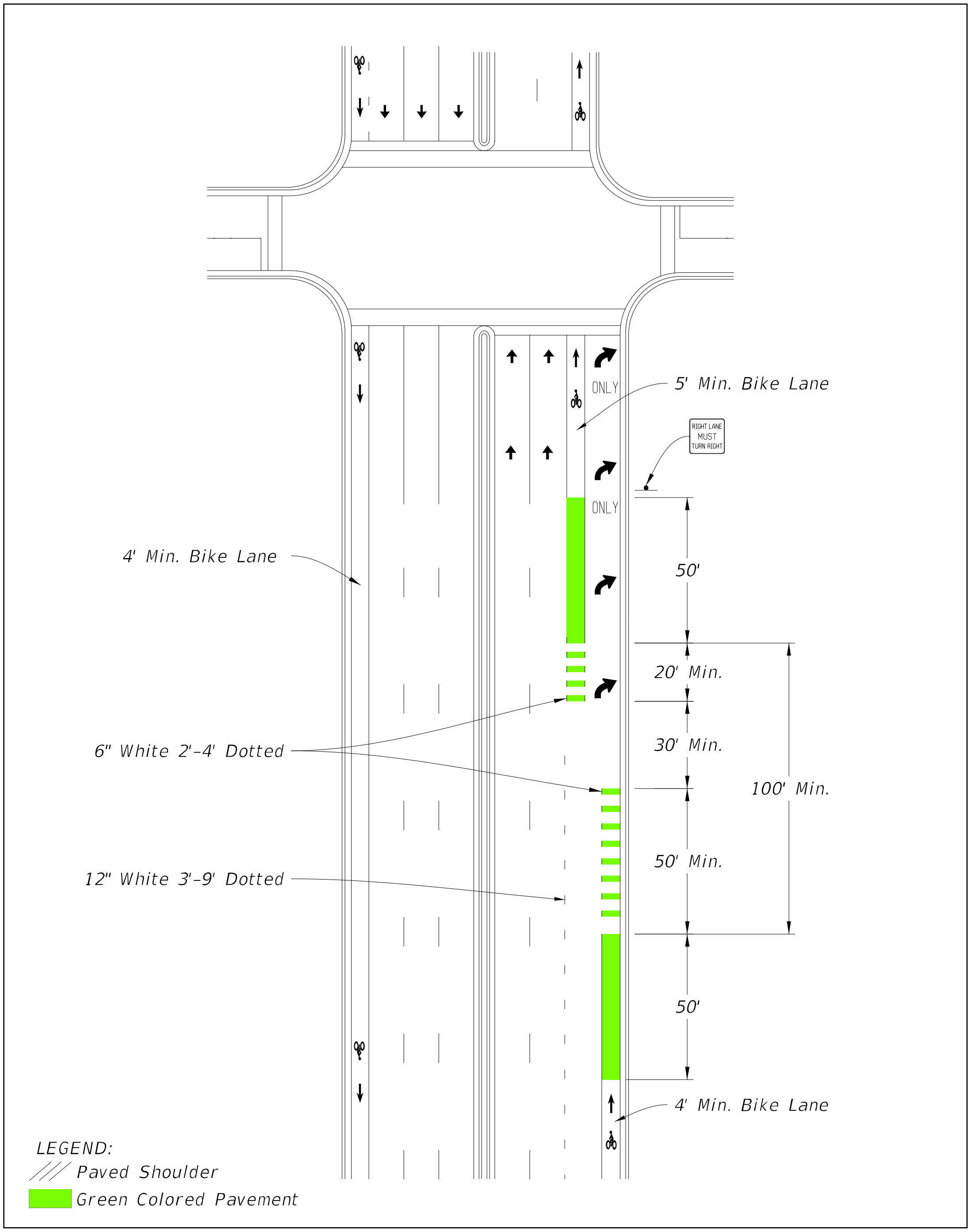


Figure 9 – 22 Green Bicycle Lane with Channelized Right Turn Lane

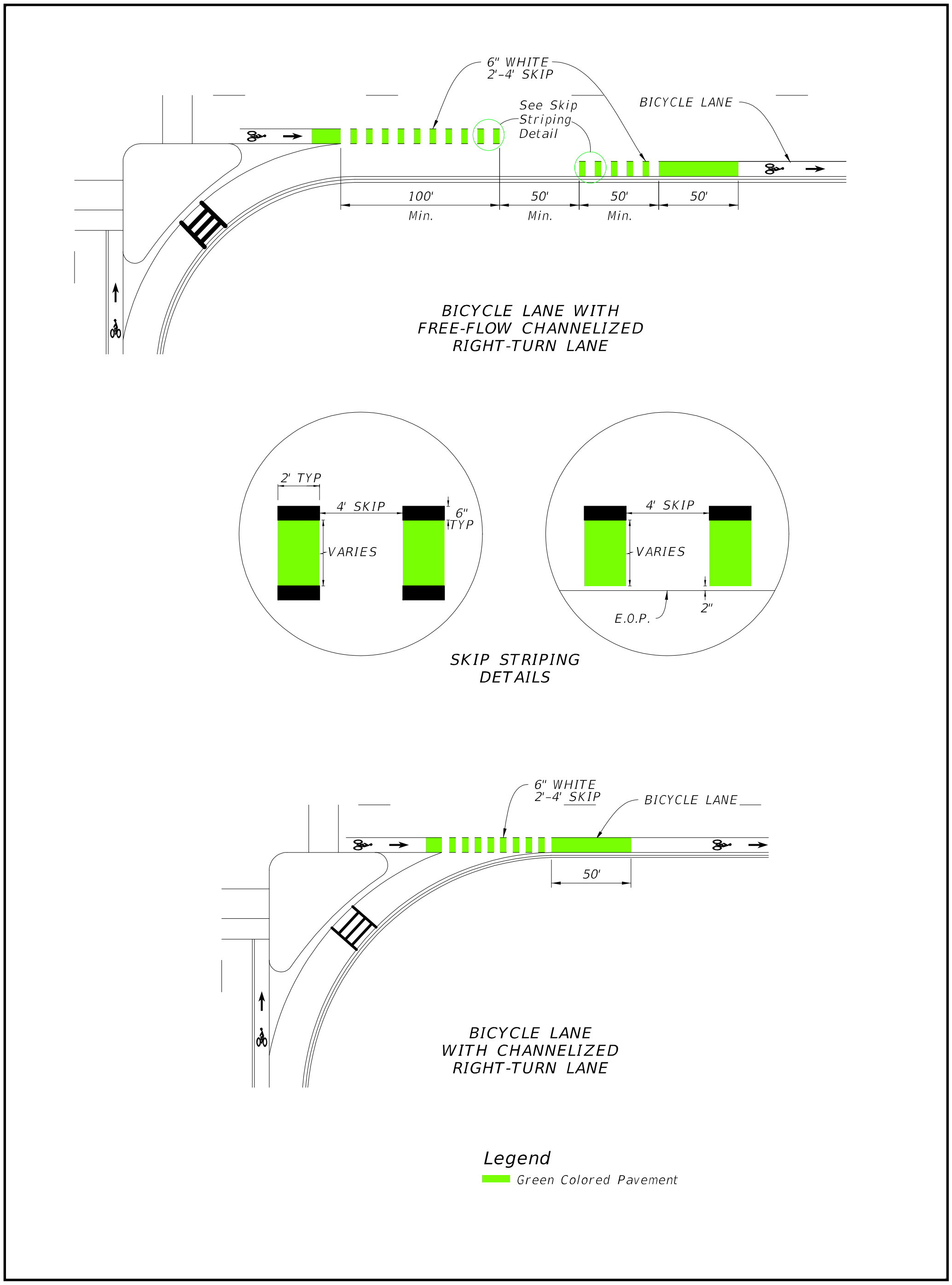
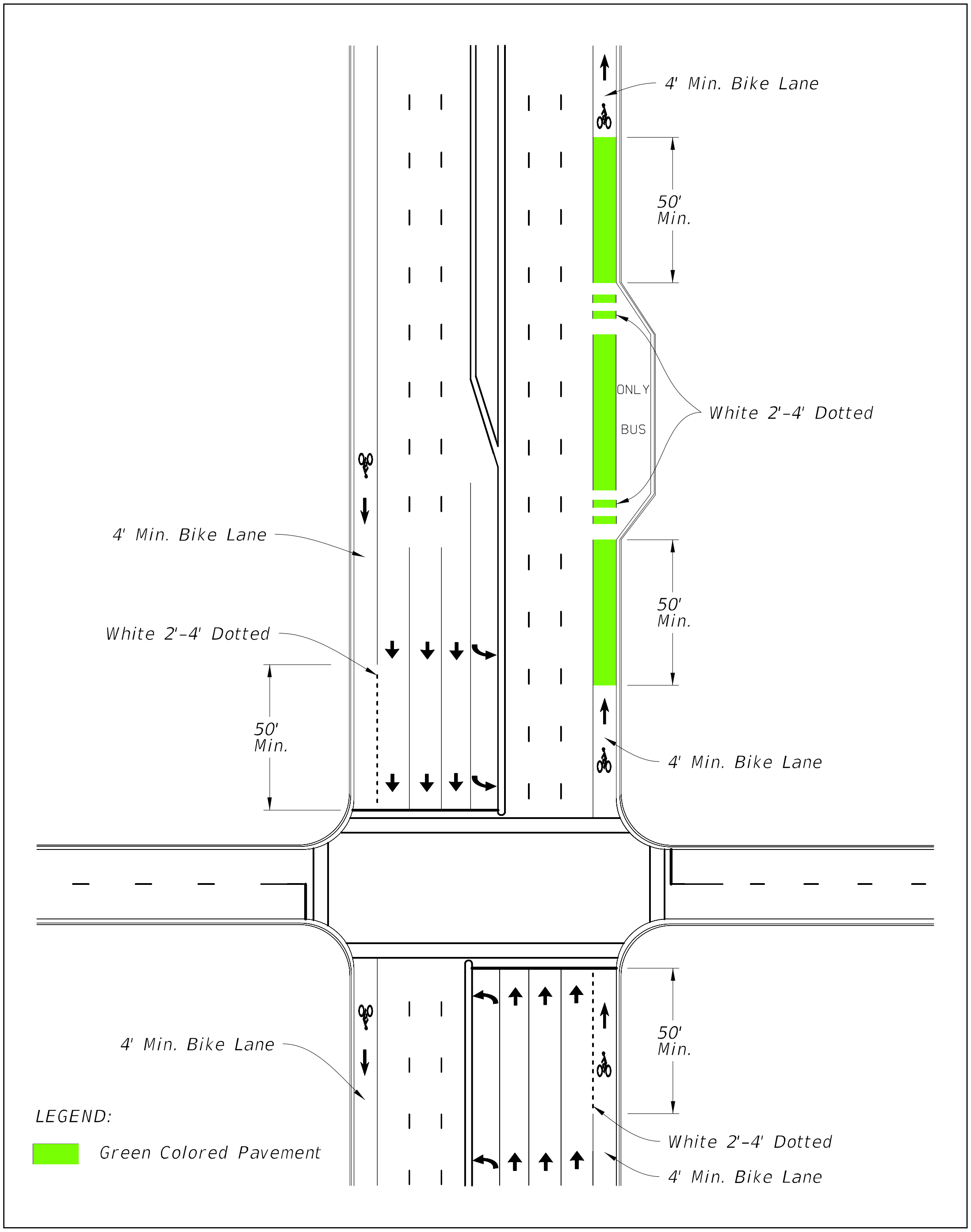


Figure 9 – 23 Green Bicycle Lane with Bus Bay



B.5 Paved Shoulders

A paved shoulder is a portion of the roadway which has been delineated by edge line striping. Adding, widening or improving paved shoulders often can be an acceptable way to accommodate bicyclists. However, when a shoulder is intended to serve as a bicycle facility and is adjacent to a curb, guardrail or other roadside barrier, a minimum 5-foot clear width between the traveled way and the face of the barrier is required. Additional shoulder width is desirable if the posted speed exceed 50 mph, or the percentage of trucks, buses, or recreational vehicles is high (>10%).

Ground-in rumble strips should not be included in paved shoulders if a minimum clear width of 4 feet outside of the rumble strip cannot be provided.

B.6 Wide Outside Lanes

Wide outside lanes on curbed roadways are through lanes that provide a minimum of 14 feet in width, which allows most motor vehicles to pass cyclists safely within the travel lane. Bicycle lanes are preferred for arterial and collector roadways, however, in some conditions, such as resurfacing projects, wide outside lanes may be the only practical option for a bicycle facility.

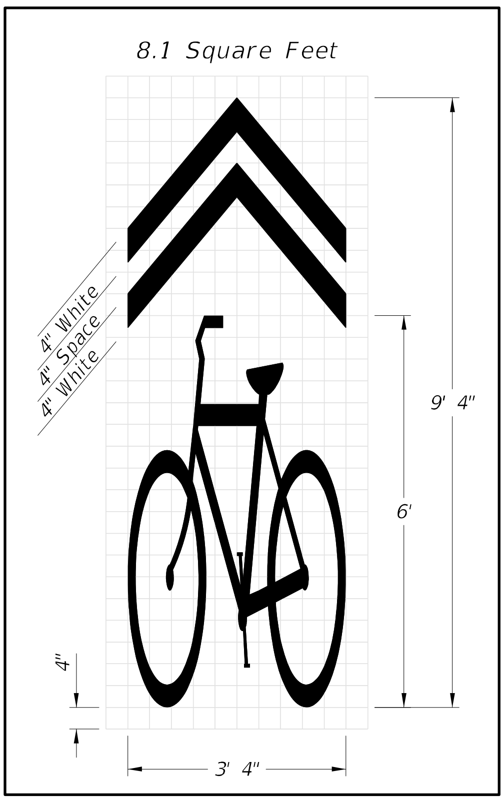
B.7 Shared Lane Markings

The shared lane marking is an optional pavement marking for roadways where bicyclists and motor vehicles are intended to share the lane and no bicycle lane or paved shoulder exists or is feasible. Shared lane markings should be limited to roadways with a posted speed of 35 mph or less. They are not intended to be placed on every roadway without bicycle facilities or on shared use paths.

Shared lane markings provide guidance to cyclists on their lateral positioning, especially on roadways with on-street parking or lanes that are too narrow to share side by side with a motor vehicle. They also help to discourage wrong way riding and encourage safer passing of bicyclists by motorists. Shared lane markings may be used to identify an alternate route as part of an approved temporary traffic control plan. Figure 9 – 24 provides the dimensions for shared lane markings.

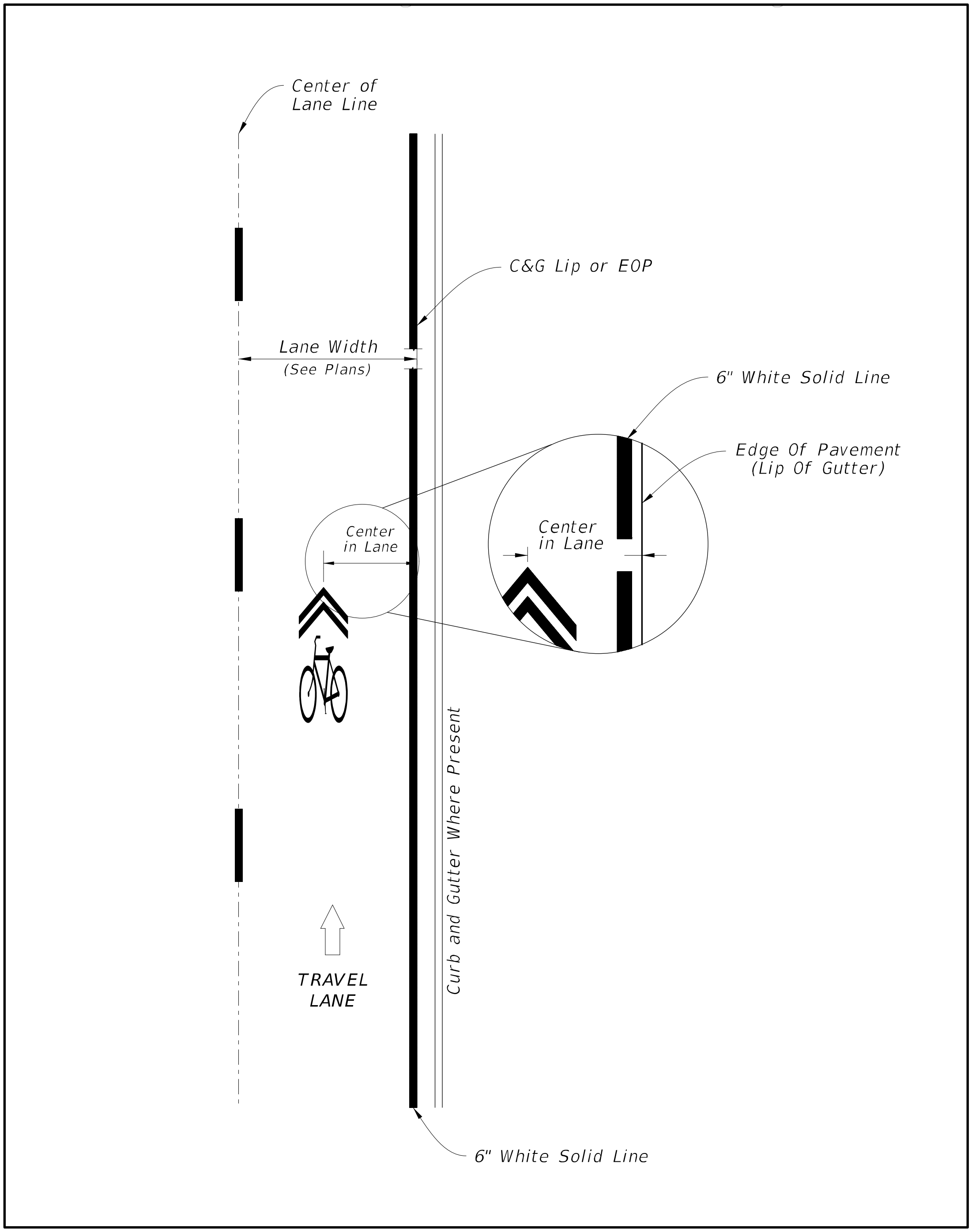
Shared lane markings should be placed as follows:

Figure 9 – 24 Shared Lane Marking



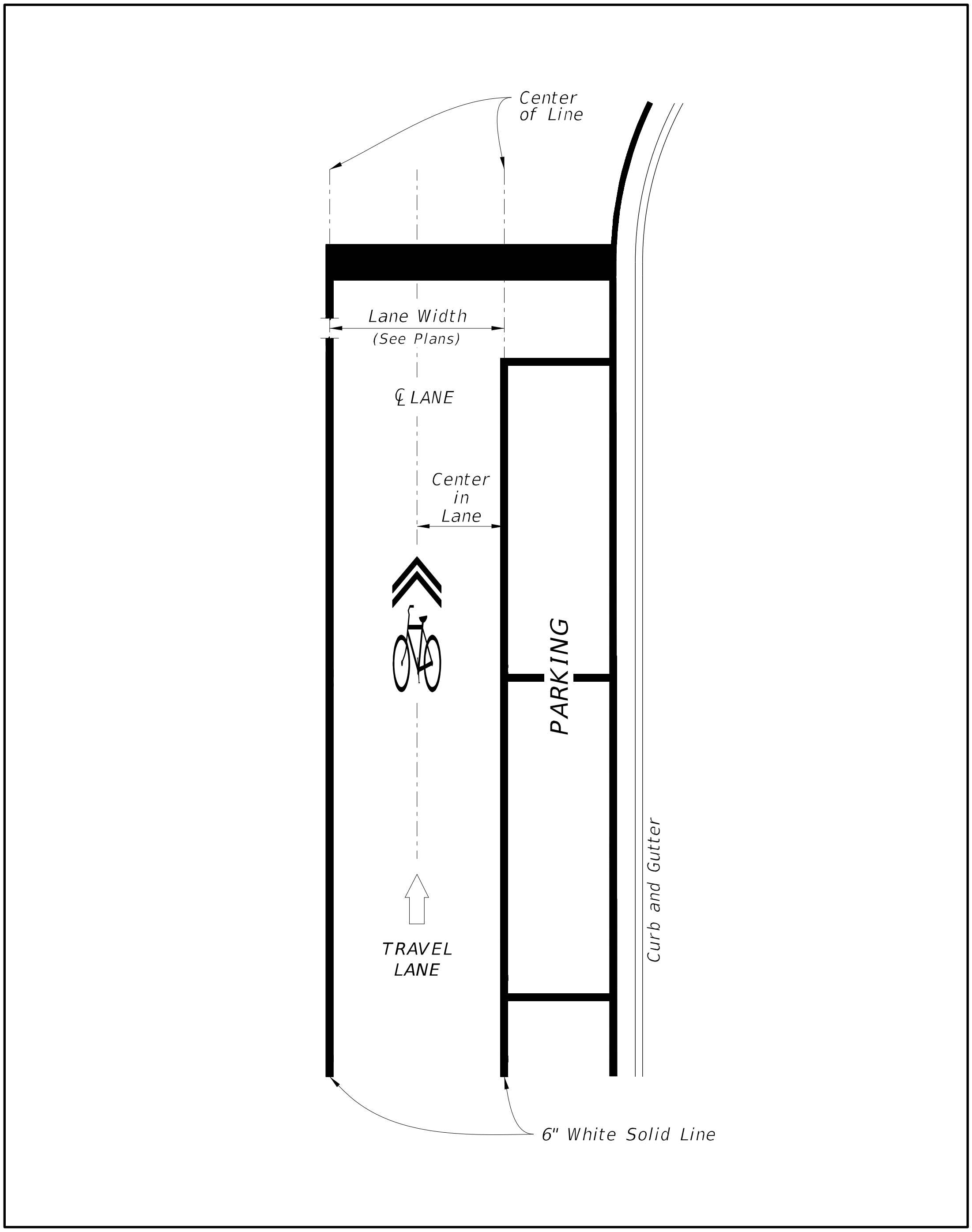
- If used on a roadway without on-street parking that has an outside travel lane that is 14 feet wide or less, the Shared Lane Markings should be centered in the travel lane (Figure 9 – 25).
- If used on a roadway with on-street parking, the Shared Lane Markings should be centered in the travel lane (Figure 9 – 26).
- Shared Lane Markings should be placed immediately after an intersection and spaced at intervals not greater than 250 feet thereafter.

Figure 9 – 25 Shared Lane Marking Placement
(No Designated Parking, Lane Width ≤ 14 Feet)



Draft

Figure 9 – 26 Shared Lane Marking Placement (With On-Street Parking)



B.8 Bicycles May Use Full Lane Sign

The Bicycle May Use Full Lane sign (R4-11) may be used on roadways where no bicycle lanes or adjacent shoulders useable by bicyclists are present and where travel lanes are less than 14' wide. The ***MUTCD*** provides additional information on the use of the sign.

C SHARED USE PATHS

Shared use paths are paved facilities physically separated from motorized vehicular traffic by an open space or barrier and either within the highway right of way or an independent right of way, with minimal cross flow by motor vehicles. They are used by bicyclists, pedestrians, runners, skaters, and in some cases equestrians. The bicycle's operating characteristics will govern the design of shared use paths. The ***2006 Americans with Disabilities Act – Standards for Transportation Facilities*** and the ***2012 Florida Accessibility Code*** impose additional requirements for the design and construction of shared use paths since they serve as pedestrian facilities.

Shared use paths serve a variety of purposes. They can provide a school age child, a recreational cyclist, or a person with a disability an alternative to busy roadways. Shared use paths can be located along former rail corridors, the banks of rivers or canals, and through parks and forests. Shared use paths can also provide access to areas otherwise served only by limited access highways. For transportation purposes, they should be thought of as an extension of the roadway network for non-motorized users. The inclusion of a shared use path should not be considered as an alternative to providing on-street facilities, but, rather, as a supplement.

For additional information on shared use path design, refer to the ***AASHTO Guide for the Development of Bicycle Facilities (2012, 4th Edition).***

C.1 Width and Clearance

The useable width and horizontal clearance for a shared use path are primary design considerations. The minimum paved width for a two-way path is 10 feet. Typically, widths range from 10 to 14 feet, with the wider values applicable to areas with high use or a wider variety of users, on steep grades, through curves, or used by larger maintenance vehicles.

In very rare circumstances, a reduced width of 8 feet may be used where the following conditions prevail:

- Bicycle traffic is expected to be low, even on peak days or during peak hours.
- Pedestrian use of the facility is not expected to be more than occasional.
- Horizontal and vertical alignments provide frequent, well-designed passing and resting opportunities.

- The path will not be regularly subjected to maintenance vehicle loading conditions that would cause pavement edge damage.

In addition, a path width of 8 feet may be used for a short distance due to a physical constraint such as an environmental feature, bridge abutment, utility structure, or fence.

A minimum 2 foot wide graded area with a maximum 1:6 slope should be maintained adjacent to both sides of the path; however, 3 feet or more is desirable to provide clearance from trees, poles, walls, fences, guardrails or other lateral obstructions. See Chapter 8, Section D Barrier Separation and Chapter 4, Figure 4 –8 Location of Guardrail for information on when and how longitudinal barriers should be utilized,

Where the path is adjacent to canals, ditches, or slopes steeper than 1:3, a wider separation should be considered. A minimum 5 foot separation from the edge of the path pavement to the top of the slope is desirable. Depending on the height of embankment and condition at the bottom, a physical barrier, such as a railing or chain link fence may need to be provided.

Where a recovery area is less than 5 feet, physical barriers or rails are recommended in the following situations:

- Slopes 1:3 or steeper, with a drop of 6 feet or greater;
- Slopes 1:3 or steeper, adjacent to a parallel body of water or other substantial obstacle
- Slopes 1:2 or steeper, with a drop of 4 feet or greater; and
- Slopes 1:1 or steeper, with a drop of 1 foot or greater.

The ***AASHTO Guide for the Development of Bicycle Facilities (2012, 4th Edition)*** provides additional information on the design of barriers or railings.

The desirable vertical clearance to obstructions is 10 feet. Fixed objects should not be permitted to protrude within the vertical or horizontal clearance of a shared use path. The recommended minimum vertical clearance that can be used in constrained areas is 8 feet. In some situations, vertical clearance greater than 10 feet may be needed to permit passage of maintenance and emergency vehicles.

C.2 Separation Between Shared Use Paths and Roadways

When shared use paths are located adjacent to a roadway, a separation shall be provided. This demonstrates to both path users and motorists that the shared use path is a separate facility.

The minimum distance between a path and the face of curb or edge of traveled way (where there is no curb) should be 5 feet. On roadways with flush shoulders, this separation is measured from the outside edge of the shoulder to the inside edge of the path. Where the separation is less than 5 feet, a physical barrier or railing should be provided between the path and the roadway.

A barrier or railing between the path and adjacent highway should not impair sight distance at intersections, and should be designed to limit the potential for injury to errant motorists or bicyclists. The barrier or railing need not be of size and strength to redirect errant motorists toward the roadway, unless other conditions indicate the need for a crashworthy barrier.

Barriers or railings at the outside of a structure or steep fill embankment that not only define the edge of the path but also prevent bicyclists from falling over the rail to a substantially lower elevation should be a minimum of 42” high. Barriers at other locations that serve only to separate the area for motor vehicles from the path should generally have a minimum height equivalent to the height of a standard guard rail.

When a path is placed along a high-speed highway, a separation greater than 5 feet is desirable.

C.3 Design Speed

For paths in relatively flat areas (grades less than or equal to 4%), a design speed of 18 mph shall be used. When a sustained downgrade greater than 4% exists, refer to the ***AASHTO Guide for the Development of Bicycle Facilities (2012, 4th Edition)*** for further guidance,

C.4 Horizontal Alignment

The typical adult bicyclist is the design user for horizontal alignment. Please refer to the ***AASHTO Guide for the Development of Bicycle Facilities (2012, 4th Edition)*** for further information on determining the minimum radius of curves on shared use paths.

Shared use paths should be transitioned as necessary towards the roadway at intersections to provide a more functional crossing location that also meets driver expectation.

C.5 Accessibility

Since nearly all shared use paths are intended to be used by pedestrians, they fall under the accessibility requirements of the Americans with Disabilities Act.

Pull boxes, manholes (and other utility covers), and other types of existing surface features in the location of a proposed curb ramp or detectable warning should be relocated when feasible. When relocation is not feasible, the feature shall be adjusted to meet the ADA requirements for surfaces (including the provision of a nonslip top surface, and adjustment to be flush with and at the same slope as the adjacent surface).

The detectable warning systems are designed to work with concrete surfaces. In areas where the path has an asphalt surface, the engineer must specify an appropriate detectable warning system. In these cases, consider including a short section of concrete that will accommodate any system.

If curb ramps are included in the path design, they should be parallel to and the full width of the approaching path width. Shared use path crossings shall meet the same grade and cross slope requirements as sidewalks where the grade should not exceed 5%, and the maximum cross slope shall be no more than 2%.

Project design shall include an evaluation of existing driveways to determine if it is feasible to upgrade nonconforming driveway turnouts to meet maximum cross slope criteria. Nonconforming driveways are not required to be upgraded if it is not feasible within the scope of the project.

Chapter 8 – Pedestrian Facilities provides additional information regarding accessible design of shared use paths.

C.6 Structures

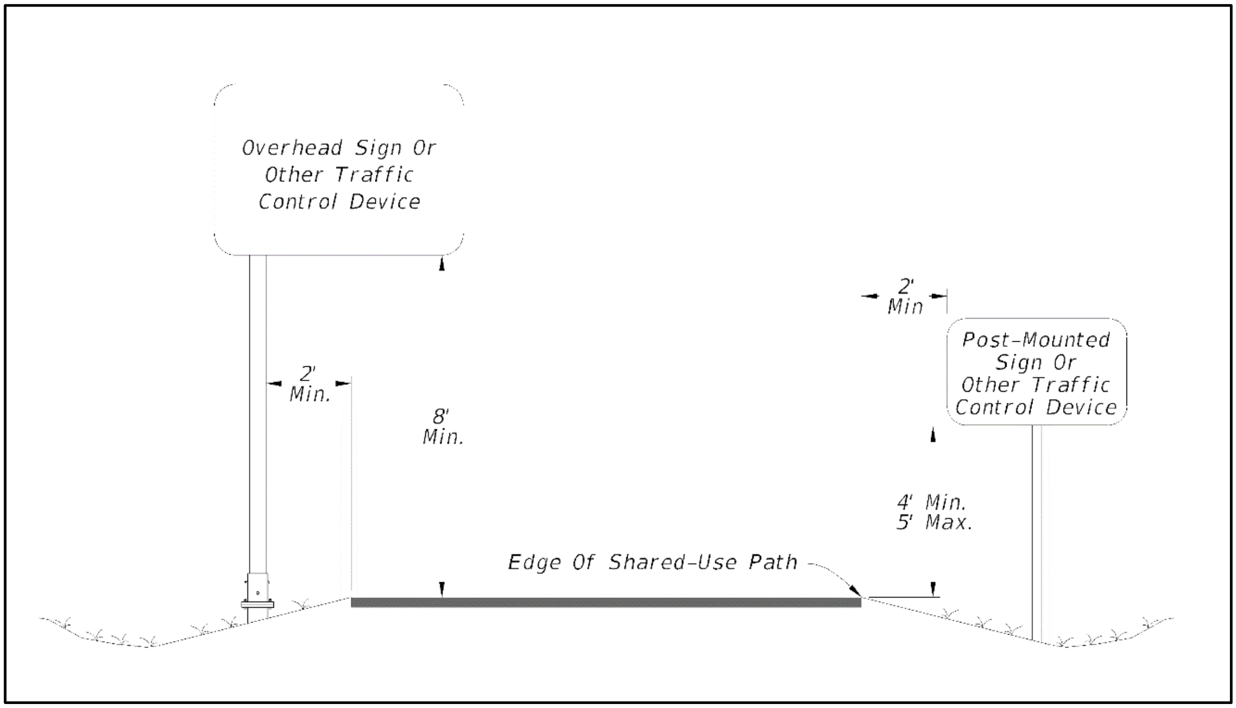
The minimum clear width on structures should be the same as the approach shared use path, plus the minimum 2 foot wide clear areas. Access by emergency, patrol and maintenance vehicles should be considered in establishing the design clearances of structures on shared use paths. Where practical, a path vertical clearance of 10 feet (on the structure) is desirable for adequate vertical shy distance.

Ramps on new structures that are part of a shared use path and serve as the accessible route shall have a running slope not steeper than 1:12 and cross slope not steeper than 1:48. Landings are required at the top and the bottom of each ramp run.

C.7 Pavement Markings and Signage

The MUTCD regulates the design and use of all traffic control devices on shared use paths. Figure 9 – 27 Sign Placement on Shared Use Paths provides the minimum criteria for the placement of signs along or over a shared use path. The maximum height from the outside edge of the path to the bottom elevation of a sign is five feet. Signs on shared use paths should follow the dimensions provided in ***Table 9B-1 Bicycle Sign and Plaque Sizes, MUTCD***. Guidance on the placement of stop or yield lines and crosswalks on roadways intersecting with shared use paths is provided in the ***MUTCD, Part 3***.

Figure 9 – 27 Sign Placement on Shared Use Paths



D RAILROAD CROSSINGS

Railroad-highway grade crossings should ideally be at a right angle to the rails. This can be accomplished either as a separate path or a widened shoulder. The greater the crossing deviated from this ideal crossing angle, the greater is the potential for a bicyclist's front wheel to be trapped in the flangeway, causing loss of steering control. If the crossing angle is less than approximately 45 degrees, an additional paved shoulder of sufficient width should be provided to permit the bicyclist to cross the track at a safer angle, preferable perpendicularly. Where this is not possible, and where train speeds are low, commercially available compressible flangeway fillers may enhance bicyclist operation. It is also important that the roadway approach be at the same elevation as the rails. For more information, see Figure 4 – 28 Correction for Skewed Railroad Grade Crossing – Separate Pathway in the ***AASHTO Guide for the Development of Bicycle Facilities***.

E STRUCTURES

All new bridges over roadways and shared use paths shall be designed to meet the vertical clearance standards specified in ***Chapter 3, Section C.7.j.4.(b)***, and ***Chapter 17, Section C.3.b.***

All bridges that include provisions for pedestrians shall provide pedestrian accommodations and design considerations that meet the provisions of the ADA.

Bridges over roadways should be covered or screened to reduce the likelihood of objects being dropped or thrown below. If the bridge is enclosed, the visual tunnel effect may require widening the bridge to provide a feeling of security for all bridge users. The area adjacent to overpasses may be fenced to prevent unsafe crossings and to channel pedestrians to the vertical separation structure.

F REFERENCES FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES

- USDOT/FHWA ADA Standards for Accessible Design (ADAAG)
  http://www.access-board.gov/guidelines-and-standards/buildings-and-sites/about-the-ada-standards/ada-standards
- AASHTO – Guide for the Development of Bicycle Facilities, 2012, 4th Edition
  https://bookstore.transportation.org/
- NACTO Urban Streets Design Guide
  http://nacto.org/usdg
- FHWA Policy Memo for Flexibility in Pedestrian and Bicycle Facility Design
  http://www.fhwa.dot.gov/environment/bicycle_pedestrian/guidance/design_guidance/design_flexibility.cfm
- Storm Drain Handbook, Florida Department of Transportation, October 2014
  http://www.dot.state.fl.us/rddesign/Drainage/files/StormDrainHB.pdf
- Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices, May 2012
  http://mutcd.fhwa.dot.gov/pdfs/2009r1r2/pdf_index.htm

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

CHAPTER 10

MAINTENANCE AND RESURFACING

FIGURES

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

CHAPTER 10

MAINTENANCE AND RESURFACING

A INTRODUCTION

In order to provide for the safe and efficient movement of all modes of traffic, it is essential to maintain all aspects of the road and right of way at the highest reasonable level of safety. Improvements consistent with upgrading safety standards or accommodating changes in traffic are also required to maintain the facility in a quality condition. Maintenance and resurfacing are costly operations; therefore, every effort should be made to provide the maximum safety benefit from each operation. The fact that a major portion of the maintenance effort is necessary to merely preserve the economic investment in a facility should not be considered as justification for sacrificing the requirements for maintaining or improving the safety characteristics of a street or highway.

B MAINTENANCE

B.1 Objectives

The major objectives of a maintenance program include the following:

- Maintain all highway features and components in the best possible condition.
- Improve sub-standard features, with the ultimate goal to at least meet minimum standards.
- Provide for minimum disruptions and hazards to traffic during maintenance operations.
- Location and reporting of inadequate safety features.

B.2 Policy

Each highway agency responsible for maintenance shall develop and maintain a program of highway maintenance for the entire highway network under its jurisdiction. This program should include the following activities:

- Identify needs

- Establish priorities
- Establish procedures
- Establish and maintain a regular program of maintenance for all aspects

The program should be regularly evaluated and suitably modified to promote the maintenance of streets and highways that result in the best practicable condition.

B.3 Identification of Needs

The identification of maintenance needs is the first stage in the development of a successful maintenance program, and is required when any portion of the highway system is in a sub-standard condition. Action is also required to correct any situation which is hazardous or may become hazardous in the near future. This may be accomplished by both regular inspection of the highway network and proper analysis of crash records.

B.3.a Inspection

Periodic and systematic inspection of the entire highway network under each agency's jurisdiction is required to identify situations requiring improvements, and corrections or repairs. These inspections should be conducted by maintenance or traffic operations personnel, or other qualified personnel who are trained in the aspects of highway maintenance requirements.

B.3.b Crash Records

A regular program of crash investigations, record keeping, and analysis should be established to provide information for recommended highway modification and corrective maintenance requirements. Cooperation among maintenance, traffic operations, and police agencies is required, and activities of these agencies should be coordinated in accordance with the guidelines set forth in the ***National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) Program Guideline No. 21 (II), Identification and Surveillance of Crash Locations***. Inspection of the highway network and analysis of crash records should be utilized to provide feedback for modification of design and construction procedures.

B.4 Establishment of Priorities

The maintenance activities determined to be necessary by the identification program should be carried out on a priority basis. The establishment of priorities should be based, to a large extent, upon the objective of promoting highway safety. A high priority should be given to the improvement or correction of situations that may result in fatal or serious crashes. Preservation of highway investment and promotion of efficient traffic operations are important maintenance objectives. Every effort should be made to ensure the highest safety payoff from the maintenance dollar.

B.5 Establishment of Procedures

Standard procedures and methods for maintenance operations should be established for efficient, rapid, and safe completion of the required work. All maintenance work shall be conducted in accordance with the Standards set forth in ***Chapter 11 – Work Zone Safety***. Each maintenance agency should develop its own Maintenance Manual or utilize the Maintenance Manuals of the Department. Such manuals should specify the methods, procedures, equipment, personnel qualifications, and other aspects of the work necessary to ensure successful completion of maintenance operations. Procedures should be developed for emergency, routine, and special operations.

B.5.a Emergency Maintenance

Emergency maintenance operations are those required to immediately restore the highway to a safe condition. Emergency maintenance work should be carried out by personnel who are specially trained and qualified. Work units, which should be available on a twenty-four hour basis, should be connected with the emergency response communications system. Emergency operations would include the following:

1. The removal of debris from crashes, cargo spillage, or other causes. This activity should be conducted in accordance with the guidelines set forth in the ***NHTSA Program Guideline No. 16, Debris Hazard Control and Cleanup***.
2. Replacement of inoperative traffic control devices.
3. Repair or replacement of damaged highway safety components such as lighting, traffic control devices, redirection devices, and energy absorbing devices.

4. Repair or correction of any situation that provides an immediate or unexpected hazard to the public.
5. Assistance in any activity during emergency response operations.

B.5.b Routine Maintenance

Routine maintenance operations are those that may be predicted and planned in advance. These operations, which may be preventive or corrective in nature, should be conducted on a regularly scheduled basis using standard procedures. Proper scheduling of these operations should be utilized to provide minimum disruptions and hazards to the driving public. Routine maintenance may include operations such as:

1. Cleaning and debris removal from the pavement, shoulders, and roadside clear zones.
2. Mowing and other vegetation control operations to provide a smooth recovery area and to maintain proper sight distance.
3. Cleaning and inspection of gutters, ditches, and other drainage structures.
4. Structural inspection and preventive maintenance on bridges and other structures.
5. Cleaning, replacement, and maintenance of roadway lighting fixtures.
6. Replacement and maintenance of traffic control devices.
7. Inspection and maintenance of redirection and energy absorbing devices (***Chapter 4 – Roadside Design***).
8. Inspection and maintenance of emergency response communication systems and access facilities.
9. Inspection and maintenance of pavement and shoulders, with particular emphasis on maintaining shoulders flush with the pavement (***Chapter 5 – Pavement Design and Construction***).
10. Inspection and maintenance of all highway components and safety features.
11. Inspection and maintenance of pedestrian pavements, crossings, etc., with particular emphasis on sidewalk cracks, joint separations, accumulated debris, adjacent landscape materials, etc.).

12. Thin pavement overlay that is intended to preserve the pavement, retard its future deterioration and maintain its functional condition.

B.5.c Special Maintenance

Special maintenance operations are defined as those projects that are neither urgent nor routine in nature, but are occasionally required to improve or maintain a street or highway in a quality condition. Since these projects can be planned in advance of the initiation of any work, procedures that provide for efficient, rapid, and safe operations can be developed. To avoid continuing disruptions of traffic, the quality and durability of these improvements, corrections, and repairs should be maintained at the highest practicable level. Special maintenance should include the upgrading of the highway safety features, as well as the repair or replacement of damaged or deteriorated highway components. These operations should be designed to upgrade or maintain the street or highway in accordance with the Standards presented in this Manual.

B.5.d Pavement Maintenance

The primary purpose of pavement maintenance is to ensure the pavement characteristics prescribed in ***Chapter 5 – Pavement Design And Construction***, are reasonably maintained. Each agency with responsibility for maintenance of streets and highways shall establish a meaningful pavement maintenance system (including shoulders and drainage structures) for the entire system under its jurisdiction. This program should include:

1. A process that monitors the serviceability of the existing streets and highways and identifies the pavement sections that are inadequate.

2. A systematic plan of maintenance activities designed to correct structural deficiencies and to prevent rapid deterioration.

3. A preservation program, with assigned priorities, designed to resurface, reconstruct, or replace pavements when they are no longer structurally serviceable.

Pavement maintenance requires a substantial portion of the total maintenance budget for streets and highways. It is necessary to ensure highway safety. The reduction of hydroplaning and splashing is essential for promoting safe and efficient operation during wet weather conditions.

The elimination of driving discomfort, and vehicle damage caused by deteriorated pavements, provides additional economic justification for maintaining the pavement in a fully serviceable condition.

It is recognized that a comprehensive preservation program is expensive. Adequate financing is required to successfully carry out these activities. The establishment of appropriate budget priorities and careful planning can assist in developing and conducting a pavement maintenance and preservation program that will, within a reasonable number of years, bring substandard pavements up to the required level of serviceability and will maintain the adequacy of the entire system.

C RESURFACING

In addition to the design criteria provided in this chapter, the ***2006 Americans with Disabilities Act Standards for Transportation Facilities*** as required by ***49 C.F.R 37.41*** or ***37.43*** and the ***2017 Florida Accessibility Code for Building Construction*** as required by 61G20-4.002 impose additional requirements for the design and construction of resurfacing projects.

C.1 Accessibility Requirements

If new sidewalk and driveway construction or reconstruction is included on resurfacing projects they shall be designed to meet the requirements of ***Section C.7.d*** of ***Chapter 3 – Geometric Design*** and ***Chapter 9 – Pedestrian Facilities***. Project design should include an evaluation of existing driveways to determine if it is feasible to upgrade nonconforming driveways.

Existing detectable warnings and curb ramps shall be brought into compliance. This includes installing new detectable warnings for both flush shoulder and curbed roadway connections and signalized driveways where none exist or do not meet current requirements. New curb ramps shall be provided on curbed roadways where none exist and existing substandard curb ramps shall be replaced. Existing ramps not meeting detectable warning requirements which otherwise comply with orientation, slope and width criteria shall be retrofitted with detectable warnings.

Where existing right of way is inadequate or conflicts occur with existing features that cannot be practicably relocated or adjusted (e.g. driveways, drainage inlets, signal poles, pull boxes, utility poles, etc.), pedestrian accessibility shall be provided to the maximum extent feasible, with appropriate documentation signed and sealed by a Professional Engineer (EOR). Other than meeting detectable warning and curb ramp requirements, existing sidewalks and driveways are not required to be upgraded for the sole purpose of meeting requirements for accessibility unless included in the project scope.

C.2 Railroad-Highway Grade Crossing Near or Within Project Limits

Federal-aid projects must be reviewed to determine if a railroad-highway grade crossing is within the limits of or near the terminus of the project. If such railroad-highway grade crossing exists, the project must be upgraded to meet the requirements of the ***Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (2009 Edition with Revision Numbers 1 and 2, May 2012) (MUTCD)*** in accordance with ***Title***

23, United States Code (U.S.C), Chapter 1, Section 109(e) and ***23 C.F.R. 646.214(b)***. Please refer to Section C of ***Chapter 7 – Rail-Highway Crossings*** for further information.

C.3 Safety Improvements

Local agencies should strive to upgrade the safety of their facilities during scheduled maintenance intervals especially during pavement resurfacing projects. Particular attention should be paid to improving pedestrian and bicyclist safety using strategies such as crosswalks and bicycle facilities. Investments should also be made in improved guardrail end treatments and bridge-end transitions on high speed facilities.

C.3.a Pavement Safety Edge

Many low-cost strategies exist to improve the long-term safety of streets and highways. One such strategy is the pavement Safety Edge. The Safety Edge provides a higher probability of a vehicle returning safely to the travel lane when it drifts off the pavement. The Safety Edge is a wedge-shaped transition of the structural pavement to the unpaved shoulder. The wedge shape eliminates tire scrubbing against the pavement edge and improves vehicle stability as it crosses a drop-off.

The Safety Edge is particularly effective when providing a smooth transition from pavement to shoulder when vertical drop-offs exceed 2 inches. Construction of the Safety Edge typically includes initially pulling the unpaved shoulder for pavement structural course, and then backfilling onto the Safety Edge with installation of sod or turf. The Safety Edge is very effective in mitigating the severity of road-departure crashes should the unpaved shoulder erode away between maintenance intervals.

Details for the Safety Edge are included in Figures 10 – 1 Two Lane Road with Safety Edge and 10 – 2 Safety Edge Detail (No Paved Shoulder). Safety Edge should be constructed adjacent to the pavement edge on rural roadways with no paved shoulder and posted speeds 45 mph and above.

Figure 10 – 1
Two Lane Road with Safety Edge

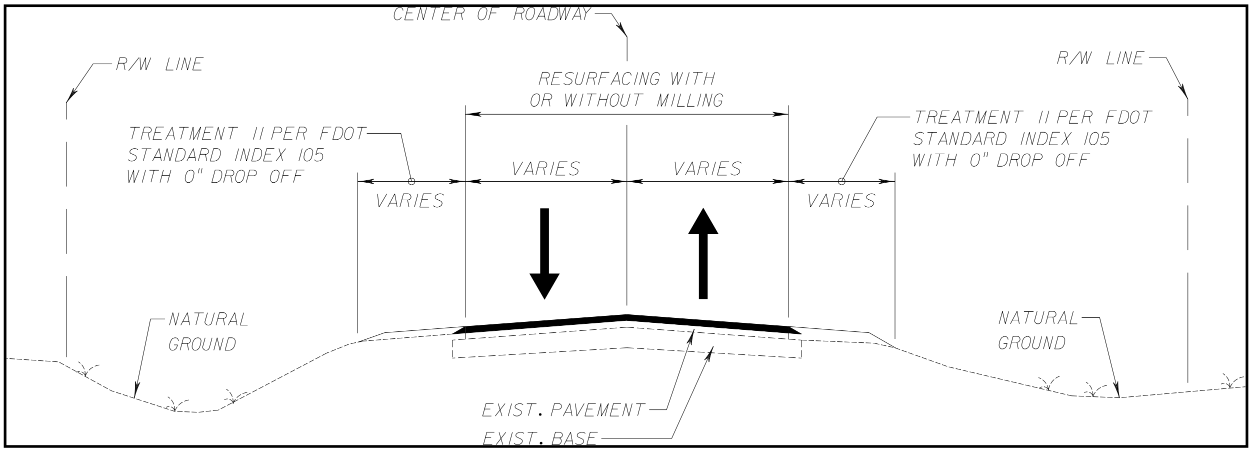
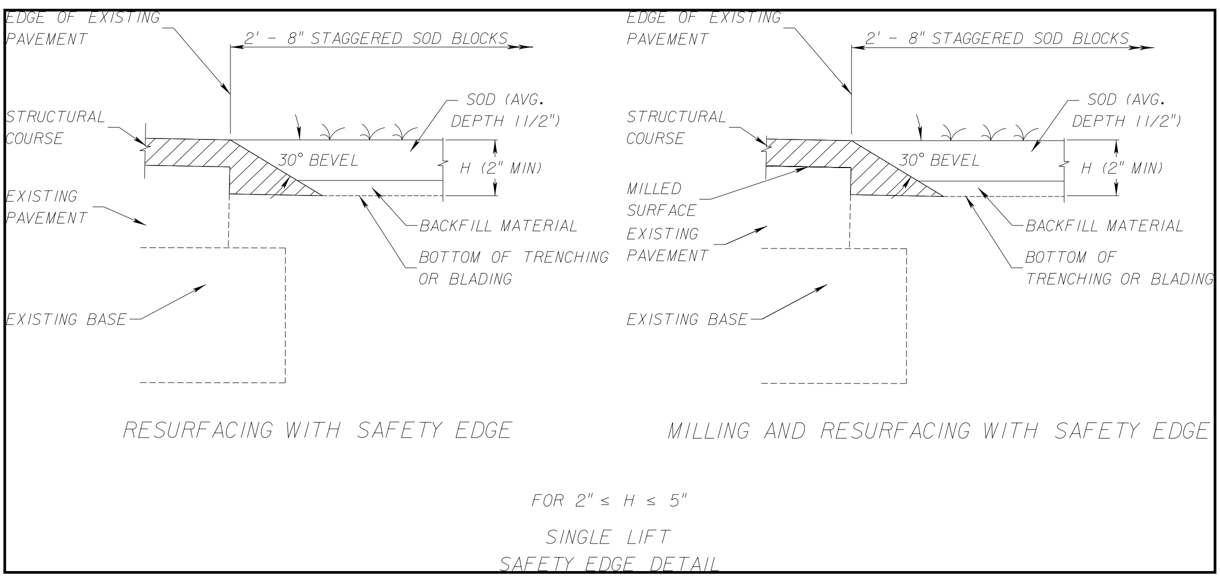


Figure 10 – 2
Safety Edge Detail (No Paved Shoulders)



C.4 Federal Aid Project Requirements

The following are the minimum requirements that a local highway resurfacing project scope must contain for federal-aid assistance including projects in the Local Agency Program (LAP):

1. Rework shoulders to be flush with the pavement and establish turf along the pavement edge.

2. Upgrade or replace existing roadside hardware (guardrail) as necessary for compliance with Federal criteria for 3R projects (as summarized in the ***Department's Design Manual, Chapter 215 Roadside Safety***).

3. Meet the latest ***Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (2009 Edition with Revision Numbers 1 and 2, May 2012) (MUTCD)*** standards for signing and pavement marking.

4. Construct or reconstruct, as appropriate, curb cuts and ramps to meet current accessibility requirements.

5. Upgrade the safety of the project by mitigating the impact of crashes involving vehicles, bicycles and pedestrians.

   Note: The local agency may contact the FDOT District Safety Office and determine locations within the project with crash rates higher than average for similar facility type. The local agency may then identify the causes of the crashes from a review of crash report data provided by the FDOT District Safety Office. Based on this analysis, the local agency may then specify the appropriate crash mitigation measures (additional guardrail, signing, vibratory/audible pavement marking, designated crosswalks or other prudent safety-enhancing strategies).

6. Upgrade railroad crossings to meet the latest ***Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (2009 Edition with Revision Numbers 1 and 2, May 2012) (MUTCD)*** requirements in accordance with ***Title 23, United States Code (U.S.C), Chapter 1, Section 109(e)*** and ***23 C.F.R. 646.214(b)***. Please refer to ***Section C*** of ***Chapter 7 – Rail-Highway Crossings*** for further information.

D REFERENCES FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES

The following is a list of publications that may be referenced for further guidance:

- FHWA Pavement Preservation Definitions, HIAM-20, September 12, 2005, http://www.fhwa.dot.gov/pavement/preservation/091205.cfm
- NCHRP Synthesis 417: Geometric Design Practices for Resurfacing, Restoration, and Rehabilitation, http://www.nap.edu/

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

CHAPTER 11

WORK ZONE SAFETY

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

CHAPTER 11

WORK ZONE SAFETY

A INTRODUCTION

Construction, maintenance, and utility work, along with traffic incident management, are roadwork operations that create highway safety challenges. The changes to normal traffic flow and the introduction of unexpected travelling conditions at many work zones may generate hazardous situations and serious traffic conflicts. A comprehensive plan for work zone safety is required to minimize the risks and effects of these roadwork operations. Any activity within the highway right of way shall be subjected to the requirements of work zone safety.

B BACKGROUND

Section 316.0745, Florida Statutes, mandates the Department of Transportation compile and publish a manual of traffic control devices for use on the streets and highways of the state. To comply with this statute, the ***Federal Highway Administration's (FHWA) Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD)*** has been adopted for use in ***Rule 14-15.010, Florida Administrative Code (F.A.C.)***.

The intent of this chapter is to require conformance to the ***MUTCD, Part 6***.

C OBJECTIVES

Managing traffic during roadwork operations is necessary to complete roadwork or resolve traffic incidents in a timely manner while minimizing traffic delays, maintaining access to travelers, and most importantly maintaining an acceptable level of safety. The general objective of a program of work zone safety is to protect workers, traffic incident responders, pedestrians, bicyclists, and motorists during roadwork operations. This general objective may be achieved by meeting the following specific objectives:

- Provide adequate advance warning and information about upcoming work zones
- Provide the pedestrians, bicyclists and motorists clear information to understand how to navigate through or around the work zone
- Reduce the consequences of an out-of-control vehicle

- Provide safe access and storage for equipment and material
- Promote the speedy completion of projects (including thorough cleanup of the site)
- Promote the use of the appropriate traffic control and protection devices
- Provide safe passageways for pedestrians through, in, and/or around construction or maintenance work zones, including persons with disabilities in compliance with the ***2006 Americans with Disabilities Act Standards for Transportation Facilities*** as required by ***49 C.F.R 37.41 – Construction of Transportation Facilities by Public Entities*** or ***37.43 - Alteration of Transportation Facilities by Public Entities*** and the ***2017 Florida Accessibility Code*** as required by ***61G20-4.002.***

D POLICY

Each agency with responsibilities for construction, maintenance, utility, or traffic incident management, or any roadwork operations on streets and highways shall develop and maintain a program of work zone safety, as set forth in the ***MUTCD, (Chapter 6A)***. Additional requirements related to all highway construction projects financed in whole or in part with federal-aid highway funds are provided in ***Title 23 Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) 630 Subpart J***, more commonly known as the ***Work Zone Safety and Mobility Rule*** impose additional requirements for the design and construction of projects financed in whole or in part with federal-aid highway funds.

E PLANNING OF ROADWORK OPERATIONS

The achievement of work zone safety requires careful and complete planning prior to the initiation of any roadwork. The planning objective is to develop a comprehensive temporary traffic control plan that includes the following considerations:

E.1 Project Requirements

E.1.a Type of Operation

Roadwork operations may be further classified as routine, unplanned, or planned operations.

E.1.a.1 Routine Operations

Routine operations would involve projects such as mowing, street cleaning, and preventive maintenance operations conducted on a regularly scheduled basis.

E.1.a.2 Unplanned Operations

Unplanned operations require prompt, efficient action to restore the roadway to a safe condition. These include traffic incident management such as clearing vehicle crash or storm debris, addressing hazardous materials spills, repairing or replacing damaged highway safety components and restoring inoperative traffic control devices.

E.1.a.3 Planned Operations

Planned operations are scheduled roadwork projects, neither routine nor time-sensitive in nature, that are occasionally required to maintain or upgrade a street or highway.

E.1.b Nature of the Roadwork

The development of the temporary traffic control plan for work zone safety should include consideration of the following factors:

- Time span required
- Requirements for continuous operation or occupation of the work zone
- Capability of clearing the site during cessation of work activity
- The various construction methods, equipment, and procedures that may be utilized. Evaluation of alternate methods should be undertaken to determine the safest and most efficient procedures
- The necessity for storing equipment or material in the highway right of way
- Roadwork operations that may expose workers to hazards from through traffic
- Hazards to out of control vehicles such as excavations or unguarded structures or equipment
- Equipment inspection and preventive maintenance program

E.1.c Nature of the Work Zone

The nature of the work zone and the prevailing traffic conditions should, to a large degree, influence the procedures incorporated into the plan for work zone safety. The development of the temporary traffic control plan should include consideration of the following factors:

- Location of the work zone in relation to the proximity to side streets, driveways, bus stops, schools, parks, places of worship, etc.
- Determination of the design vehicle, normal vehicle travelling speed, and traffic volumes.
- Distribution of traffic with respect to peak traffic periods (seasonal, day of week, time of day, etc.)
- Truck percentage, frequency of transit vehicles, and direction of traffic is also important for establishing traffic control procedures.
- Presence of Intelligent Transportation Systems (ITS) such as dynamic message boards.
- Site conditions that may be confusing or distracting to the motorist, pedestrian, or bicyclist.
- Limitations on sight distance.
- Decreased visibility associated with nighttime roadwork operations.
- Impacts of detours and diversions to business and residential communities.
- Pedestrian and bicycle accommodations.
- Reasonableness of detour length and complexity.

E.2 Work Scheduling

Proper work scheduling and sequencing of roadwork operations will not only promote efficiency, but also improve the safety aspects. Where feasible, routine operations and special projects should be conducted during periods of low traffic volume to reduce conflicts. Projects that may be carried out concurrently at the same site should be scheduled simultaneously to eliminate successive disruptions of traffic. Major projects that impede or restrict traffic flow should be coordinated and sequenced with similar projects in adjacent areas, to produce a minimum of disruption to orderly traffic flow in the overall highway network. The scheduling of work at a given location should include consideration of traffic generation (including special events), as well as traffic restrictions by work activities on the surrounding highway network.

E.3 Traffic Control and Protection

Plans for traffic control around or through work zones should be developed with safety receiving a high priority. Plans should include protection at work zones when work is in progress and when operations have been halted (such as during the night). Provisions for the protection of work crews, traffic control personnel, bicyclists, pedestrians (in areas of high pedestrian use, construction of temporary facilities should be considered), and motorists shall be included in the operation plans. The plan for traffic control and protection should consider provisions for the following:

- Advance warning devices
- Work zone traffic signs
- Clear view of work zone
- Roadway delineation and channeling devices
- Clear zone (***Chapter 4 – Roadside Design***)
- Regulatory information
- High visibility safety apparel for workers
- Traffic control officers and law enforcement
- Hazard warning
- Barriers

- Pedestrian and bicyclist safety
- Access for pedestrians, bicyclists, and vehicles
- Access to adjacent properties by the public during construction
- Location of construction vehicles and equipment, including access into and out of the work zone
- Night safety (***Chapter 6 – Lighting***)
- Personnel training
- Traffic control and protective devices – including transverse rumble strips (***Chapter 18 – Signing and Marking)***
- Transit Stops – including passenger access
- Abrupt changes in geometry (lane narrowing, lane drop, transitions)
- Turning restrictions
- Temporary traffic signals

E.4 Coordination with Others

To ensure safe and efficient roadwork operations, the temporary traffic control plan should be developed and executed in cooperation with interested individuals and agencies, which may include the following:

- Highway agencies
- Police agencies
- Emergency agencies
- Contractors
- Utilities
- Building departments
- Mass transit agencies
- Traffic generators
- Local residents and businesses
- Neighboring jurisdictions
- School Boards

- Postal Services
- Media
- Trash and recycling pick ups

F WORK ZONE MANAGEMENT

Roadwork operations shall follow an appropriate temporary traffic control plan.

F.1 Public Information

All reasonable effort should be made to inform the public of the location, duration, and nature of impending roadwork operations. Transit agencies should be given advanced notice of planned operations so they can be responsible for notifying their passengers.

F.2 Contracts and Permits

For construction and reconstruction projects, the general work zone layout; traffic control and protection procedures; occupational safety and health requirements; and specific traffic control devices required should be incorporated in the contract plans and specifications.

New utility installations in public rights of way are prohibited unless a permit by the appropriate highway agency is issued. Permits for routine maintenance (e.g., deteriorated pole/equipment replacement), minor alterations (e.g., changes in cable, wire, or transformer size), service drops, or emergency work should generally not be required. ***Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA)*** regulations for work zone safety should be reviewed prior to any construction by utility companies involving encroachment of the highway right of way by workers, equipment or material.

F.3 Inspection and Supervision

A regular program of inspection and supervision of all construction and maintenance projects shall be established and executed.

G EVALUATION OF PROGRAM

The entire program for work zone safety should be periodically evaluated and revised to provide the safest practicable environment for workers, pedestrians, and motorists during roadwork operations.

CHAPTER 12

CONSTRUCTION

CHAPTER 12

CONSTRUCTION

A INTRODUCTION

The purpose of this chapter is to establish guidelines for field procedures, as they pertain to control of construction projects, supervision, and contract administration. All construction projects require an inspection process to administer the contract, to certify the project has been constructed within reasonable conformance with the plans/specifications, and the materials which were incorporated into the project were properly tested/certified.

All construction projects require:

- An inspection procedure to administer the contract
- Certification

B OBJECTIVES

Construction of street and highway facilities is the result of the effort, of the engineer, the contractor, and the owner. Minimum construction standards shall be followed to provide for proper implementation of the design. The following general objectives for roadway construction should be followed to ensure proper construction:

- All construction performed and all materials utilized shall be in reasonably close conformity with the construction plans and contract documents.
- The responsibilities and obligations of the owner, engineer, and contractor should be clearly defined.
- A safe working environment shall be provided in accordance with ***Chapter 11 – Work Zone Safety***.
- Adequate procedures through established methods of sampling and testing shall be implemented to provide for the control and placement of materials.

C CONTROL OF THE WORK

C.1 Plans and Contract Documents

The Contractor will be furnished an appropriate number of copies of the plans and special provisions as required for the particular project. The Contractor shall have available at the work site, at all times, one copy each of the plans (including relevant Design Standards), Specifications, and Special Provisions.

C.1.a Plans

The plans furnished consist of general drawings showing such details which are necessary to give a comprehensive idea of the construction contemplated. Roadway plans will show, in general, alignment, profile grades, typical cross sections, and general cross sections as necessary. Structure plans, in general, will show in detail all dimensions of the work contemplated.

C.1.b Alterations in Plans

No changes shall be made on any plan or drawing after it is approved by the Engineer, except as authorized in writing by the Engineer. All authorized alterations affecting the requirements and information given on the approved plans shall be in writing.

C.1.c Working Drawings (for Structures)

C.1.c.1 General

The Contractor shall furnish such working, shop, and erection drawings, as may be required, to complete the structure in compliance with the design shown on the plans.

C.1.c.2 Submission of Working, Shop, and Erection Drawings

All working, shop, and erection drawings prepared by the Contractor or his agents (subcontractor, fabricator, supplier, etc.) shall be reviewed, dated, stamped, approved, and signed by the Contractor prior to submission to the Engineer of Record for review. The Contractor's signed approval of drawings submitted shall confirm he/she has verified the work requirements, field measurements, construction criteria, sequence of assembly and erection, access and clearances, catalog numbers, and other similar data. Each series of drawings shall indicate the specification section and page or drawing number of the contract plans to which the submission applies. The Contractor shall indicate on the working, shop, and erections drawings all deviations from the contract drawings and shall itemize all deviations in his letter of transmittal.

C.1.c.3 Responsibility for Accuracy of Working Drawings

It is understood that approval by the Engineer of the Contractor's working drawings does not relieve the Contractor of any responsibility for accuracy of dimensions and details, or for conformity of dimensions and details. The Contractor shall be responsible for agreement and conformity of his working drawings with the approved plans and specifications.

C.2 Coordination of Plans, Specifications, and Special Provisions

The specifications, plans, special provisions, and all supplemental documents are integral parts of the contract, and a requirement occurring in one is as binding as though occurring in all. They are to be complementary and to describe and provide for a complete work.

In cases of discrepancy, the governing order of the documents shall be as follows:

- Special Provisions
- Plans
- Standard Drawings
- Specifications

C.3 Conformity of Work with Plans

All work performed and all materials furnished shall be in reasonably close conformity with the lines, grades, cross sections, dimensions, and material requirements, including tolerances, shown on the plans or indicated in the specifications.

In the event the Engineer finds the materials or the finished product in which the materials are used not within reasonably close conformity with the plans and specifications, but reasonably acceptable work has been produced, he/she shall then make a determination if the work shall be accepted and remain in place. In this event, the Engineer will document the basis of acceptance by contract modification which will provide for an appropriate adjustment in the contract price for such work or materials as he deems necessary to conform to his determination based on engineering judgment.

In the event the Engineer finds the materials, or the finished product in which the materials are used, or the work performed, are not in reasonably close conformity with the plans and specifications and have resulted in an inferior or unsatisfactory product, the work or materials shall be removed and replaced or otherwise corrected by and at the expense of the Contractor.

C.4 Conformity of Work Shown in Regulatory Permits

All work shall be accomplished in accordance with special conditions of the regulatory permits.

C.5 Authority of the Engineer

All work shall be performed to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

C.6 Engineering and Layout

C.6.a Control Points Furnished

Horizontal and vertical control points are required at appropriate intervals along the line of the project to facilitate the proper layout of the work. The Contractor shall preserve all control points furnished.

C.6.b Layout of Work

Utilizing the control points furnished, all horizontal and vertical controls shall be established as necessary to construct the work in conformance with the plans and specifications. The work shall include performing all calculations required and setting all stakes needed, such as grade stakes, offset stakes, reference point stakes, slope stakes, and other reference marks or points necessary to provide lines and grades for construction of all roadway, bridge, and miscellaneous items.

C.6.c Personnel, Equipment, and Record Requirements

The Contractor shall employ only competent personnel and utilize only suitable equipment in performing layout work.

Adequate field notes and records shall be kept as layout work is accomplished. These field notes and records shall be available for review by the Engineer as the work progresses and copies shall be furnished to the Engineer at the time of completion of the project. Any inspection or checking of the Contractor's field notes or layout work by the Engineer, and the acceptance of all or any part thereof, shall not relieve the Contractor of his responsibility to achieve the lines, grades, and dimensions shown in the plans and specifications.

C.7 Contractor's Supervision

C.7.a Prosecution of Work

The Contractor shall give the work the constant attention necessary to assure the scheduled progress and shall cooperate fully with the Engineer and with other contractors at work in the vicinity.

C.7.b Contractor's Superintendent

The Contractor shall at all times have on the work site, as his/her agent, a competent superintendent capable of thoroughly interpreting the plans and specifications and thoroughly experienced in the type of work being performed, and who shall receive the instructions from the Engineer or his/her authorized representatives. The superintendent shall have full authority to execute the orders or directions of the Engineer and to supply promptly any materials, tools, equipment, labor, and incidentals which may be required. Such superintendence shall be furnished regardless of the amount of work sublet.

C.7.c Supervision for Emergencies

The Contractor shall have a responsible person available at or reasonably near the work site on a twenty-four hour basis, seven days a week, in order that he/she may be contacted in emergencies and in cases where immediate action must be taken to maintain traffic or to handle any other problems that might arise. The Contractor shall be responsible for initiating, installing, and maintaining all traffic control devices as described in ***Chapter 11 – Work Zone Safety*** and in the plans.

C.8 General Inspection Requirements

C.8.a Cooperation by Contractor

No work shall be done nor materials used without suitable supervision or inspection by the Engineer. The Contractor shall furnish the Engineer with every reasonable facility for ascertaining whether the work performed and materials used are in accordance with the requirements and intent of the plans and specifications.

C.8.b Failure of Engineer to Reject Work During Construction

If, during or prior to construction operations, the Engineer should fail to reject defective work or materials, whether from lack of discovery of such defect or for any reason, such initial failure to reject shall in no way prevent his/her later rejection when such defect is discovered.

C.9 Final Construction Inspection Maintenance until Final Acceptance

The Contractor shall maintain all work in first-class condition until it has been completed as a whole and has been accepted by the Engineer. When all materials have been furnished, all work has been performed, and the construction contemplated by the contract has been satisfactorily completed, the Engineer will make the final inspection.

D CONTROL OF MATERIALS

D.1 Source of Supply and Quality Requirements

D.1.a Only Approved Materials to be Used

Only materials conforming to the requirements of the specifications and approved by the Engineer shall be used in the work. Any materials proposed for use may be inspected or tested at any time during their preparation and use. No material which, after approval, has in any way become unfit for use, shall be used in the work.

D.2 Inspection and Tests at Source of Supply

D.2.a General

The Engineer may undertake the inspection of materials at the source of supply.

D.2.b Cooperation by Contractor

The Contractor shall assure the Engineer has free entry at all times to such parts of the plant as concern the manufacture or production of the materials ordered, and shall bear all costs incurred in providing all reasonable facilities to assist in determining whether the material furnished complies with the requirements of the specifications.

D.3 Control by Samples and Tests

D.3.a Materials to be Tested, Samples

The Engineer may require any or all materials to be subjected to tests by means of samples or otherwise, at production points, after delivery, or both, as he/she may determine.

D.3.b Applicable Standards

Methods of sampling and testing materials shall conform to the Engineer's requirements and should be in accordance with ***Florida Sampling and Testing Methods (FSTM)*** so far as covered therein. Otherwise, they should be in accordance with Standards of AASHTO, ASTM, or other criteria as specifically designated by the Engineer. Where an AASHTO, ASTM, or other non-Florida Method is designated, but a Florida Method which is similar exists, sampling and testing should be in accordance with the Florida Method.

Whenever in these Specifications, FSTM, AASHTO, ASTM, or other standards are referenced without identification of the specific time of issuance, the reference should be construed to mean the most current issuance, including interims or addendums thereto, at the time of advertisement for bids for a project.

D.4 Quality Control System

D.4.a General Requirements

The Contractor shall furnish and maintain a quality control system that will provide reasonable assurance that all materials and products submitted for acceptance conform to the contract requirements, whether manufactured or processed by the Contractor or procured from suppliers or subcontractors. The Contractor shall perform or have performed the inspection and tests required to substantiate product conformance to contract requirements and shall also perform or have performed all inspections and tests otherwise required by the contract.

D.4.b Documentation

The Contractor shall maintain adequate records of all inspections and tests. The records shall indicate the nature and number of tests made, the number and type of deficiencies found, the quantities approved and rejected, and the nature of corrective action taken, as appropriate.

D.4.c Corrective Actions

The Contractor shall take prompt action to correct any errors, equipment malfunctions, process changes, or other assignable causes which have resulted or could result in the submission of materials, products, and completed construction which do not conform to the requirements of the specifications.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

CHAPTER 13

PUBLIC TRANSIT

FIGURES

CHAPTER 13

PUBLIC TRANSIT

A INTRODUCTION

All modes of transportation (autos, trucks, transit vehicles, rails, aircraft, water craft, bicyclists, and pedestrians) should be considered when planning, designing, and constructing the surface transportation system. Where there is a demand for highways to serve vehicles, there could also be a demand for public transit or public transportation. Public transit should be considered in all phases of a project, including planning, preliminary design and engineering, design, construction, and maintenance. Coordination with the appropriate public transit provider(s) will help determine the need for transit related infrastructure on a project-by-project basis. The integration of public transit street side facilities along with pedestrian and bicycle facilities furthers the implementation of this goal.

Planning and designing for public transit is important because it is an integral part of the overall surface transportation system. Public transit is defined as passenger transportation service, local or regional in nature, which is available to any person. It operates on established schedules along designated routes or lines with specific stops and is designed to move relatively large numbers of people at one time. Public transit includes bus, light rail, street cars, bus rapid transit and paratransit.

With rising levels of congestion resulting in the use of new strategies to effectively and efficiently manage mobility, there is an increased demand for accessible and user friendly public transit. New strategies include increased emphasis on public transit and new emphasis on Transportation System Management (TSM), as well as Transportation Demand Management (TDM). TSM is the use of low cost capital improvements to increase the efficiency of roadways and transit services such as retiming traffic signals or predestinating traffic flow. TDM focuses on people reducing the number of personal vehicle trips, especially during peak periods. TDM includes the promotion of alternatives to the single occupant vehicle, including public transportation, carpooling, vanpooling, bicycling, walking, and telecommuting, as well as other methods for reducing peak hour travel.

Federal and State legislation provide the stimulus for planning, designing, and constructing a fully integrated transportation system benefiting the traveling public and the environment. Examples of legislation include ***Fixing America's Surface Transportation Act (FAST Act)***, ***Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (ADA)***, and ***Clean Air Act Amendment of 1990 (CAAA)***. In response to this legislation, the surface transportation system should provide for concurrent use by automobiles, public transit and rail, bicycles and pedestrians.

B OBJECTIVE

There are a number of methods to efficiently develop a coordinated surface transportation system. Coordination among agencies is necessary during the planning and design stages to:

- incorporate transit needs and during the construction phase for re-routing bus (and complementary pedestrian) movements, and
- for actual transit agency specific requirements (e.g., bus stop sign replacement, shelter installations, etc.).

For planning purposes, the state and local Transportation Improvement Program (TIP) should be referenced. Additionally, individual transit authorities have ten-year Transit Development Plans (TDPs) that are updated annually. The TDP can be used as a guide for planned transit needs along existing and new transportation corridors so transit consideration and transit enhancements can be incorporated where appropriate.

C TRANSIT COMPONENTS

C.1 Boarding and Alighting (B&A) Areas

Boarding and Alighting (B&A) areas help to create an accessible bus stop by providing a raised platform that is compatible with a bus that kneels or extends a ramp. A B&A area has a firm, stable and slip-resistant surface with a minimum clear length of 8.0 feet (measured perpendicular to the curb or roadway edge), and a minimum clear width of 5.0 feet (measured parallel to the roadway). Firm, stable, and slip resistant B&A areas are required if amenities such as benches or shelters are added to a bus stop. B&A areas are not required at bus stops on flush shoulder roadways where only a bus stop sign is provided. Coordinate with the appropriate public transit provider(s) to determine compatibility with equipment and transit vehicles.

The slope of the B&A area parallel to the roadway shall to the extent practicable, be the same as the roadway. For water drainage, a maximum slope of 1:50 (2%) perpendicular to the roadway is allowed. Benches and other site amenities shall not be placed on the B&A area. The B&A area can be located either within or outside the shelter, and shall be connected to streets, sidewalks, or pedestrian circulation paths by an accessible route.

On flush shoulder roadways, a B&A area may be constructed at the shoulder point (or edge of shoulder pavement on roadways with a design speed of 45 mph or less) as shown in Figures 13 – 1 and 13 – 2 Boarding and Alighting Area for Flush Shoulder Roadways. A Type “E” curb (5” curb height) should be used.

A sidewalk and/or ramp provided with the B&A area shall be a minimum of 5 feet in width, and the ramp shall not exceed a slope of 1:12. A detectable warning is required where a sidewalk associated with a B&A area connects to the roadway at grade. Except for the area adjacent to the 5” curb, the areas surrounding the B&A area shall be flush with the adjacent shoulder and side slopes and designed to be traversable by errant vehicles. On the upstream side of the platform, a maximum slope of 1:12 should be provided, and may be grass or a hardened surface. The B&A area (and ramp and level landing if needed) should be constructed with 6” thick concrete.

Figure 13 – 1 Boarding and Alighting Area for Flush Shoulder Roadways with Connection to the Roadway

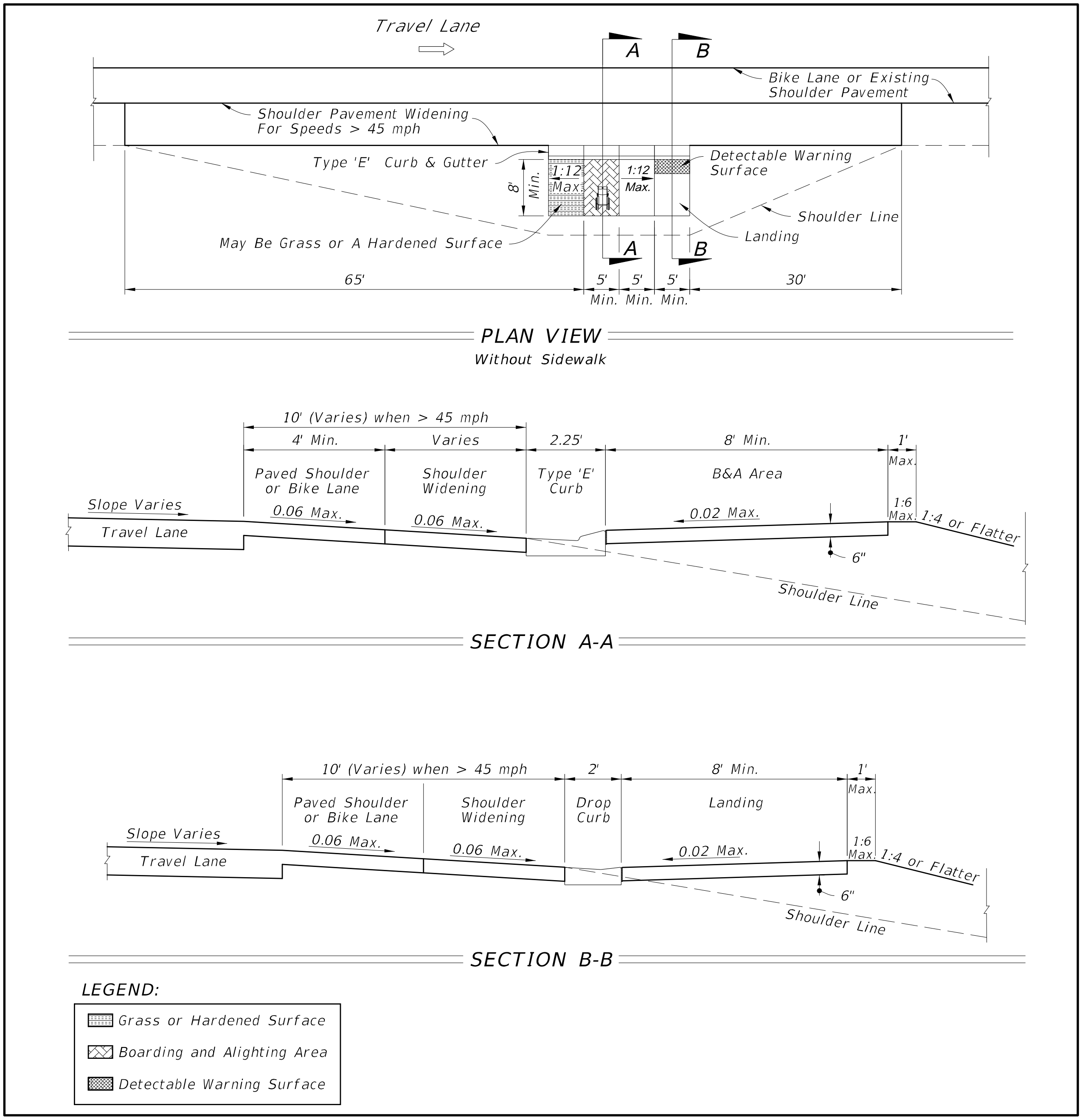
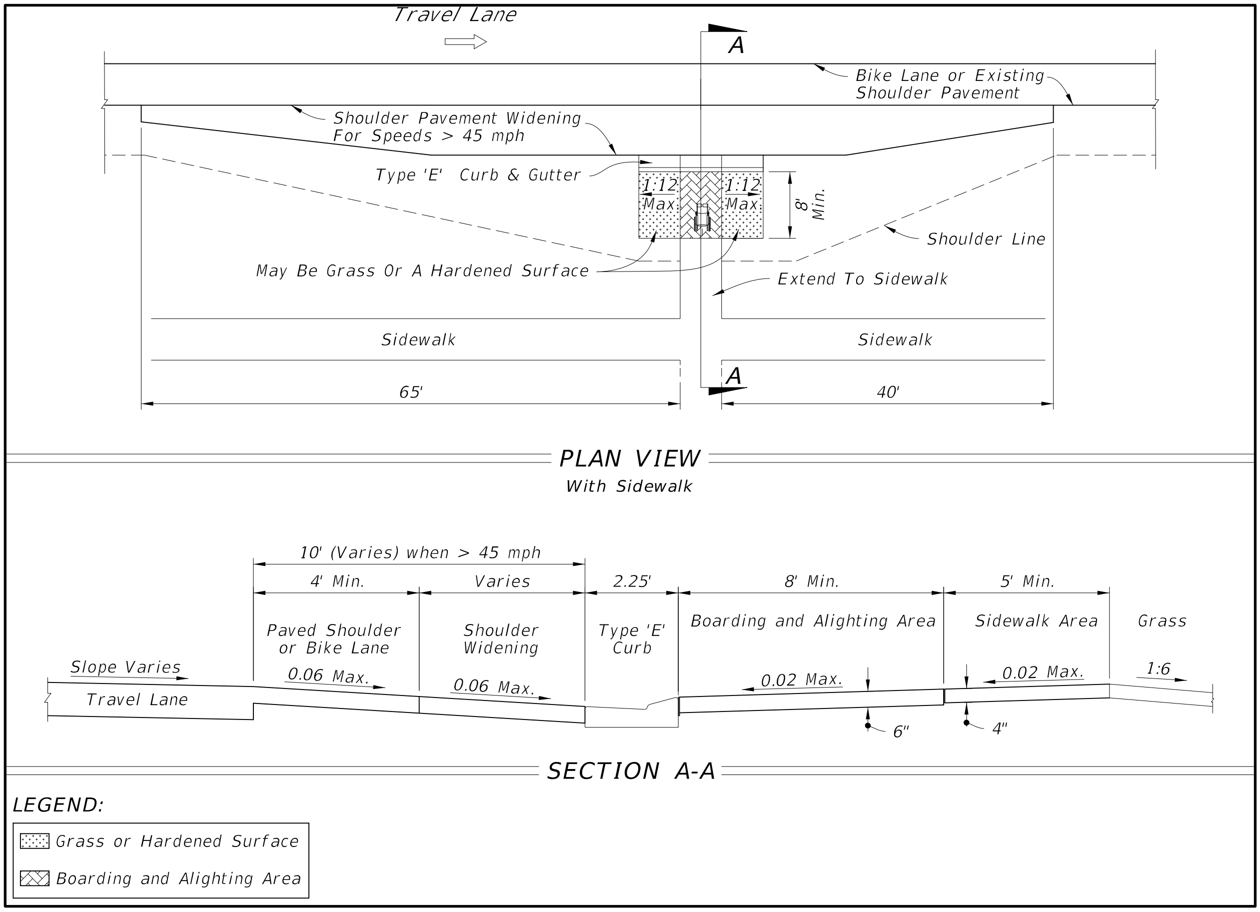


Figure 13 – 2 Boarding and Alighting Area for Flush Shoulder Roadways with Connection to the Sidewalk

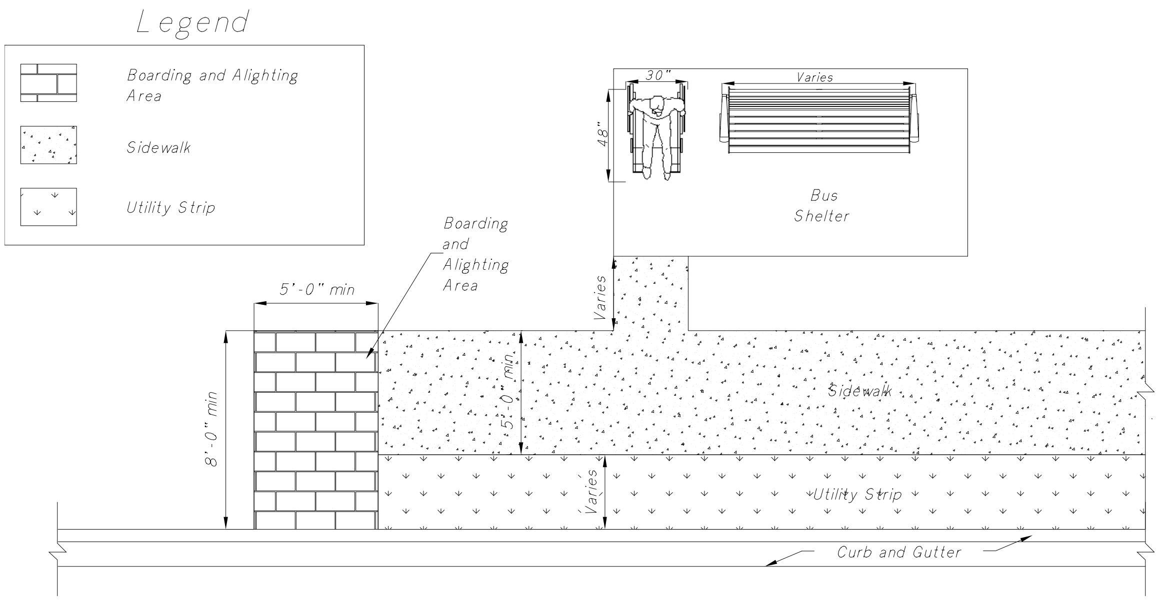


C.2 Shelters

Every public transit system has different needs with regards to shelters and corresponding amenities (e.g., benches, information kiosks, leaning posts, trash receptacles, etc.). Shelter foundation and associated pad size vary from stop to stop based on right of way availability, line of sight, and facility usage. New or replaced bus shelters shall be installed or positioned to provide an accessible route from the public way (sidewalk or roadway) to reach a location that has a minimum clear floor area of 30 inches by 48 inches, entirely within the perimeter of the shelter.

Shelters shall be connected by an accessible route to a B&A area. Coordinate with the appropriate public transit provider(s). Where feasible, shelters should provide a location for a bicycle rack. Shelters should be installed at locations where demand warrants installation and in accordance with clear zone criteria in ***Chapter 3 – Geometric Design, Section C.10.e*** Bus Benches and Transit Shelters and Chapter 4 – Roadside Design, Table 4 – 1 Minimum Width of Clear Zone of this Manual.

Figure 13 – 3 Bus Shelter Location



C.3 Benches

If a bench is provided, it should be on an accessible route, out of the path of travel on a sidewalk. Benches shall have an adjacent firm, stable and slip-resistant surface at least 30 inches wide and 48 inches deep to allow a user of a wheelchair to sit next to the bench, permitting the user shoulder-to-shoulder seating with a companion. Connection between the bench, sidewalk and/or bus B&A area shall be provided. Coordinate with the local public transit provider(s).

C.4 Stops and Station Areas

Transit stops should be located so that there is a level and stable surface for boarding vehicles. Locating transit stops at signalized intersections increases the usability for pedestrians with disabilities.

C.5 Bus Bays (Pullout or Turnout Bays)

Bus bays for transit vehicles may be necessary (e.g., extended dwell time, layover needs, safety reasons, high volumes or speed of traffic.). Bus bays can be designed for one or more buses. Coordinate with the local public transit provider(s) to determine the need for bus bays. When possible, bus bays should be located on the far side of a signalized intersection. The traffic signal will create the critical gap needed for bus re-entry into traffic. There are several publications available which provide additional design information for transit system applications. The Department District Public Transportation Office(s) maintains a library of these publications.

D PUBLIC TRANSIT FACILITIES

When a project includes a public transit route, curb-side and street-side transit facilities for bus stops should be considered in the roadway design process. Transit facilities shall comply with ***Chapter 14-20, Florida Administrative Code.***

The "Accessing Transit: Design Handbook for Florida Bus Passenger Facilities" provides guidance relating to provisions for curb-side and street-side facilities.

D.1. Curb-Side Facilities

Curb-side facilities are the most common, simple and convenient form of facilities at a bus stop. These include bus stop signs, shelters, bus stop B&A areas, benches, bike racks, leaning rails, and shelter lighting. "Accessing Transit" provides additional details and guidelines for each type of transit facility. Coordinate with the appropriate public transit provider(s) to determine the appropriate type and placement of amenities.

D.2 Street-Side Facilities

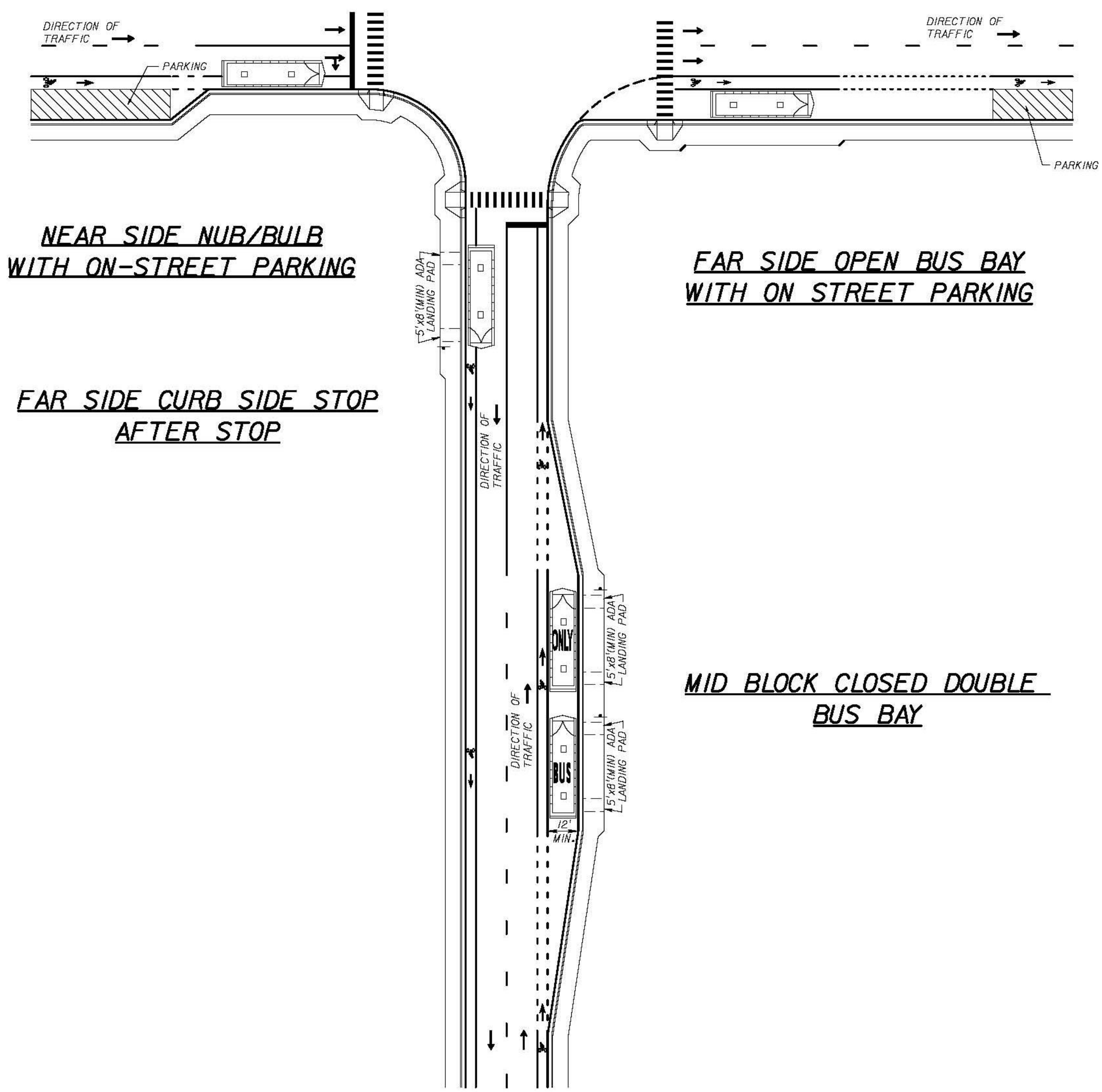
Bus stop locations can be categorized as far side, near side and mid-block stops. Bus stops may be designed with a bus bay or pullout to allow buses to pick up and discharge passengers in an area outside of the travel lane. This design feature allows traffic to flow freely without the obstruction of stopped buses. Far side bus stops and bays are preferred. See ***Accessing Transit, Version 3(2013)*** for a more detailed discussion of the location of the bus stop or bay.

Bus bays can be closed-ended, open-ended, or nubs/bulbs, and can be positioned near-side, far-side, or mid-block in relation to an intersection, as illustrated in Figure 13 – 3 Bus Shelter Location. The total length of the bus bay should allow room for an entrance taper, a stopping area, and an exit taper as a minimum. However, in some cases it may be appropriate to consider providing acceleration and deceleration lanes depending on the volume and speed of the through traffic. This decision should be based upon site specific conditions. "Accessing Transit" provides detailed bus bay dimensions for consideration with various right of way and access conditions.

D.3 Bus Stop Lighting

Lighting design for bus stops should meet the same criteria for minimum illumination levels, uniformity ratios and max-to-min ratios that are being applied to the adjoining roadway based on ***Chapter 6 – Lighting*** of this Manual. If lighting is not provided for the adjoining roadway, coordinate with the transit agency to determine if lighting should be provided for the bus stop area, particularly when night transit services are provided. A decision to install lighting for the adjoining bus stop area may include illumination of the bus bay pavement area. The use of solar panel lighting for bus stops is another option that should be considered.

Figure 13 – 4 Bus Stop Locations



E REFERENCES FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES

The following is a list of publications that may be referenced for further guidance:

- FDOT's Accessing Transit, Design Handbook for Florida Bus Passenger Facilities, Version III, 2013
  http://www.fdot.gov/transit/

- TCRP Report 155 – Track Design Handbook for Light Rail Transit, Second Edition
  http://onlinepubs.trb.org/onlinepubs/tcrp/tcrp_rpt_155.pdf

- Central Florida Commuter Rail Transit Project, Design Criteria – Phase 2 South RFP
  http://corporate.sunrail.com/wp-content/uploads/2015/06/P2S-RFP-Design-Criteria-06-15-15.pdf

- Transit facilities shall comply with Chapter 14-20, Florida Administrative Code, Private Use of Right of Way
  https://www.flrules.org/gateway/ChapterHome.asp?Chapter=14-20

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

CHAPTER 14

DESIGN EXCEPTIONS AND VARIATIONS

EXHIBITS

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

CHAPTER 14

DESIGN EXCEPTIONS AND VARIATIONS

A GENERAL

Uniform minimum standards for design, construction, and maintenance for streets and highways are contained in this Manual and meet or exceed the minimum values established by AASHTO. Consequently, the values given govern the design process. When it becomes necessary to deviate from the Manual's criteria, early documentation and approval are required.

Design Exceptions are required when proposed design elements are below both the criteria in this Manual and AASHTO's new construction criteria for the following Controlling Design Elements.

The 10 Controlling Design Elements for high speed (Design Speed ≥ 50 mph) roadways are:

- Design Speed
- Lane Width
- Shoulder Width
- Horizontal Curve Radius
- Superelevation Rate
- Stopping Sight Distance
- Maximum Grade
- Cross Slope
- Vertical Clearance
- Design Loading Structural Capacity

The 2 Controlling Design Elements for low speed (Design Speed < 50 mph) roadways are:

- Design Speed
- Design Loading Structural Capacity

When proposed design elements other than the Controlling Elements do not meet the criteria contained in this Manual, sufficient detail and justification of such deviations must be documented by the Responsible Professional Engineer as a Design Variation and submitted to the municipality or county.

This chapter provides the process for documentation and approval of Design Exceptions and Variations. The approved Design Exception or Variation submittal should be included in the project file to clearly document the action taken and the approval given.

Projects that comply with design criteria for local subdivision roads and/or residential streets adopted by ordinance do not require a Design Exception or Variation.

B RECOMMENDATIONS FOR APPROVAL

Design Exceptions and Variations are recommended by the Professional Engineer responsible for the project design element (Responsible Professional Engineer). All Design Exceptions and Variations require approval from the Maintaining Authority's Professional Engineer or Designee.

For additional information on the process to be followed for a Design Exception or Variation that involves a state facility or located on the National Highway System (NHS), please see FDOT's ***Design Manual, Chapter 122 Design Exceptions and Design Variations***

C COORDINATION

In order to allow time to research alternatives and begin analysis and documentation activities, it is critical that Design Exceptions and Variations be identified as early in the process as possible. This is preferably done during the planning phases of projects or as soon as possible during initial design.

When the need for a Design Exception or Variation has been determined, the Responsible Professional Engineer must coordinate with the Maintaining Authority's Professional Engineer or Designee and the Department (if applicable), to obtain conceptual concurrence and provide any requested documentation.

The Department will be involved only if the proposed design on the local (Non-State Highway System (SHS)) roadway is part of a Department project. For example, a Department project for a roadway on the SHS includes work on the adjacent local roads, or a Department project is exclusively on a local (Non-SHS) roadway. In these cases, the District Design Engineer will be listed for "concurrence" in the Design Exception or Variation request letter.

D JUSTIFICATION FOR APPROVAL

Sufficient detail and explanation must be given in order for the Maintaining Authority's Professional Engineer or Designee to approve the request for a Design Exception or Variation. The 10 Controlling Design Elements are considered to have significant effects on safety and the strongest case possible must be made if the designer is not able to meet these requirements. All deviations below the minimum criteria and standards in this Manual must be uniquely identified, located, and justified.

A strong case can be made if it can be shown that:

- The required criteria are not applicable to the site specific conditions.
- The project can be as safe by not following the criteria.
- The environmental or community needs prohibit meeting criteria.

Most often a case is made by showing the required criteria are impractical and the proposed design wisely balances all design impacts. The impacts required for documentation are:

- Safety and Operational performance
- Level of Service
- Right of Way impacts
- Community impacts
- Environmental impacts
- Costs
- Usability by all modes of transportation
- Long term and cumulative effects on adjacent sections of roadway

A case should not be made based solely on the basis that:

- The Department can save money.
- The Department can save time.
- The proposed design is similar to other designs.

E DOCUMENTATION FOR APPROVAL OF DESIGN EXCEPTIONS

Supporting documentation that is generated during the approval process is to accompany each submittal. Design Exceptions should include the following documentation:

1. Submittal/Approval Letter (Example shown in Exhibit 14-A)

2. Project Description:

   a) General project information, location map, existing roadway characteristics, project limits (mileposts), county section number, work mix, objectives, and obstacles.

   b) Associated or future limitations that exist as a result of public or legal commitments.

3. Project Schedule and Lifespan:

   a) Letting date and other important production dates associated with the project.

   b) Discussion of whether the deficiency is a temporary or permanent condition.

   c) Future work planned or programmed to address the condition.

4. Exception Description:

   a) Specific design criteria that will not be met (AASHTO, Florida Greenbook) and a detailed explanation of why the criteria or standard cannot be complied with or is not applicable.

   b) Proposed value for the project or location and why it is appropriate.

   c) Plan view, plan sheet, or aerial photo of the location, showing right of way lines and parcel lines of adjacent property.

   d) Photo of the area of the deficiency.

   e) Typical section or cross-section.

   f) Milepost or station location.

5. Alternative Designs Considered:

   a) Meeting AASHTO or Florida Greenbook criteria, partial correction, and the no-build (existing) condition.

6. Impacts of the Exception:

   a) Safety Performance:

      • Anticipated impact on safety, long and short term effects and of any anticipated cumulative effects.

      • Summary of the most recent 5-year crash history including any pertinent crash reports.

   b) Operational Performance:

      • Description of the anticipated impact on operations (long and short term effects) and any anticipated cumulative effects.

      • Summary of the amount and character of traffic using the facility.

      • Compatibility of the design with adjacent sections of roadway.

      • Effects on capacity and Level of Service (proposed criteria vs. AASHTO)

   c) Right-of-way

   d) Community

   e) Environment

   f) Usability by all modes of transportation

7. Anticipated Costs:

   a) Description of the anticipated costs (design, right of way, construction, maintenance).

8. Mitigation Measures:

   a) Practical mitigation measures or alternatives that were considered and any selected treatments implemented on the project.

9. Summary and Conclusions

When preparing a Design Exception, the Responsible Professional Engineer should consider potential mitigation strategies that may reduce the adverse impacts to highway safety and traffic operations. Please refer to the ***FHWA Mitigation Strategies for Design Exceptions*** ***(July 2007)*** for examples of mitigation strategies. The ***Highway Safety Manual (HSM)*** and ***Highway Capacity Manual*** provide information on quantifying and evaluating highway safety performance.

Benefit/Cost Analysis:

Calculate a benefit/cost analysis which estimates the cost effectiveness of correcting or mitigating a substandard design element. The "benefit" is the expected reduction in future crash costs and the "cost" is the direct construction and maintenance costs associated with the design. These costs are calculated and annualized so that direct comparison of alternate designs can be made.

A benefit/cost ratio equal to or greater than 1.0 indicates it may be cost effective to implement a particular design; however, the final decision is a management decision which considers all factors and applies sound engineering judgement. Key factors in the analysis are:

a) Evaluation of crashes by type and cause

b) Estimate of crash costs (based on property damage and severity of injuries)

c) Selection of a crash reduction factor based on proposed mitigation strategy

d) Selection of a discount rate (typically 4% for roadway projects)

e) Estimate of construction and maintenance costs

f) Selection of service life of the improvements

NOTE: The Department's ***Design Manual, Chapter 122 Design Exceptions and Design Variations*** provides guidance for the benefit/cost analysis, and may be used. The Department provides a useful tool, called ***Benefit Cost Analysis Spreadsheet Tool*** (BCAnalysis.xlsm), to aid in determining the benefit/cost ratio.

Conclusion and Recommendation:

a) The cumulative effect of other deviations from design criteria

b) Safety mitigating measures considered and provided

c) Summarize specific course of action

F DOCUMENTATION FOR APPROVAL OF DESIGN VARIATIONS

When proposed design elements other than the Controlling Elements do not meet the criteria contained in this Manual, sufficient detail and justification of such deviations must be documented by the Responsible Professional Engineer as a Design Variation and submitted to the municipality or county. The documentation, submittal and approval requirements for Design Variations are similar to that for Design Exceptions described in this chapter.

Design Variations should include:

a) Design criteria versus proposed criteria.

b) Reason the design criteria are not appropriate.

c) Justification for the proposed criteria.

d) Review and evaluation of the most recent 5 years of crash history where appropriate.

e) Background information which documents or justifies the request.

G FINAL PROCESSING OF DESIGN EXCEPTIONS AND VARIATIONS

After receiving conceptual approval from the designated Professional Engineer representative of the municipality or county, the documentation justifying the Design Exception or Variation shall be signed and sealed by the Responsible Professional Engineer and delivered to the municipality or county. ***Exhibit 14-A Sample Request Letter for Design Exception or Variation*** provides an example of an appropriate format and should be included with the signed and sealed supporting documents. The Design Exception or Variation will be reviewed for completeness and adherence to the requirements of this Chapter.

If the Design Exception satisfies all requirements, the acknowledgment of receipt will be signed by the Maintaining Authority's Professional Engineer or Designee, and, if applicable, forwarded to the Department's District Design Engineer for concurrence.

When all signatures are obtained, the Design Exception or Variation will be returned to the Responsible Professional Engineer. The original will be retained by the municipality or County and a copy kept by the Department, if applicable.

Exhibit 14-A Sample Request Letter for Design Exception or Variation

TO: ______________________________ DATE:__________________

SUBJECT: ☐ **DESIGN EXCEPTION or** ☐ **DESIGN VARIATION**

Local road number or street name:____
Project description (limits): ____
Type construction (new, rehabilitation, adding lanes, resurfacing, etc.)____________
Design Speed ____
State and/or Federal road number (if applicable): ____________________________
FDOT Financial Project ID No. (if applicable): _________________________________

DESIGN EXCEPTION OR VARIATION FOR THE FOLLOWING ELEMENT:

( ) Design Speed	( ) Stopping Sight Distance	( ) Other (explain):
( ) Lane Width	( ) Maximum Grade	__________________
( ) Shoulder Width	( ) Cross Slope	__________________
( ) Horizontal Curve Radius	( ) Vertical Clearance	
( ) Superelevation Rate	( ) Design Loading Structural Capacity	

Include a brief statement concerning the project and items of concern.

Attach all supporting documentation to this exhibit in accordance with Chapter 14**.**

____

Recommended by:____
(Responsible Professional Engineer)

Approval:____
(Maintaining Authority's Professional Engineer or Designee)

Concurrence:____
FDOT (if applicable)

Concurrence:____
FHWA (if applicable)

CHAPTER 15

TRAFFIC CALMING

TABLES

FIGURES

CHAPTER 15

TRAFFIC CALMING

A INTRODUCTION

As Florida continues to grow, more and more of the major highways in its communities are becoming congested. This has caused many drivers to seek less crowded local residential streets as alternatives to get to their destinations. In many cases, this has meant the use of local residential streets as bypasses. The increase in traffic intrusion, volume, and speeds on residential streets has degraded the livability standards of various neighborhoods in Florida and as a result many residents complain about their environment (noise, air pollution), livability (quality of life, traffic intrusion, excessive volume, and speed of traffic), safety (as well as safety of their children, pets, and property) and physical characteristics (absence of sidewalks, etc). This chapter provides some guidance to Florida roadway planners, designers, and traffic engineers on how to address concerns about maintaining or enhancing the quality of life in residential neighborhoods by balancing the need for safety for all roadway users and adjacent property owners of the street network and maintaining the integrity of the highways networks as a whole.

B PLANNING CRITERIA

Traffic calming is the combination of mainly physical measures that reduce the negative effects of motor vehicle use, alter driver behavior, and improve conditions for non-motorized street users.

Communities undertaking a traffic calming program shall have a procedure for planning which neighborhoods and roadways qualify for participation in the program. Specifics of these methods shall be developed by the local jurisdictions. The methods will likely vary from locality to locality. However, some issues should be addressed in all communities:

- Through the public involvement process, adjacent residents and road users who are impacted by the situation should be included in identifying the concern(s).
- The need for traffic-calming measures should be confirmed by appropriate studies (license plate survey, speed, volume, crash analyses) studied.
- Once the concerns are clearly identified and confirmed by traffic studies, and documented, it will provide the focus for possible solution, prioritizing, and development of appropriate traffic calming measures. It will also help determine the best approach to address the concerns.
- When developing traffic calming measures, in addition to the affected property owners, emergency response, transit, school, and sanitation officials and any other entities impacted by the installation of such devices should be included in the review process.

Traffic calming may not be the appropriate method in all cases to address vehicle speeds, volumes, and safety. Alternative solutions or educational tools may be considered, as well as coordinated effort with law enforcement.

The application of traffic calming measures should consider possible network and access issues. A system impact analysis should be performed as part of the development process. Vehicular and pedestrian counts, speed data, and crash history of the streets under evaluation should be reviewed. Storm water and environmental impacts also need to be addressed, as well as facility type, urban and rural design factors, and driveway densities.

Design details for each traffic calming measure may vary depending on local conditions. Factors to be considered include both horizontal and vertical deflection, ease of use, emergency vehicle accessibility, ease of maintenance, and facility type. Operational considerations and geometrics are critical factors to consider as well. A list of references and resources to consider in providing more detailed design factors and information can be found at the end of this section. It may be desirable to begin with less restrictive measures and progress to more restrictive ones in stages.

Listed below are some "Do's" and "Don'ts" of the planning process for traffic calming which may be helpful in working through the design process.

Do's and Don’ts of the Planning Process

Do the following:

- Install temporary traffic calming features and monitor them for a period of time before installing the permanent features. Testing features on site prior to permanent installation will relieve resident anxiety about the impact on their own driving patters and driving behaviors will adjust to the new route circumstances.
- Have an organized program including public involvement. Plans and policies should be approved and supported by the local government. Emphasize the selected treatments(s) will be initially in a “test” mode, with permanency pending the outcome measurement. Be able to describe what is being done to keep traffic off residential streets.
- Channel public resources by prioritizing traffic calming request according to documentable criteria, setting thresholds of volume, speed, etc., to merit treatment.
- Involve the local service agencies, including fire, police, and emergency medical services personnel, from the start.
- Consult with fire department and EMS personnel to develop the preferred design, particularly with speed humps and traffic circles. Set up traffic circles with cones and have fire trucks and other emergency vehicles drive around them; this will help determine what radius is best for the vehicles used in a given area. The same process can be used in the design of speed humps.
- Review traffic patterns in the neighborhood as a whole. Avoid solving the problem on one neighborhood street by just shifting the traffic to another neighborhood street.
- Consider appropriate landscape treatments as part of the traffic calming design and implementation.

- Make certain that all signing, pavement markings, and channelization is in accordance with the Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD), the AASHTO Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets, and Roundabouts: An Informational Guide, Second Edition, National Cooperative Highway Research Program (NCHRP 672).
- Check sight distances for vehicles, pedestrians, and bicyclists. Sight distance should be consistent with the dimensions shown in Chapter 3 – Geometric Design or Chapter 16 – Residential Street Design.
- Become familiar with the traffic calming features used in other communities and assemble references so that residents can be directed where to see them.
- Decide on a safe design speed beforehand and in consultation with neighborhood residents.
- Check sight distances by visiting the site before and after installation. Do parked cars obstruct sight distances? Do landscaping or other features obstruct sight distance?
- Review the illumination at night. Are additional street lights needed? Does landscaping block the light? Is there a shadow on one side of a median or traffic circle that might hide pedestrians from view?
- Review the channelization during the day and night. Is it a clear approach from all directions? Can it be seen at night? Watch the traffic: Is the driving public confused by the signing and channelization? Make adjustments as needed.
- Review the site for utility conflicts. Is there a fire hydrant? Does it need to be moved? Are there existing utilities in the way?
- Check the storm water drainage. Will the storm drain system need to be moved or revised? Can the runoff flow through or around the device?
- Review on-street parking. Will parked cars block the access of emergency vehicles through or around the proposed neighborhood traffic control devices? Add additional no parking zones where needed. Additional enforcement of parking restrictions may be required to keep the traveled path clear.
- Include weekends in traffic counts, as residential streets may have unique travel patterns and high use periods.

Don't do the following:

- Install neighborhood traffic calming features without a well-engineered program supported by the local government and public.
- Install neighborhood traffic calming features on arterial streets (See Section 1.C.2 for a discussion of roadway classifications). Typically, physical devices are not installed on streets with volumes greater than 3,000 vehicles per day, or with posted or operating speeds of greater than 30 MPH.
- Install neighborhood traffic calming features on streets without curbs unless supplemental features or other design considerations are included to keep vehicles within the traveled way.
- Install neighborhood traffic calming features on street with grades of greater than 10 percent.
- Install neighborhood traffic calming features on major truck routes.
- Install neighborhood traffic calming features on primary emergency routes. Contact local fire, emergency service, and police departments to determine these routes. Secondary access routes should be considered on a case-by-case basis.
- Install neighborhood traffic calming features on curving or winding roads with limited sight distance, unless reduced speed limits and adequate warning signs are used in conjunction with the devices.
- Place neighborhood traffic calming features in front of driveways.
- Neglect to check for conflicting utilities or drainage considerations.
- Install physical features on adjacent parallel routes, unless feasible design alternatives have been agreed upon, as this prevents or hinders emergency response.

C INAPPROPRIATE TRAFFIC CALMING TREATMENTS

C.1 Stop Signs

Unwarranted stop signs should not be used for traffic calming for the following reasons:

- Increase midblock speeds along the street because of drivers trying to make up for lost time
- Increase noise because of quick accelerations and decelerations
- Increase pollution
- Reduce drivers' expectation of a uniform flow
- Relocate the problem
- Cause disrespect for stop signs by drivers and bicyclists

Stop signs shall be used only when warranted per the ***MUTCD***.

C.2 Speed Bumps

Speed bumps shall not be used on public streets. Speed bumps are severe treatments 3 to 6 inches high and 1 to 2 feet long that slow drivers to speeds of less than 10 mph. Due to their abrupt rise and required low speed they can be a hazard to motorists and bicyclists. Speed *humps*, as described in Section D under vertical deflection, should not be confused with speed *bumps*.

C.3 Other Inappropriate Treatments

There are some other treatments that have been shown to be ineffective at reducing the speed and volume of traffic on local roadways. While a temporary improvement may result, long-term improvement is not likely; consequently, their use is discouraged. These treatments include the following:

- Novelty signs -While signs such as CHILDREN AT PLAY, SENIORS CROSS HERE and SLOW DEAF CHILD may make an infrequent roadway user aware of a specific local population, most regular users of the roadway are unaffected by the signs.

- Odd speed limit - NEIGHBORHOOD SPEED LIMIT 23 MPH and other odd speed limit signs place a high dependence on police to monitor speeders and are not consistent with the national practice required by the ***MUTCD*** of posting speeds limits in 5 mph increments.
- Crosswalks – Standard crosswalks marked only with signs and pavement markings do not affect motorists' speeds and should not be used by themselves as traffic calming treatments.
- Bicycle lanes – Standard bicycle lanes are not traffic calming treatments. They can be used to provide space for bicyclists between the sidewalk and travel lanes but should not be used by themselves for traffic calming.
- Speed trailers – While speed trailers can be used as part of a traffic calming program for educational awareness, they have no lasting effect on motorists' behavior.
- Reduced speed limit signs – Reduced speed limits without physical traffic calming measures do not slow drivers and should not be used for traffic calming.
- Rumble strips – These applications have high maintenance requirements and can cause severe noise problems. Also, they can be an obstacle to bicyclists.

D APPROPRIATE TRAFFIC CALMING TREATMENTS

The following sections describe some of the available traffic calming strategies. This list is not exhaustive, nor do the treatments necessarily fall exclusively into only one category.

In a typical traffic calming plan various types of treatments will be used. These plans will be based upon neighborhood preferences combined with engineering judgment.

Design details for traffic calming treatments will vary with application. Specific designs will need to be determined based upon the objective of the installations.

D.1 Vertical Treatments

Vertical treatments are those that depend upon a change in vertical alignment to cause drivers to slow down. When properly used, these treatments can be effective in reducing speeds and crashes. However, consideration should be given to impacts on emergency responders, buses, and, to some extent, bicyclists and motorcyclists.

Traffic calming features that alter the vertical alignment should not be installed near fire hydrants or mailboxes.

Information on signing and pavement markings for vertical deflections can be found in the ***Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD)***.

Table 15 – 1 Vertical Treatments

Treatment	Description	Effect	Concerns	Cost
Raised Intersection	A raised plateau where roads intersect. Plateau is generally 4 inches above surrounding street.	Slows vehicles entering intersection and improves pedestrian safety.	Increases difficulty of making a turn.	Medium to High
Raised Crosswalk	Raised pedestrian crossing used in mid-block locations. Crosswalks installed on flat-top portion of speed table. See Figure 15 - 1	Reduces speed and is an effective pedestrian amenity makes pedestrians more visible.	May be a problem for emergency vehicles and vehicles with trailers.	Low to Medium
Speed Humps	Speed humps are parabolic, curved, or sinusoidal in profile, 3 to 4 inches in height and to 14 feet long. Comfortable speeds limited to 15 to 20 mph. See Figure 15 - 2.	Reduces speed.	May cause delays for emergency vehicles and impact patient comfort. May have greater impacts on longer wheelbase cars.	Low
Speed Tables	Speed tables are flat-topped speed humps, also 3 to 4 inches high but with a sloped approach taper on each side of a flat top. They are generally 20 to 24 feet long. Comfortable speeds limited to 20 to 25 mph.	Reduces speed.	May cause delays for emergency vehicles and impact patient comfort.	Low
Speed Cushions/ Pillows	Signed speed humps as described above.	Reduces speed.	May not slow all vehicles.	Low

Figure 15 – 1 Raised Crosswalk

Suwannee Street, Tallahassee, Florida

Figure 15 – 2 Speed Hump

Inside Loop Road, Orange County, Florida

D.2 Horizontal Treatments

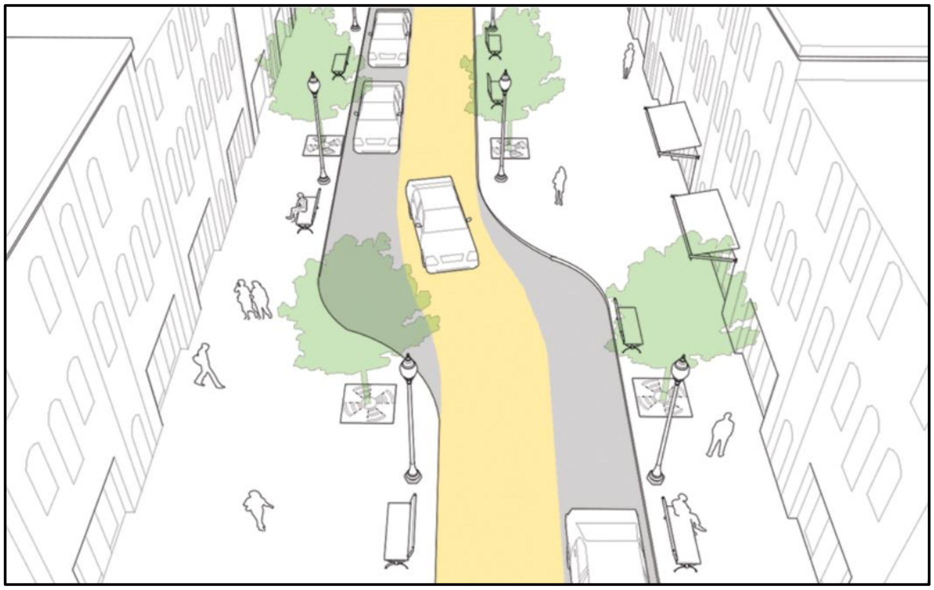
Horizontal deflection treatments are often more expensive than vertical deflection treatments. However, they have less of an impact on emergency responders and large vehicles with multiple axles. They generally do not create problems for bicyclists and motorcyclists. Because pavement area is usually reduced, additional landscaping may be possible, making horizontal deflection treatments useful as part of neighborhood beautification projects.

Information on striping and signing roundabouts can be found in the ***MUTCD***.

Table 15 – 2 Horizontal Treatments

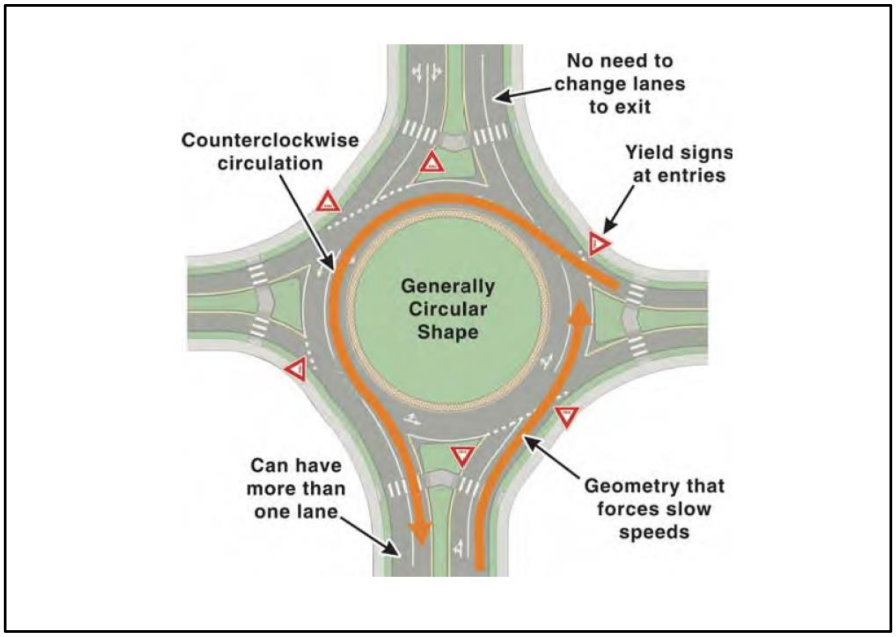
Treatment	Description	Effect	Concerns	Cost
Angled Slow Point	Angled deviation to deter the path of travel so that the street is not a straight line	Reduces speed and pedestrian crossing distance.	Landscaping must be controlled to maintain visibility. Conflicts may occur with opposing drivers.	Medium to High
Chicanes	Mainline deviation to deter the path of travel so that the street is not a straight line. See Figure 15 - 3.	Reduces speed and pedestrian crossing distance.	A chicane design may warrant additional signing and striping to ensure that drivers are aware of a slight bend in the roadway. Increases the area possible for landscaping.	Medium to High
Mini-Circles	A raised circular island in the center of an existing intersection, typically 15 to 20 feet in diameter. May have mountable truck apron to accommodate large vehicles.	Reduces speed and both the number and severity of crashes.	May restrict larger vehicles. May cause some confusion when not signed properly. Some communities have documented increased crashes when mini-circles replaced all-way stop intersections.	Low to Medium
Roundabouts	A circular intersection with specific design and traffic control features, including yield control of all entering traffic, channelized approaches, geometric curvature. May be appropriate at locations as an alternative to a traffic signal. See Figure 15 - 4.	Reduces vehicle speeds and reinforces a change in the driving environment in transition areas.	May require more space at the intersection itself than other intersection treatments. While Roundabouts have sometimes been considered traffic calming features, they are primarily traffic control measures.	High

Figure 15 – 3 Chicanes



NACTO Urban Street Design Guide, National Association of City Transportation Officials

Figure 15 – 4 Key Roundabout Characteristics



NCHRP Report 672: Roundabouts: An Informational Guide, Second Edition

D.3 Neighborhood Entry Control

Neighborhood entry control treatments include partial street closures and gateway type tools. They are used to reduce speeds and volume at neighborhood access points and may be used in conjunction with neighborhood beautification or enhancement projects and residential area identification.

Table 15 – 3 Neighborhood Entry Control

Treatment	Description	Effect	Concerns	Cost
Chokers	Midblock reduction of the street to a single travel lane for both directions.	Reduces speed and volume.	Costs increase if drainage needs to be rebuilt.	Medium to High
Gateway Treatment or Entrance Features	Treatment to a street that includes a sign, banner, landscaping, and roadway narrowing or other structure that helps to communicate a sense of neighborhood identity.	Reduces entry speed and pedestrian crossing distance. Discourages intrusion by cut through vehicles and identifies the area as residential.	Maintenance responsibility. May lose some on street parking.	Medium to High
Curb Extensions or Bulb-outs	Realignment of curb at intersection or mid-point of a block to decrease pavement width. See Figure 15 - 5.	Visually and physically narrows the roadway, shortens pedestrian crossing distance, increases space for plantings, street furniture.	May impact sight distance, parking, and drainage.	Medium to High
Midblock Median, Slow Point	An island or barrier in the center of a street that separate traffic.	Provides refuge for pedestrians and cyclists.	Landscaping may impede sight distance.	Varies
Lane Narrowing	Street physically narrowed to expand sidewalks and landscaping areas. Could include median, on street parking etc.	Improved pedestrian safety.	May create conflict with opposing drivers in narrow lanes.	Medium to High
One-Way In or One-Way Out Channelization	Intersection reduction of the street to single travel lane with channelization. Also called half road closure.	Reduces speed and traffic.	Costs increase if drainage must be rebuilt. Transfers additional vehicles to other ingress/egress points.	Medium to High
Textured Pavement	A change in pavement texture, and color (e.g., asphalt to brick), that helps make drivers aware of a change in driving environment.	Enhances pedestrian crossings, bike lanes, or on street parking.	Increase maintenance. May increase noise.	Low to Medium

Figure 15 – 5 Curb Extension or Bulb Out

First and Lee Streets, Ft. Myers, Florida

D.4 Diverters

A diverter consists of an island or curbed closure, which prevents certain movements at intersections, and reduces speeds and volumes. By diverting motorists within a neighborhood they can significantly reduce cut through traffic.

Diverters must be planned with care because they will impact the people who live in the neighborhood more than anyone else. Trip lengths increase, creating inconvenience to residents. Emergency responders must also be considered when diverting traffic.

Bicyclists and pedestrians should be provided access through traffic diverters.

Table 15 – 4 Diverters

Treatment	Description	Effect	Concerns	Cost
Diagonal Diverters	Barrier placed diagonally across an intersection, interrupting traffic flow forcing drivers to make turns.	Eliminates through traffic.	May inhibit access by emergency vehicles and residents and increase trip lengths.	Medium
Forced Turn Barrier/Diverters	Small traffic islands installed at inter-sections to restrict specific turning movements.	Reduces cut through traffic.	Could impact emergency vehicles response time.	Low to Medium
Road Closures, Cul-de-sac	One or more legs of the intersection closed to traffic.	Eliminates through traffic improving safety for all street users.	May increase volumes on other streets in the area. Access restriction may cause concerns for emergency responders. Additional right of way for proper turnaround at dead ends may be required.	Low to Medium
Median Closures	Small median islands installed at cross streets to prevent through movements and restrict left turns.	Reduces cut through traffic.	Could impact emergency vehicle responses, inhibit access, and increase trip lengths or transfer volumes to other streets.	Low to Medium

D.5 Other Treatments

These treatments are most effective when used in combination with other physical traffic calming features, and should be used as supplements.

Table 15 – 5 Other Treatments

Treatment	Description	Effect	Concerns	Cost
Pavement Markings	Highlighting various area of road to increase driver's awareness of certain conditions such as bike lanes or crosswalks. See Figure 15 - 6.	Inexpensive and may reduce speed.	May not be as effective as a structure such as curb.	Low
Traversable Barriers	A barrier placed across any portion of a street that is traversable by pedestrians, bicycles, and emergency vehicles but not motor vehicles.	Eliminates cut-through traffic.	Inconvenience to some residents.	Medium
Colored Bike Lanes or Shoulders	A bike lane or shoulder painted, covered with a surface treatment or constructed of a pigmented pavement designed to contrast with the adjacent pavement.	Visually narrows the roadway and may reduce speeds.	May not be effective on roadways with 12 foot lanes.	Low to medium

Figure 15 – 6 Bicycle Lane, Advance Yield Bar and Crosswalk

Franklin Blvd, Tallahassee, Florida

E REFERENCES FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSAES

The publications listed below are additional sources, of information related to topics presented in this chapter. Search the Internet Web for up-to-date resources using "traffic+calming" as key words.

- Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices, with Revisions 1 and 2, May 2012 (MUTCD). US Department of Transportation, Federal Highway Administration http://mutcd.fhwa.dot.gov/kno_2009r1r2.htm

- Code of Practice for the Installation of Traffic Control Devices in South Australia, July 2013. Traffic and Operational Standards Section, Department Transportation, P.O. Box. 1, Walkerville, South Australia, 5081. (updated in 2013)

- National Cooperative Highway Research Program (NCHRP) Report 672, Roundabouts: An Informational Guide, Second Edition, (2010) http://onlinepubs.trb.org/onlinepubs/nchrp/nchrp_rpt_672.pdf

- The Florida Intersection Design Guide. Florida Department of Transportation, http://www.dot.state.fl.us/officeofdesign/publicationslist.shtm

- Traffic Calming Measures - Speed Hump, Institute of Transportation Engineers, http://www.ite.org/traffic/

- New York State Supplement (2001) to the Manual of Uniform Traffic Control Devices, 2009. Transportation Planning, Highway Safety, and Traffic Engineering Division, New York State Department of Transportation, 1220 Washington Avenue, Albany, NY 12232-0204. https://www.dot.ny.gov/divisions/operating/oom/transportation-systems/repository/B-2011Supplement-adopted.pdf

- New York State Vehicle & Traffic Law, (latest edition). New York State Department of Motor Vehicles, Swan Street Building, Empire State Plaza, Albany, NY, 12228.

- Roundabout Design Guidelines, Supplement to the NCHRP 672 (October 2012). Maryland Department of Transportation, State Highway Administration http://sha.md.gov/OHD2/MDSHA_Roundabout_Guidelines.pdf

- Traffic Control Systems Handbook, Revised Edition, 2005, Federal Highway Administration, DC 20590. (Updated in 2013) http://ops.fhwa.dot.gov/publications/fhwahop06006/

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

CHAPTER 16

RESIDENTIAL STREET DESIGN

TABLES

CHAPTER 16

RESIDENTIAL STREET DESIGN

A INTRODUCTION

The street is a public way designed for the purposes of serving motor vehicles, bicycles, pedestrians, and transit vehicles. The primary function of residential streets is to provide access to homes that front those streets. The primary consideration, therefore, of residential street design should be to foster a safe and pleasant environment for the residents that live along the street, and safe traveling conditions for motorists, bicyclists and pedestrians. The convenience of motorists is a secondary consideration.

The street design should create an environment that cautions drivers that they are in a residential area where they must safely share the traveling space with pedestrians and bicyclists, both child and adult. Visual cues such as meandering streets, sidewalks, landscaping, signage, narrowed streets, changes in pavement texture (such as brick, stamped, or textured surfaces), and raised crosswalks all serve to heighten drivers' awareness for the need to maintain lower speeds. Incorporating such features into residential street design at inception will reduce or eliminate the need for traffic calming retrofits.

Section B of this chapter discusses the primary objectives of Residential Street Design in more detail, to aid the designer in the selection of proper criteria. ***Section C*** sets forth specific design criteria for residential streets.

B OBJECTIVES

The basic principles of residential street design are based on four factors:

1. Safety
2. Efficiency of Service
3. Livability and Amenities
4. Economy of Land Use, Construction, and Maintenance

The following 17 principles incorporate these factors. These principles are not intended as absolute criteria, since instances may occur where certain principles conflict. The principles should therefore be used as concepts for layout of proper street systems.

1. Adequate vehicular and pedestrian access should be provided to all parcels.
2. Local street systems should be designed to minimize through traffic movements unless it is specifically desired by the County or municipality to connect residential developments.
3. Street patterns should minimize excessive vehicular travel through connectivity between adjacent residential developments, and to larger street networks.
4. Local street systems should be logical and comprehensible, and systems of street names and house numbers should be simple, consistent, and understandable.
5. Local circulation systems and land-development patterns should not detract from the efficiency of adjacent major streets due to lack of connectivity.
6. Elements in the local circulation system should not have to rely on extensive traffic regulations and enforcement in order to function efficiently and safety.
7. Traffic generators within residential areas should be considered in the local circulation pattern.
8. The planning and construction of residential streets should clearly indicate their local function. The street's residential nature should be obvious to those driving on them.
9. The street system should be designed for a relatively uniform low volume of traffic.
10. Local streets should be designed to discourage excessive speeds.

11. Pedestrian-vehicular conflict points should be minimized.

12. The amount of space in the land development devoted to motor vehicle uses should be minimized.

13. Smaller block sizes may be used to encourage walking or bicycling. See ***Chapter 19 – Traditional Neighborhood Development*** for more information.

14. The arrangement of local streets should permit economical and practical patterns, shapes, and sizes of development parcels and provide interconnectivity without using arterials or collectors.

15. Local streets should consider and utilize topography from the standpoint of both economics and amenities.

16. Appropriate provisions for transit service within residential areas should be included.

17. Street design should consider horizontal and vertical compatibility and connectivity with sidewalks, bicycle lanes, and pedestrian walkways.

C DESIGN ELEMENTS

C.1 Design Speed

For local residential streets, design speeds of 15 to 30 mph are appropriate, depending on the adjacent development, terrain, available right of way, and other area controls. Alleys and narrow roadways intended to function as shared spaces (that is, could be used to access driveways, for garbage pickup, and travel by walking or bicycling) may have design speeds as low as 10 mph. Design speeds greater than 30 mph in residential areas require increased sight distances and radii which are contrary to the function of a local residential street.

C.2 Sight Distance

C.2.a Stopping Sight Distance

The minimum stopping sight distance is shown in Table 16 – 1 Minimum Stopping Sight Distance for Residential Streets.

Table 16 – 1 Minimum Stopping Sight Distance for Residential Streets

Design Speed (mph)	Stopping Sight Distance (feet)
10	45
15	75
20	125
25	150
30	200

C.2.b Passing Sight Distance

Passing should not be encouraged on local residential streets, and design for passing sight distance is seldom applicable on these streets. If longer straight sections and higher design and posted speeds support passing, the street shall be designed under the design criteria established in ***Chapter 3 – Geometric Design***.

C.2.c Intersection Sight Distance

Intersections shall be designed with adequate corner sight distance as set forth in Table 16 – 2 Minimum Corner Intersection Sight Distance for Residential Streets. Intersection design should take into consideration growth of landscaping and other amenities. Where a local residential street intersects a higher-order street, the design criteria of the higher-order street shall control within the right of way of the higher-order street.

Table 16 – 2 Minimum Corner Intersection Sight Distance for Residential Streets

Design Speed (mph)	Corner Intersection Sight Distance * (feet)
10	110
15	160
20	210
25	260
30	310

* Corner sight distance measured from a point on the minor road at least 14.5 feet from the edge of the major road pavement and measured from a height of eye at 3.5 feet on the minor road to a height of object at 3.5 feet on the major road.

Where stop or yield control is not used, the corner sight distance should be a minimum of 300 feet. If restrictions are unavoidable, a minimum of 200 feet is allowed with proper warning signage found in the ***Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD)*** such as an intersection warning sign (W2 series) or cross traffic does not stop here plaque (W4-4P). To maintain the minimum sight distance, restrictions on height of embankments, locations of buildings, and screening fences may be necessary. Any landscaping in the sight distance triangle should be low growing, and should not be higher than 3 feet above the level of the intersecting street pavements. Tree overhangs should be trimmed to at least 8 feet above the level of the intersections.

Intersecting streets should meet at approximately right angles. Angles of less than 60 degrees should be avoided.

C.3 Horizontal Alignment

C.3.a Minimum Centerline Radius

The minimum radii for horizontal curves are given in Table 16 – 3 Minimum Centerline Radii for Residential Streets. Typically, superelevation should not be utilized on local residential streets. Where superelevation is appropriate or required, the street shall be designed under the design criteria established in ***Chapter 3 – Geometric Design***.

Table 16 – 3 Minimum Centerline Radii for Residential Streets

Design Speed (mph)	Min. Centerline Radius (feet)
10	25
15	50
20	89
25	166
30	275

C.3.b Minimum Curb Return Radius

Where there are substantial pedestrian movements, the minimum radius of curb return where curbs are used, or the outside edge of pavement where curbs are not used shall be 15 feet. A minimum radius of 25 feet is desirable to accommodate turning movements of service vehicles.

C.4 Vertical Alignment

C.4.a Vertical Curves

Vertical curves shall be designed for a minimum stopping sight distance using the design criteria of 30 mph established in ***Chapter 3 – Geometric Design.***

C.5 Cross Section Elements

C.5.a Width of Roadway

The minimum width of a two-way residential roadway should be 20 feet from edge-of-pavement to edge-of-pavement (excluding curbs and gutters). Travel lanes should be a minimum of 10 feet wide, and wider where practicable. Under constrained conditions or in some very rural areas, lanes 9 feet or narrower may be used. Refer to ***Chapter 4*** of the ***AASHTO Guidelines for Geometric Design of Very Low-Volume Local Roads (ADT ≤ 400)***. Lanes narrower than 9 feet are prohibited in the absence of a Design Exception as provided for in ***Chapter 14 – Design Exceptions***.

When parking lanes are provided on one or both sides of the roadway, they shall be at least 7 feet wide including the gutter section where applicable.

Where curb and gutter sections are used, the roadway may be narrowed to the travel lane width (plus bike lane if present) at intersections. This will prevent parking close to the intersection, reduce crossing distances for pedestrians, provide space for curb ramps, and reduce turning speeds. By providing intersection curb extensions, the visual width of the roadway can be reduced.

C.5.b Medians

When used in residential areas, medians or traffic separators should conform to ***Chapter 3*** or ***Chapter 19***.

C.6 Cul-de-sacs and Turnarounds

C.6.a Turning Area

A residential street more than 100 feet long and open at one end only shall have a special turning area at the closed end. This turning area should be circular and have a radius appropriate to the types of vehicle expected. The minimum outside radius of a cul-de-sac shall be 30 feet. In constrained circumstances, other turning configurations such as a “hammerhead” may be considered. Cul-de-sacs can detract from connectivity if used excessively or inappropriately.

C.7 Pedestrian Considerations

C.7.a Sidewalks

In residential areas, sidewalks should be provided on both sides of the street. The sidewalks should be located as far as practicable from the travel lanes and usually close to the right of way line. In certain circumstances, such as where lots are very large or there are environmental limitations, sidewalk on only one side may be considered. Along collector roadways shared use paths may be provided in lieu of sidewalks. Connectivity to and between existing public sidewalk or shared use path facilities is desired.

Pedestrian access should be provided to schools, day care facilities, parks, churches, shopping areas, and transit stops within or adjacent to the residential development. Pedestrian access to these destinations and throughout the neighborhood shall be designed for safe and convenient pedestrian circulation. Sidewalks or shared use paths between houses or to connect cul-de-sacs may be used where necessary to provide direct access.

Sidewalks, crosswalks and mid-block crossings shall be constructed under the criteria set forth in ***Section C.7.d*** of ***Chapter 3 – Geometric Design***, and ***Chapter 8 – Pedestrian Facilities***.

C.8 Bicyclist Considerations

C.8.a Bicycle Facilities

Residential roadways are generally sufficient to accommodate bicycle traffic. When specific bicycle facilities are desired they should connect to existing facilities and be designed in accordance with ***Chapter 3 – Geometric Design*** and ***Chapter 9 – Bicycle Facilities***. For bike lane transitions, see ***Chapter 9***.

C.9 Shared Use Paths

Shared use paths may be provided in lieu of sidewalks along collector roads in accordance with ***Section C.7.a***. When shared use paths are desired, they should connect to other pedestrian and bicycle facilities within or adjacent to the residential area, and connect to schools, day care facilities, parks, churches, shopping areas, and transit stops. Shared use paths shall be designed in accordance with ***Section C*** of ***Chapter 9 – Bicycle Facilities***. Shared use paths may be used by golf carts in certain areas, under certain circumstances in accordance with ***Sections 316.212, 316.2125 and 316.2126, F.S.***

C.10 Clear Zone

Clear zone requirements for residential streets shall be based on ***Chapter 3 – Geometric Design***, Table 3 – 15 Minimum Width of Clear Zone.

D REFERENCES FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES

The following is a list of publications that may be referenced for further guidance:

- AASHTO Guidelines for Geometric Design of Very Low-Volume Local Roads (ADT ≤ 400):
  https://bookstore.transportation.org/

- Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD)
  http://mutcd.fhwa.dot.gov/pdfs/2009r1r2/pdf_index.htm

CHAPTER 17

BRIDGES AND OTHER STRUCTURES

EXHIBITS

CHAPTER 17

BRIDGES AND OTHER STRUCTURES

A INTRODUCTION

Bridges provide safe passage for multimodal traffic over various obstacles along a road or path. This chapter presents guidelines and standards for designing, constructing, inspecting, and maintaining bridges as well as other structures such as walls and supports for signs, lights, and traffic signals. These standards and criteria are necessary due to the critical function these structures serve to communities throughout their lifespan. This chapter establishes uniform minimum standards and criteria for all bridges used by the public for vehicular and/or pedestrian traffic as well as other structures such as walls and supports for signs, lights, and traffic signals. The geometry of structures shall follow the standards and criteria set forth in ***Chapters 3, 8, 9***, and ***13***. Exceptions to these standards and criteria must be processed in accordance with the procedures described in ***Chapter 14***.

In addition to the design criteria provided in this chapter, the ***2006 Americans with Disabilities Act Standards for Transportation Facilities*** as required by ***49 C.F.R 37.41*** or ***37.43*** and the ***2017 Florida Building Code – Accessibility, 6th Edition*** as required by 61G20-4.002 impose additional requirements for the design and construction of pedestrian facilities on bridges or other structures. Examples of facilities include sidewalks and shared use paths, and drainage grates and inlets in or near the accessible route. Significant ADA design considerations exist for all facilities with grades that exceed 5%.

Note: This chapter applies to all bridges under local control, except for bridges constructed on or over the Department's system. For bridges constructed on and over the Department's system, as well as all bridges that will be maintained by the Department, the Department's policies, procedures, standards and specifications will apply.

B OBJECTIVES

The objectives of this chapter are as follows:

- To prescribe uniform criteria with respect to bridge and miscellaneous structures design and geometric layout.
- To alert owners to the various federal and state requirements to be included in the design, construction, maintenance, and inspection of their bridges and other structures.
- To provide practical suggestions specific to Florida on prudent structural engineering based on past experience with statutes, standards, and criteria.

C DESIGN

The design of bridges and other structures shall be led by a licensed professional engineer who shall assume responsible charge of the work. The standards and criteria included here are directed only toward specific considerations that shall be followed. Other considerations are necessary to create a comprehensive bridge design allowing owners and their engineer's flexibility in design. All bridges and other structures shall be designed in accordance with specifications (including guide specifications) published by the American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO).

C.1 Bridges - General

All bridges and other structures shall be designed in accordance with specifications (including guide specifications) published by the American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO). At a minimum, the ***AASHTO Load and Resistance Factor Design (LRFD) Bridge Design Specifications, 8th Edition (2017)*** shall be used. Any bridge reconstruction (i.e., lengthening, widening, and/or major component replacement) shall be designed as specified in this section. Record of such reconstruction shall be maintained as specified in Section D of this chapter. The remaining design life should be considered in the design.

C.2 Bridge Live Loads

In addition to the notional (HL - 93) design load specified in ***LRFD***, bridges shall also require a FL 120 permit load rating greater than 1 as defined in the Department's ***Structures Manual, Volume 1 – Structures Design Guidelines, 2018 (SDG)***. This vehicle allows for a more consistent load rating comparison considering the current bridge inventory.

C.3 Bridge Superstructure

The superstructure of a bridge is that portion of the structure that spans between its supports or piers. Considerations that shall be incorporated into the design of all superstructures will include the following:

C.3.a Girder Transportation

The Engineer of Record (EOR) is responsible for investigating the feasibility of transportation for heavy, long and/or deep girder field sections. In general, the EOR should consider the following during the design phase:

- Whether or not multiple routes exist between the bridge site and a major transportation facility.
- The transportation of field sections longer than 130 ft or weighing more than 160,000 pounds requires coordination through the Department's Permit Office during the design phase of the project. Shorter and/or lighter field sections may be required if access to the bridge site is limited by roadway(s) with sharp horizontal curvature or weight restrictions.
- On steel superstructures, where field splice locations required by design result in lengths greater than 130 feet, design and detail "Optional Field Splices" in the plans.
- For curved steel box girders, prefabricated trusses, and integral pier cap elements, size field pieces such that the total hauling width does not exceed 16 feet.

C.3.b Vertical Clearance

All new bridges over roadways and shared use paths shall be designed to meet the vertical clearance standards specified in ***Chapter 3, Section C.7.j.4.(b)***, and ***Chapter 9, Section C.6***.

All new bridges over water shall be designed to meet the following vertical clearance standards:

- To allow debris to pass without causing damage, the clearance between the design flood stage and the low member of bridges shall be a minimum of two feet. This standard does not apply to culverts and bridge-culverts.

- For crossings subject to boat traffic, the minimum vertical navigation clearance should be:

Tidewater bays and streams	6 feet above Mean High Water *
Freshwater rivers, streams, non-regulated/controlled canals, and lakes	6 feet above Normal High Water
Regulated/controlled lakes and canals	6 feet above control elevation

* For locations subject to tidal salt / brackish water splashing, a 12-foot vertical clearance above Mean High Water should be considered for bridge durability reasons.

Higher clearances apply for crossings over legislated channels under the control of the U.S. Coast Guard (USCG). Designers should also consider future navigation demands and future shared use path demands in setting the vertical clearance of a bridge.

C.3.c Railings

All traffic, pedestrian, and bicycle railings shall comply with the requirements in ***Section 13*** of ***LRFD***. Traffic railings shall meet the crash requirements of at least Test Level 3 (TL-3) for bridges with design speeds greater than 45 mph and at least TL-2 for design speeds less than or equal to 45 mph.

For pedestrian/bicycle railings, two-pipe guiderails and details similar to the Department's ***Standard Plans, Indexes 515-070 and 515-080*** may be mounted on walls or other structures where drop-off hazards are 5 feet or less. Concrete, aluminum or steel railing and details similar in strength and geometry to the Department's ***Standard Plans, Indexes 515-021 thru 515-080 and 521-820 thru 521-825*** shall be used (or modified to suit environmental runoff concerns) where drop-off hazards are greater than 5 feet. See ***Standard Plans Instructions*** for more information.

C.3.d Expansion Joints

The number of joints should be minimized to reduce the inspection and maintenance needs of the bridge.

C.3.e Drainage

All bridge designs shall include a drainage design that is specific to its site. Conveyance of drainage off the bridge roadway should be designed to meet spread standards contained in the Department's ***Drainage Manual, (2019)*** and may include open systems (i.e., scuppers) or closed systems (i.e., inlets and pipes) based on environmental permitting restrictions. Drainage from the bridge should not drop onto traffic below. Longitudinal conveyance piping attached to bridges is expensive and maintenance-intensive, and should be avoided whenever possible.

Conveyance of drainage off pedestrian facilities shall be designed to provide an accessible route for pedestrians. Further guidance on the design of bridge deck drainage may be found in the current version of ***FHWA Publication HEC-21, "Design of Bridge Deck Drainage."***

C.3.f End Treatments

Requirements for end treatments of structures are given in ***Chapter 4 – Roadside Design***. Bridge barriers shall be designed to accommodate connection of a guardrail transition or energy absorbing system.

C.4 Bridge Substructure

The substructure of a bridge consists of all elements below the superstructure including its bearings, piers, and foundations. For guidance on bridges vulnerable to coastal storms, see ***SDG, Section 2.5***. Considerations that shall be incorporated into the design of all substructures include the following:

C.4.a Scour

A hydrologic/hydraulic analysis shall be performed to quantify expected stages and flows at the bridge site. Anticipated substructure scour shall be developed for the following conditions:

Hydraulic Design Flood Frequency	Scour Design Flood Frequency	Scour Design Check Flood Frequency
Q_{10}	Q_{25}	Q_{50}
Q_{25}	Q_{50}	Q_{100}
Q_{50}	Q_{100}	Q_{500}
Notes: "Q" is the common term used for flow rate, an expression of volume of fluid which passes per unit of time. "x" is the return period in years (10, 25, 50, 100, 500).		

Any exceptions to the standards above hydrologic/hydraulic and scour analysis requirements shall be approved in writing by the Department's local District Drainage Engineer. Methodology for computing bridge hydrology/hydraulics and bridge scour should follow the guidelines set forth in the Department's ***Drainage Manual (2019).*** Further guidance and training may be obtained through ***FHWA Hydraulic Engineering Circulars (HEC) "HEC-18"*** and ***"HEC-20"*** and the Department's training courses on these topics. Additionally, for larger bridges (>120,000 sq. ft.), hydraulic designers may wish to consult with the local Department District Drainage Engineer for case-specific guidance. The ***SDG, Section 2.11*** and ***2.12*** and the Department's ***Drainage Manual, (2019)*** provide guidance on scour load combinations with other loads.

C.4.b Navigation Aids and Vessel Collision

All bridges over USCG designated navigable waterways shall include bridge fender systems and consideration for potential vessel collision.

For guidance on navigation aids and bridge fender system design, see SDG Section 314. For guidance on vessel collision design see ***SDG, Section 2.11*** and ***LRFD, Section 3.14.***

C.4.c Pier Locations

All bridges over roadways shall have substructures supports set back from vehicular traffic lanes in accordance with ***Chapter 3, Section C.7.j.4.(a)***.

All bridges over water shall have substructure supports located with horizontal clearance requirements as listed below. In this case, horizontal clearance is defined as the clear distance between piers, fender systems, culvert walls, etc., projected by the bridge normal to the flow.

- For crossings subject to boat traffic a minimum horizontal clearance of 10 feet shall be provided.
- Where no boat traffic is anticipated, horizontal clearance shall be provided consistent with debris conveyance needs and structure economy.

C.5 Retaining and Noise Walls

The design of conventional, anchored, mechanically stabilized, and prefabricated modular retaining wall structures shall meet the requirements of ***LRFD Section 11***. Local agencies should consider using only wall types approved by the Department. These are described in ***Section 3.12*** of the ***SDG***. Local agencies should also follow the design criteria for retaining walls found in ***Section 3.13*** of the ***SDG***.

The design of noise walls should meet the requirements of the ***SDG, Section 3.16***. For noise walls within the clear zone, their design and/or protection should comply with the following:

- For noise walls attached to the top of traffic railings only use crash tested systems consistent with the design speed of the facility. The Department has standards for TL-4 systems that meet the requirements of ***NCHRP Report 350 or the Manual for Assessing Safety Hardware (MASH)***.
- Non-crash tested noise walls may be attached to structures if located behind an approved traffic railing and mounted at least five feet from the face of the traffic railing at deck level.

Potential existing off-site stormwater inflows through the proposed wall location should be verified in the field and considered in the wall design. For railings on top of walls, see ***Section C.3.c. Railings.***

C.6 Sign, Lighting, and Traffic Signal Supports

The design of sign, lighting, and traffic signal support structures shall meet the requirements of ***AASHTO's LRFD Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires and Traffic Signals, 1st Edition, 2018 Interim Revisions***, and the Department's ***Structures Manual Volume 3 - FDOT Modifications to LRFD Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires and Traffic Signals (LRFDLTS-1)***.

C.7 Pedestrian Bridges

For guidance on pedestrian bridges, see ***SDG Chapter 10***.

D CONSTRUCTION

During the construction of a bridge or any structure at, over, or near a public facility, safety awareness is necessary and precautions shall be taken to protect the public. Provisions for protecting the public during construction shall be in accordance with the ***MUTCD (2009 Edition with Revision Number 1 and 2, May 2012)*** work zone traffic control procedures and the standards and criteria described in ***Chapter 11 – Work Zone Safety***. Worker safety is the responsibility of the contractor. Temporary barriers shall be installed on all bridges being widened or whose new construction is phased. Spread of stormwater on the bridge deck should be considered in planning temporary traffic routing.

During the construction of a bridge or any structure, records to be kept and maintained throughout its life shall include foundation construction records (pile driving records, shaft tip elevations, borings) and as-built plans. These records provide critical information necessary for future inspection, maintenance, emergency management, enhancement, reconstruction, and/or demolition of these structures. These records shall be delivered to the Department's local District Structures Maintenance Engineers.

Any proposed changes to the construction details or specifications shall be signed, sealed, and dated by a professional engineer licensed in the State of Florida.

E ROUTINE INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE

Title 23, Code of Federal Regulations, Part 650, Subpart C, sets forth the ***National Bridge Inspection Standards (NBIS)*** for bridges on all public roads. ***Section 650.3*** defines bridges, specifies inspection procedures and frequencies, and indicates minimum qualifications for personnel. Each state is permitted to modify its bridge inspection standards to deviate from the NBIS standards but only following approval from the FHWA.

Section 335.074, F.S., mandates safety inspection of bridges. Bridge inspectors shall be certified in accordance with ***Chapter 14-48, F.A.C***. Safety inspection of bridges shall be conducted in accordance with ***Chapter 14-48, F.A.C***.

The Department inspects all bridges in Florida, both on-system and off-system. The Department provides each local government with copies of its inspection reports. Each local government should maintain these reports to be responsive to Metropolitan Planning Organization requests for bridge rehabilitation, replacement, or enhancement designations. Please see the following for further information: ***Bridge and Other Structures Reporting Manual 850-010-030***

All on-system and off-system bridges are assigned a Bridge Number by the Department. For new bridges, local agencies shall contact the Department's local District Structures Maintenance Engineers to have a number assigned.

F BRIDGE LOAD RATING AND POSTING

Section 335.074, F.S. Safety Inspection of Bridges requires that bridges on a public transportation facility be inspected for structural soundness and safety at regular intervals. The inspection shall consider age, traffic characteristics, state of maintenance, and known deficiencies of the bridge. The governmental entity having maintenance responsibility for any such bridge shall be responsible for having inspections performed and reports prepared.

As required by ***Section 335.074, F.S***., each inspection shall be reported to the Department, using the Bridge Load Rating Summary Table form shown in Exhibit A. Further information for preparing a bridge load rating summary and fillable form may be found on the Department's ***Office of Maintenance, Bridge Load Rating*** web site.

Upon receipt of an inspection report that recommends reducing the weight limit on a bridge, the governmental entity having maintenance responsibility for the bridge shall load post the bridge within 30 days in accordance FS 335.074(5). Further requirements for reporting and posting of weight, size or speed limits on bridges are found in this statute, ***Section 316.555 F.S. Weight, load, speed limits may be lowered***. The appropriate signage shall be promptly installed in accordance with the ***MUTCD***.

For new construction or reconstruction projects, the bridge owner is responsible for providing the Department with a load rating and completed Bridge Load Rating Summary Table (see Exhibit A – Bridge Load Rating Summary Table) within 90 days of opening for on-system bridges or 180 days for off-system bridges. The bridge owner should consider requiring the engineer of record to perform the load rating.

EXHIBIT A Bridge Load Rating Summary Table

Bridge No.		**Analysis Method:** LRFR-LRFD	**FDOT Bridge Load Rating Summary Form (Page 1 of 1)**
Bridge Name			
Description			

Rating Type	Rating Type	Gross Axle Weight (tons)	Moment/Shear/Service		Dead Load Factor	Live Load Factor	Live Load Distrib. Factor (axles)	Rating Factor	Span No. - Girder No., Interior/Exterior, %Span·L	Pontis RF·Weight (tons)
Level	**Vehicle**	**Weight**	**Member Type**	**Limit**	**DC**	**LL**	**LLDF**	**RF**	**Governing Location**	**RATING**
Inventory	HL93	36	Member Type	Limit Test	NA	NA				
Operating	HL93	36	Member Type	Limit Test	NA	NA				
Permit	FL120	60	Member Type	Limit Test	NA	NA				
Max Span	FL120	60	Member Type	Limit Test	NA	NA				
Legal	SU2	17	Member Type	Limit Test	NA	NA				
	SU3	33	Member Type	Limit Test	NA	NA				
	SU4	35	Member Type	Limit Test	NA	NA				
	C3	28	Member Type	Limit Test	NA	NA				
	C4	36.7	Member Type	Limit Test	NA	NA				
	C5	40	Member Type	Limit Test	NA	NA				
	ST5	40	Member Type	Limit Test	NA	NA				

Original Design Load	enter Original Design Load		Performed by:		Date:
Rating Type, *Analysis*	enter Rating Type		Checked by:		Date:
Distribution Method	enter Distribution Method		Sealed By:		Date:
Impact Factor	enter IM	(axle loading)	FL P.E. No.:		
FL120 Gov. Span Length	enter Gov Lengtl	(feet)	Cert. Auth. No.:		
Recommended Posting	enter Posting (70)		Phone & email:		
Rec. SU Posting	enter SU posting	(tons)	Company:		
Rec. C Posting	enter C posting	(tons)	Address:		
Rec. ST5 Posting	enter ST5 postin	(tons)	*P.E. Seal*		
Floor Beam Present?	FLOOR BEAM PRESENT?				
Segmental Bridge?	SEGMENTAL BRIDGE?				
Project No. & Reason	FIN No.	Update			
Status	Status				
Software Name, Version	Enter Software Name & Version				
COMMENTS BY THE ENGINEER					
Page 1/XX. Contents: summary, narrative, plans, calcs, check.					

This 04-24-2015 table is based on requirements within the 2015 FDOT Bridge Load Rating Manual, and the BMS Coding Guide; see http://www.dot.state.fl.us/statemaintenanceoffice/LoadRating.shtm

G RECOMMENDATIONS

- Involve the public in determining "*the appropriate aesthetics based upon scale, color, and architectural style, materials used to construct the facility, and the landscape design and landscape materials around the facility…" (Section 336.045, F.S.).*
- Resist the temptation to enhance the aesthetics of a bridge with non-structural appurtenances and features that are novel and therefore may have safety challenges (otherwise, consult with the Department on these safety issues).
- Consider the potential for future expansion of a bridge's capacity (vehicular transit and pedestrian) in its layout and bridge-type selection.
- Use the Department's objective construction unit prices (contained in the Structures Design Guidelines, Sections 9.2 and 9.3) to select bridge type(s) to consider for final design.
- Consider the use of alternative designs (i.e., steel superstructures vs. concrete superstructures) to increase bidding competition on very large bridge construction projects.
- Invest in a comprehensive subsurface investigation of the site before any significant design of the bridge occurs (which will also help avoid unforeseen conditions during construction).
- Consult with other local officials on experiences relating to construction of other bridges in the area.
- Consider using the Department's Standard Specifications for Road and Bridge Construction with notes on the plans referencing the Owner as the local governmental agency and the Engineer as the owner's engineer.
- Consider the constructability, inspectability, and maintainability of all bridge components before they are incorporated into the project's final design.
- Include drainage pass-throughs in wall designs.
- Provide qualified construction inspection personnel for all phases of bridge construction.
- Maintain all design and construction records in a safe, protected, and secure location throughout the life of the bridge.

H REFERENCES FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES

The publications referenced in this chapter can be obtained from the following websites.

- FDOT Publications may be found at:
  http://www.fdot.gov/publications/
- AASHTO, all publications may be ordered from:
  bookstore.transportation.org
- FHWA "HEC-18" and "HEC-20" may be found at:
  http://www.fhwa.dot.gov/engineering/hydraulics/library_listing.cfm
- 2006 Americans with Disabilities Act Standards for Transportation Facilities
  http://www.access-board.gov/guidelines-and-standards/transportation/facilities/ada-standards-for-transportation-facilities
- 2017 Florida Accessibility Code for Building Construction
  https://codes.iccsafe.org/public/document/FAC2017

CHAPTER 18

SIGNING AND MARKING

TABLES

FIGURES

CHAPTER 18

SIGNING AND MARKING

A INTRODUCTION

Signing and pavement markings help improve highway safety by providing guidance information to road users. Both signs and pavement markings should provide sufficient visibility to meet the user's needs. The design of signs and pavement markings should complement the basic highway design. Designers and engineers should also be aware of the capabilities and needs of seniors, and consider appropriate measures to better meet their needs and capabilities.

Sections C and D of this chapter specifically discuss traffic control devices for both signing and pavement marking that accommodate not only the needs of all types of road users, but also the special needs of seniors.

B BACKGROUND

Section 316.0745, F.S., requires the Department compile and publish a manual of uniform traffic control devices for use on the streets and highways of the state. To comply with this statute, the Federal Highway Administration's (FHWA) ***Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD)*** has been adopted for use in ***Rule 14-15.010, F.A.C.:*** All references in this chapter are in conformance with the ***MUTCD***:

The ***Manual on Speed Zoning for Highways, Roads, and Streets in Florida (2019)***, is adopted for use by the State of Florida under ***Rule 14-15.012, F.A.C***. This manual is prepared by the Department in compliance with ***Chapter 316, F.S.***, to promote uniformity in the establishment of state, municipal, and county speed and school zones throughout the State.

C SIGNS

C.1 Advance Street Name Signs

The use of advance street name signs provides advance notification to road users to assist them in making safe roadway decisions. Signs should be used for signalized or non-signalized intersections that are classified as a minor arterial or higher, or a cross street that provides access to a traffic generator or possesses other comparable physical or traffic characteristics deemed to be critical or significant.

C.1.a Standards

The words Street, Boulevard, Avenue, etc., may be abbreviated, deleted or reduced in size to conserve sign panel length. However, if confusion would result due to similar street names in the area, the deletion should not be made.

Use of the local name is preferred on advance street name signs. When a cross street has a different name on each side of the intersection, both names shall be shown with an arrow beside each name to designate direction. Additional legend such as NEXT SIGNAL or XX FEET may be added.

C.1.b Installation

Advance street name signs should be installed in advance of the intersection in accordance with the distances shown in "Condition A" of ***Table 2C-4. Guidelines for Advance Placement of Warning Signs of the MUTCD***. These distances are to be considered the minimum for a single lane change maneuver, and should be measured from the begin taper point for the longest auxiliary lane designed for the intersection. The degree of traffic congestion and the potential number of lane change maneuvers that may be required should also be considered when determining the advance placement distance.

C.1.c Sign Design

Advance street name signs shall be designed in accordance with ***Part 2 Signs*** of the ***MUTCD***. The lettering for the signs shall be composed of a combination of lower case letters with initial upper case letters.

Letter height should conform to Table 18 – 1 Design Guidelines for Advance Street Name Signs. Various layouts for advance street name signs are shown in Figure 18 – 1 Examples of Advance Street Name Signs.

Table 18 – 1
Design Guidelines for Advance Street Name Signs

Posted Speed Limit	**Street Name Legend**	**Next Signal or Intersection**
	Letter Size (inches) Series E Modified (EM) Upper/Lower Case Letters	**Letter Size (inches) Series D (D) Upper Case Letters**
35 mph or less	8 EM	6 D
40 mph or greater	10.67 EM	8 D

Figure 18 – 1
Examples of Advance Street Name Signs

C.2 Advance Traffic Control Signs

Advance Traffic Control signs, i.e., Stop Ahead (W3-1), Yield Ahead (W3-2), and Signal Ahead (W3-3) signs, shall be installed on an approach to a primary traffic control device that is not visible for a sufficient distance to permit the driver to respond to the device. The visibility criteria for traffic signals shall be based on having a continuous view of at least two signal faces for the distance specified in ***Table 4D-2. Minimum Sight Distance for Signal Visibility*** of the ***MUTCD***.

An Advance Traffic Control sign may be used for additional emphasis of the primary traffic control device, even when the visibility distance to the device is satisfactory.

C.3 Overhead Street Name Signs

Overhead street name signs with mixed-case lettering should be used at major intersections (with multi-lane approaches) as a supplement to post mounted street name signs.

C.3.a Standards

Overhead street name signs shall only be used to identify cross streets, not destinations such as cities or facilities. To avoid the need for lighting of overhead signs, they should have a minimum maintained retroreflectivity value as shown in ***Table 2A-3. Minimum Maintained Retroreflectivity Levels, MUTCD***. Roadway geometry and forward sight distance will also influence the need for overhead sign lighting.

The words Street, Boulevard, Avenue, etc., may be abbreviated, deleted or reduced in size to conserve sign panel length. The border should be eliminated on overhead street name signs to minimize sign panel size. When a cross street is known by both a route number and a local name, use of the local name is preferred.

When a cross street has a different name on each side of the intersection, two options are permitted:

- When two sign panels are used, install one sign panel on the left and the other sign panel on the right side of the signal heads; or
- When one sign panel is used, the left name should be displayed over the right name. Arrows should be provided to indicate which side of the

intersection the street name applies.

C.3.b Installation

Due to the possibility of hurricane strength winds, overhead street name signs should not be installed on span wire but should be mounted to the strain pole or mast arm.

The location of the overhead street name sign on a signal strain pole and/or mast arm may vary. However, it shall not interfere with the motorist's view of the signal heads. The preferred location is shown in the Department's ***Standard Plans, Index 700-050***.. In the case of separate street names on each side of the street, where separate signs are used, one sign should be placed to the right of the signal heads and the other sign to the left of the signal heads.

C.3.c Sign Design

On roadways with speeds of 40 mph or above, the sign panel should be at least 24 inches in height with the length determined by text. At a minimum, use 8-inch upper case and 6-inch lower case lettering for the street name. If block numbering text is included, use 6-inch all upper case lettering on the second line. The preferred font is Series E-Modified; however, Series E may be used to accommodate the amount of legend so as not to exceed the 96-inch maximum length.

Where structurally possible, overhead street name signs should be designed in compliance with the FHWA recommendations for older drivers using a minimum lettering size of 10-inch upper case with 9-inch lower case.

C.3.d Internally Illuminated Overhead Street Name Signs

An internally illuminated overhead street name sign may be used to improve night-time visibility. Internally illuminated overhead street name signs should have a standardized height of 24-inches and a length not to exceed 108-inches (nine feet).

A Series E Modified or Series E font, which may vary to accommodate the amount of text on the panel should be used.

The sign design shall be in accordance with the ***MUTCD.*** When possible, the text should utilize the following text attributes in descending order to limit the maximum width:

- 10-inch upper case with 8-inch lower case, Type EM font
- 10-inch upper case with 8-inch lower case, Type E font
- 8-inch upper case with 6-inch lower case, Type EM font
- 8-inch upper case with 6-inch lower case, Type E font

Internally illuminated overhead street name signs shall be on the Department's ***Approved Products List (APL)***.

C.4 Community Wayfinding Guidance

Community wayfinding guide signs should be developed and approved through local resolution with criteria for the destinations shown on the community wayfinding guide sign system plan. Any wayfinding guide sign should be used in accordance with ***Rule 14-51.030, F.A.C.*** The intent is to provide guidance and navigation information to local cultural, historical, recreational, and tourist activities. No destination should be displayed for the purpose of advertising.

C.5 DMS Overview

The main purpose of dynamic message signs (DMS) is to convey timely and important en-route and roadside information to motorists and travelers. Further information on how DMS signs may be used can be found in FDOT's policy on ***Displaying Messages on Dynamic Message Signs Permanently Mounted on the State Highway System***.

C.6 Design Details for Signs

The ***MUTCD*** shall govern all sign details. At a minimum, the "Conventional Road" size shall be used on signs intended for motor vehicle operators.

Shared use path sign sizing for traffic control shall follow the "Shared-Use Path" sizing and height shown in the MUTCD. See ***Chapter 9 – Bicycle Facilities*** for additional requirements on the signing of shared use paths.

D PAVEMENT MARKINGS

D.1 6-inch Pavement Markings

6-inch pavement markings should be used for all pavement center line, lane separation line and edge line markings.

D.2 Reflective Pavement Markers

To provide greater emphasis and increase visibility, reflective (raised) pavement markers (RPM) may be placed at 40-foot spacings along the centerline markings of roadways.

E AUDIBLE AND VIBRATORY TREATMENTS

E.1 Longitudinal Audible Vibratory Treatments

Longitudinal audible and vibratory treatments are a countermeasure to reduce the severity and frequency of roadway departure crashes. They include cylindrical ground-in rumble strips, sinusoidal ground-in rumble strips and profiled thermoplastic. They are most effective on high speed roadways with flush shoulders. They should not be placed within the limits of intersections or crosswalks.

Audible vibratory treatments are designed to improve the opportunity for a safe recovery for distracted, drowsy, or otherwise inattentive drivers who may unintentionally drift over the edge or center line. Due to the difficulty in determining where a driver will depart the lane, it is recommended that treatments be installed system-wide or in corridors, Their use should be determined on the suitability of the cross-section and appropriateness in the surrounding land use context.

Considerations that may limit the acceptability and effectiveness include low speeds, noise for adjacent residences, and pavement width. More information on these types of treatments are shown in the Department's ***Standard Plans, Index 546-010*** and ***Design Manual, Chapter 210 Arterials and Collectors.***

E.2 Transverse Rumble Strips

Transverse rumble strips may be used to alert the driver to upcoming stop conditions or abrupt changes in alignment. Factors influencing their use include crash history, roadway geometry and surrounding land use (noise pollution). They should not be placed in crosswalks or bicycle facilities. If placed on roadways open to bicycle travel, a minimum clear path of 4 feet on the outside edge should be provided. ***Sections 3J.02 Transverse Rumble Strip Markings*** and ***6F.87 Rumble Strips, MUTCD*** provide further information on the use of transverse rumble strips.

CHAPTER 19

TRADITIONAL NEIGHBORHOOD DEVELOPMENT

TABLES

FIGURES

CHAPTER 19

TRADITIONAL NEIGHBORHOOD DEVELOPMENT

A INTRODUCTION

Florida is a national leader in planning, design and construction of Traditional Neighborhood Development (TND) communities, and in the renovation of downtown neighborhoods and business districts. TND refers to the development or redevelopment of a neighborhood or town using traditional town planning principles. Projects should include a range of housing types and commercial establishments, a network of well-connected streets and blocks, civic buildings and public spaces, and include other uses such as stores, schools, and worship within walking distances of residences.

They represent patterns of development aligned with the state's growth management, smart growth and sprawl containment goals. This approach, with its greater focus on pedestrian, bicycle and transit mobility; is distinct from Conventional Suburban Development (CSD). CSDs are comprised largely of subdivision and commercial strip development.

TND communities rely on a strong integration of land use and transportation. A TND has clearly defined characteristics and design features that are necessary to achieve the goals for compact and livable development patterns reinforced by a context-sensitive transportation network. The treatment of land use, development patterns and transportation networks necessary for successful TND communities is a major departure from those same elements currently utilized in other Greenbook chapters.

To provide a design that accomplishes the goals set out in this chapter, designers will be guided by the context of the built environment, established or desired, for a portion of the communities because TND communities rely on a stronger integration of land use and transportation than CSD communities. This chapter provides criteria that may be used for the design of streets within a TND when such features are desired, appropriate and feasible. This involves providing a balance between mobility and livability. This chapter may be used in planning and designing new construction, urban infill, and redevelopment projects.

Section B of this chapter discusses the primary objectives of TND in more detail to aid the designer in the selection of proper criteria. Section C sets forth specific design criteria for the transportation system within TND.

The Department's ***Traditional Neighborhood Development Handbook (2011)*** provides designers guidance in the successful application of this Chapter.

B APPLICATION

A project or community plan may be considered a TND when at least the first seven of the following principles are included:

1. Has a compact, pedestrian-oriented scale that can be traversed in a five to ten-minute walk from center to edge.
2. Is designed with low speed, low volume, interconnected streets with short block lengths, 150 to 500 feet, and cul-de-sacs only where no alternatives exist. Cul-de-sacs, if necessary, should have walkway and bicycle connections to other sidewalks and streets to provide connectivity within and to adjacent neighborhoods.
3. Orients buildings at the back of sidewalk, or close to the street with off-street parking located to the side or back of buildings, as not to interfere with pedestrian activity.
4. Has building designs that emphasize higher intensities, narrow street frontages, connectivity of sidewalks and paths, and transit stops to promote pedestrian activity and accessibility.
5. Incorporates a continuous bike and pedestrian network with wider sidewalks in commercial, civic, and core areas, but at a minimum has sidewalks at least five feet wide on both sides of the street. Accommodates pedestrians with short street crossings, which may include mid-block crossings, bulb-outs, raised crosswalks, specialty pavers, or pavement markings.
6. Uses on-street parking adjacent to the sidewalk to calm traffic, and offers diverse parking options, but planned so that it does not obstruct access to transit stops.
7. Varies residential densities, lot sizes, and housing types, while maintaining an average net density of at least eight dwelling units per acre, and higher density in the center.
8. Integrates at least ten percent of the developed area for nonresidential and civic uses, as well as open spaces.
9. Has only the minimum right of way necessary for the street, median, planting strips, sidewalks, utilities, and maintenance that are appropriate to the adjacent land uses and building types.
10. Locates arterial highways, major collector roads, and other high-volume corridors at the edge of the TND and not through the TND.

The design criteria in this chapter shall only be applicable within the area defined as TND.

C PLANNING CRITERIA

Planning for TND communities occurs at several levels, including the region, the city/town, the community, the block, and, finally, the street and building. Planning should be holistic, looking carefully at the relationship between land use, buildings, and transportation in an integrated fashion. This approach, and the use of form based codes, can create development patterns that balance pedestrian, bicycling, and transit with motor vehicle transportation.

C.1 LAND USE

In addition to its importance in calculating trip generation, the Institute of Transportation Engineers (ITE) recognizes land use as fundamental to establishing context, design criteria, cross-section elements, and right of way allocation. The pedestrian travel that is generated by the land uses is also important to the design process for various facilities.

A well-integrated, or “fine grained”, land use mix within buildings and blocks is essential. These buildings and blocks aggregate into neighborhoods, which should be designed with a mix of uses to form a comprehensive planning unit that aggregates into larger villages, towns, and regions. Except at the regional scale, each of these requires land uses to be designed at a pedestrian scale and to be served by “complete streets” that safely and attractively accommodate many modes of travel.

The proposed land uses, residential densities, building size and placement, proposed parking (on-street and off-street) and circulation, the location and use of open space, and the development phasing are all considerations in facility design for TNDs. ITE recommends a high level of connectivity, short blocks that provide many choices of routes to destinations, and a fine-grained urban land use and lot pattern. Higher residential density and nonresidential intensity, as measured by floor area ratios of building area to site area, are required for well-designed TNDs.

C.2 NETWORKS

Urban networks are frequently characterized as either traditional or conventional. Traditional networks are typically characterized by a relatively non-hierarchical pattern of short blocks and straight streets with a high density of intersections that support all modes of travel in a balanced fashion.

Figure 19 – 1 Traditional Network

New York, NY **Savannah, GA**
(Source: VHB)

The typical conventional street network, in contrast, often includes a framework of widely-spaced arterial roads with limited connectivity provided by a system of large blocks, curving streets and a branching hierarchical pattern, often terminating in cul-de-sacs.

Figure 19 – 2 Conventional Network

Walnut Creek, CA
(Source**:** VHB)

Traditional and conventional networks differ in three easily measurable respects: (1) block size, (2) degree of connectivity and (3) degree of curvature. While the last does not significantly impact network performance, block size and connectivity create very different performance characteristics.

Advantages of traditional networks include:

1. Distribution of traffic over a network of streets, reducing the need to widen roads;
2. A highly interconnected network providing a choice of multiple routes of travel for all modes, including emergency services;
3. More direct routes between origin and destination points, which generate fewer vehicle miles of travel (VMT) than conventional suburban networks;
4. Smaller block sizes in a network that is highly supportive to pedestrian, bicycle, and transit modes of travel;
5. A block structure that provides greater flexibility for land use to evolve over time.

It is important in TND networks to have a highly interconnected network of streets with smaller block sizes than in conventional networks. There are several ways to ensure that these goals are achieved.

One method is based upon the physical dimensions used to layout streets and blocks. The following list identifies those parameters:

1. Limit block size to an average perimeter of approximately 1,320 feet.
2. Encourage an average intersection spacing for local streets of 300-400 feet.
3. Limit maximum intersection spacing for local streets to approximately 600 feet.
4. Limit maximum spacing between pedestrian/bicycle connections to approximately 300 feet (that is, it creates mid-block paths and pedestrian shortcuts).

D OBJECTIVES

The basic objectives of a Traditional Neighborhood Development are:

1. Safety
2. Mobility of all users (vehicles, pedestrians, bicyclists and transit)
3. Compact and livable development patterns
4. Context-sensitive transportation network

TND features are based upon the consideration of the following concepts. These concepts are not intended as absolute criteria since certain concepts may conflict. The concepts should therefore be used for the layout of proper street systems.

1. Strong integration of land use and transportation.
2. Very supportive of pedestrian, bicycle, and transit modes.
3. Smaller block sizes to improve walkability, and to create a fine network of streets accommodating bicyclists and pedestrians, and providing a variety of routes for all users.
4. On-street parking is favored over surface parking lots.
5. Limited use of one way streets.
6. Speeds for motor vehicles are ideally kept in the range of 20-35 mph through the design of the street, curb extensions, use of on-street parking, the creation of enclosure through building and tree placement.
7. Street geometry (narrow streets and compact intersections), adjacent land use, and other elements within a TND must support a high level of transit, pedestrian and bicycle activity.
8. Provide access to emergency services, transit, waste management, and delivery trucks.
9. Provide access to property.

This approach to street design requires close attention to the operational needs of transit, fire and rescue, waste collection, and delivery trucks. For this reason, early coordination with transit, fire and rescue, waste collection, and other stakeholder groups is essential. For fire and rescue, determination of the importance of that corridor for community access should be determined, e.g. primary or secondary access.

More regular encroachment of turning vehicles into opposing lanes will occur at intersections. Therefore, frequency of transit service, traffic volumes, and the speeds at those intersections must be considered when designing intersections.

When designing features and streets for TND communities, creativity and careful attention to safety for pedestrians and bicyclists must be balanced with the operational needs of motor vehicles.

Finally, it is very important when designing in TND communities to ensure that a continuous network is created for pedestrians, bicyclists, and transit throughout the community to create higher levels of mobility that are less dependent on automobile travel.

E DESIGN ELEMENTS

The criteria provided in this chapter shall require the approval of the maintaining authority's designated Professional Engineer representative with project oversight or general compliance responsibilities. Approval may be given based upon a roadway segment or specific area.

The criteria provided in this chapter are generally in agreement with AASHTO guidelines with a special emphasis on urban, low-speed environments. Design elements within TND projects not meeting the requirements of this chapter are subject to the requirements for Design Exceptions found in ***Chapter 14*** of this manual.

E.1 Design Controls

E.1.a Design Speed

The application of design speed for TND communities is philosophically different than for conventional transportation and CSD communities. Traditionally, the approach for setting design speed was to use as high a design speed as practical.

In contrast to this approach, the goal for TND communities is to establish a design speed that creates a safer and more comfortable environment for pedestrians and bicyclists, and is appropriate for the surrounding context.

Design speeds of 20 to 35 mph are desirable for TND streets. Alleys and narrow roadways intended to function as shared spaces may have design speeds as low as 10 mph.

E.1.b Movement Types

Movement types are used to describe the expected driver experience on a given thoroughfare, and the design speed for pedestrian safety and mobility established for each of these movement types. They are also used to establish the components and criteria for design of streets in TND communities.

Yield: Has a design speed of less than 20 mph. Drivers must proceed slowly with extreme care, and must yield to pass a parked car or approaching vehicle. This is the functional equivalent of traffic calming. This type should accommodate bicycle routes through the use of shared lanes.

Slow: Has a design speed of 20-25 mph. Drivers can proceed carefully, with an occasional stop to allow a pedestrian to cross or another car to park. Drivers should feel uncomfortable exceeding design speed due to the presence of parked cars, enclosure, tight turn radii, and other design elements. This type should accommodate bicycle routes through the use of shared lanes.

Low: Has a design speed of 30-35 mph. Drivers can expect to travel generally without delay at the design speed, and street design supports safe pedestrian movement at the higher design speed. This type is appropriate for thoroughfares designed to traverse longer distances, or that connect to higher intensity locations. This type should accommodate bicycle routes through the use of bike lanes.

Design speeds higher than 35 mph should not normally be used in TND communities due to the concerns for pedestrian and bicyclist safety and comfort. There may be locations where planned TND communities border, or are divided by, existing corridors with posted/design speeds higher than 35 mph. In those locations, coordination with the regulating agency should occur with a goal to re-design the corridor and reduce the speed to 35 mph or less. The increase in motorist travel time due to the speed reduction is usually insignificant because TND communities are generally compact.

When the speed reduction cannot be achieved, measures to improve pedestrian safety for those crossing the corridor should be evaluated and installed when appropriate.

E.1.c Design Vehicles

There is a need to understand that street design with narrow streets and compact intersections requires designers to pay close attention to the operational needs of transit, fire and rescue, waste collection, and delivery trucks. For this reason, early coordination with transit, fire and rescue, waste collection, and other stakeholder groups is essential.

Regular encroachment of turning vehicles into opposing lanes will occur at intersections. Therefore, frequency of transit service, traffic volumes, and the speeds at those intersections must be considered when designing intersections. For fire and rescue, determination of the importance of the street for community access should be determined, e.g. primary or secondary access.

The designer should evaluate intersections using turning templates or turning movement analysis software to ensure that adequate operation of vehicles can occur. Treatment of on-street parking around intersections should be evaluated during this analysis to identify potential conflicts between turning vehicles and on-street parking.

E.2 Sight Distance

See ***Chapter 3 – Geometric Design, C.3 Sight Distance.***

E.2.a Stopping Sight Distance

See ***Chapter 3 – Geometric Design, C.3.a Stopping Sight Distance***.

E.2.b Passing Sight Distance

Due to the importance of low speeds and concerns for pedestrian comfort and safety, passing should be discouraged or prohibited.

E.2.c Intersection Sight Distance

Sight distance should be calculated in accordance with ***Chapter 3, Section C.9.b***, using the appropriate design speeds for the street being evaluated. When executing a crossing or turning maneuver after stopping at a stop sign, stop bar, or crosswalk, as required in ***Section 316.123, F.S***., it is assumed that the vehicle will move slowly forward to obtain sight distance (without intruding into the crossing travel lane) stopping a second time as necessary.

Therefore, when curb extensions are used, or on-street parking is in place, the vehicle can be assumed to move forward on the second step movement, stopping just shy of the travel lane, increasing the driver's potential to see further than when stopped at the stop bar. The resulting increased sight distance provided by the two step movement allows parking to be located closer to the intersection.

The ***MUTCD*** requires that on-street parking be located at least 20 feet from crosswalks. The minimum stopping sight distance is 60 feet for low volume (< 400 ADT) streets. Even on slow speed, low volume urban streets, the combination of curb return, crosswalk width and 20-foot setback to the first parking space may not meet the minimum stopping distance. Justification for locating parking spaces 20 feet from crosswalks may be achieved based on community history with existing installations.

E.3 Horizontal Alignment

E.3.a Minimum Centerline Radius

See ***Chapter 3 – Geometric Design, C.4 Horizontal Alignment*** and Table 3 – 12 Minimum Radii (feet) for Design Superelevation Rates Low Speed Local Roads ((e_{max} = 0.05) .

E.3.b Minimum Curb Return Radius

Curb return radii should be kept small to keep intersections compact. The use of on-street parking and/or bike lanes increases the effective size of the curb radii, further improving the ability of design vehicles to negotiate turns without running over the curb return.

Table 19 – 1 Curb Return Radii

Movement Type	Design Speed	Curb Radius w/Parallel Parking*
Yield	Less than 20 mph	5-10 feet
Slow	20-25 mph	10-15 feet
Low	30-35 mph	15-20 feet

***** Dimensions with parking on each leg of the intersection. Both tangent sections adjacent to the curb return must provide for on-street parking or else curb radii must be evaluated using “design vehicle” and either software or turning templates.

E.4 Vertical Alignment

See ***Chapter 3 – Geometric Design, C.5 Vertical Alignment***.

E.5 Cross Section Elements

E.5.a Introduction

As discussed earlier in this chapter, TND street design places importance on how the streets are treated since they are part of the public realm. The street portion of the public realm is shaped by the features and cross section elements used in creating the street. For this reason, it is necessary the designer pay more attention to what features are included, where they are placed, and how the cross section elements are assembled.

E.5.b Lane Width

Travel lane widths should be based on the context and desired speed for the area where the street is located. Table 19-2 shows travel lane widths and associated appropriate speeds. It is important to note that in low speed urban environments, lane widths are typically measured to the curb face instead of the edge of the gutter pan. Consequently, when curb sections with gutter pans are used, the motor vehicle and parking lanes include the width of the gutter pan.

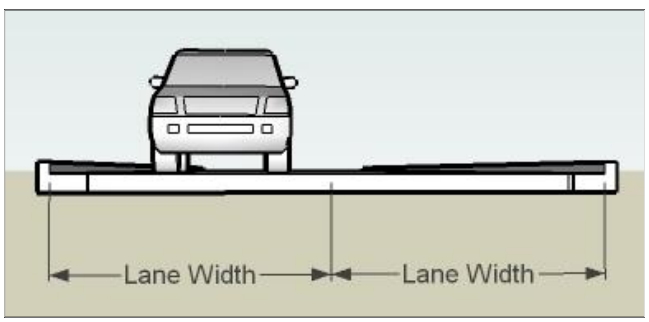
Table 19 – 2 Minimum Lane Width

Movement Type	Design Speed	Travel Lane Width
Yield*	Less than 20 mph	N/A
Slow	20-25 mph	9-10 feet
Low	30-35 mph	10-11 feet

* Yield streets are typically residential two-way streets with parking on one or both sides. When the street is parked both sides, the remaining space between parked vehicles (10 feet minimum) is adequate for one vehicle to pass through. Minimum width for a yield street with parking on both sides should be 24 feet curb face to curb face. Minimum width for a yield street with parking on one side should be 20 feet curb face to curb face, allowing for two 10-foot lanes when the street is not parked.

Figure 19 – 3 Lane Widths shows a typical measurement.

Figure 19 – 3 Lane Width



(Source: VHB)

In order for drivers to understand the appropriate driving speeds, lane widths should create some level of discomfort when driving too fast. The presence of on-street parking is important in achieving the speeds shown in Table 19 – 2 Minimum Lane Widths. When bicycle lanes or multi-lane configurations are used, there is more room for vehicles, such as buses, to operate. However car drivers may feel more comfortable driving faster than desired.

Alleys and narrow roadways that act as shared spaces can have design speeds as low as 10 mph, as noted in ***Chapter 16 – Residential Street Design***.

Alleys can be designed as either one way or two way. Right of way width should be a minimum of 20 feet with no permanent structures within the right of way that would interfere with vehicle access to garages or parking spaces, access for trash collection, and other operational needs. Pavement width should be a minimum of 12 feet. Coordination with local municipalities on operational requirements is essential to ensure that trash collection and fire protection services can be completed.

E.5.c Medians

Medians used in low-speed urban thoroughfares provide for access management, turning traffic, safety, pedestrian refuge, landscaping, lighting, and utilities. These medians are usually raised with raised curb.

Landscaped medians can enhance the street or help create a gateway entrance into a community. Medians can be used to create tree canopies over travel lanes for multi-lane roadways contributing to a sense of enclosure.

Medians vary in width depending on available right of way and function. Because medians require a wider right of way, the designer must weigh the benefits of a median with the issues of pedestrian crossing distance, speed, context, and available roadside width.

Table 19 – 3 Recommended Median Width

Median Type	Minimum Width	Recommended Width
Median for access control	4 feet	6 feet
Median for pedestrian refuge	6 feet	8 feet
Median for trees and lighting	6 feet [1]	10 feet [2]
Median for single left turn lane	10 feet [3]	14 feet [4]

Table Notes:

[1] Six feet measured curb face to curb face is generally considered the minimum width for the proper growth of small caliper trees (less than 4 inches),

[2] Wider medians provide room for larger caliper trees and more extensive landscaping,

[3] A ten foot lane provides for a turn lane without a concrete traffic separator,

[4] Fourteen feet provides for a turn lane with a concrete traffic separator.

E.5.d Turn Lanes

The need for turn lanes for vehicle mobility should be balanced with the need to manage vehicle speeds and the potential impact on the border width, such as sidewalk width. Turn lanes tend to allow through vehicles to maintain higher speeds through intersections, since turning vehicles can move over and slow in the turn lane.

Left turn lanes are considered to be acceptable in an urban environment since there are negative impacts to roadway capacity when left turns block the through movement of vehicles. The installation of a left turn lane can be beneficial when used to perform a road diet such as reducing a four lane section to three lanes with the center lane providing for turning movements. In urban areas, no more than one left turn lane should be provided.

Right turns from through lanes do not block through movements, but do create a reduction in speed due to the slowing of turning vehicles. Right turn lanes are used to maintain speed through intersections, and to reduce the potential for rear end crashes. However, the installation of right turn lanes increases the crossing distance for pedestrians and the speed of vehicles, therefore the use of exclusive right turn lanes are rarely used except at “T” intersections.

E.5.e Parking

On-street parking is important in the urban environment for the success of those retail businesses that line the street, to provide a buffer for the pedestrian, and to help calm traffic speeds. When angle parking is proposed for on-street parking, designers should consider the use of back in angle parking in lieu of front in angle parking.

Table 19 – 4 Parking Lane Width

Movement Type	Design Speed	Parking Lane Width
Slow	20-25 mph	(Angle) 17-18 feet
Slow	20-25 mph	(Parallel) 7 feet
Low	30-35 mph	(Parallel) 7-8 feet

E.6 Cul-de-sacs and Turnarounds

Cul-de-sacs should only be used where no other alternatives exist. Cul-de-sacs should have walkway or bicycle connections to other sidewalks and streets to provide connectivity within and to adjacent neighborhoods.

E.6.a Turning Area

A residential street open at one end only should have a special turning area at the closed end. A residential street more than 100 feet long and open at one end only shall have a special turning area at the closed end. This turning area should be circular and have a radius appropriate to the types of vehicle expected. The minimum outside radius of a cul-de-sac shall be 30 feet. In constrained circumstances, other turning configurations such as a “hammerhead” may be considered.

E.7 Pedestrian Considerations

In urban environments, the "border," or area between the face of a building or right of way line and the curb face, serves as the pedestrian realm because it is the place for which pedestrian activity is provided, including space to walk, socialize, places for street furniture, landscaping, and outdoor cafes. In an urban environment, the border consists of the furniture, walking and shy zones.

Figure 19 – 4 Border

(Source: VHB)

E.7.a Furniture Zone

The furniture zone can be located adjacent to the building face, but more commonly is adjacent to the curb face. The furniture zone contains parking meters, lighting, tree planters, benches, trash receptacles, magazine and newspaper racks, and other street furniture. The furniture zone is separate from the walking/pedestrian and shy zones to keep the walking area clear for pedestrians, including proper access to transit stops.

E.7.b Walking/Pedestrian Zone

Chapter 8 addresses considerations for pedestrians. In a properly designed urban environment, where buildings are at the back of the sidewalk and vehicle speeds are low, the separation from traffic is normally provided by on-street parking, which also helps to calm traffic. The width of the walking/pedestrian zone should be at least four feet and should be increased based on expected pedestrian activity.

E.7.c Shy Zone

The shy zone is the area adjacent to buildings and fences that pedestrians generally "shy" away from. A minimum of one foot is provided as part of the sidewalk width. This space should not be included in the normal walking zone of the sidewalk.

E.7.d Mid-Block Crossings

Properly designed TND communities will not normally require mid-block crossings due to the use of shorter block size. When mid-block crossings are necessary, the use of curb extensions or bulbouts should be considered to reduce the crossing distance for pedestrians.

E.7.e Curb Extensions

Curb extensions are helpful tools for reducing the crossing distance for pedestrians, providing a location for transit stops, managing the location of parking, providing unobstructed access to fire and rescue, and increasing space for landscaping and street furniture.

Designers should coordinate with public works staff to ensure that street cleaning can be achieved with their equipment, and adequate drainage can be provided to avoid ponding at curb extensions.

E.8 Bicyclist Considerations

E.8.a Bicycle Facilities

Chapter 9 contains information on bicycle facilities. This section is directed to designing bike facilities in TND communities. Designing for bicycles on thoroughfares in TND communities should be as follows: bicycles and motor vehicles should share lanes on thoroughfares with design speeds of twenty five mph or less. It is important to recognize that the addition of bike lanes does increase roadway widths and can increase the tendency for drivers to speed.

When bicycle lanes are used in TND communities, they should be a minimum of 5 feet wide and designated as bike lanes. On curb and gutter roadways, a minimum 4-foot width measured from the lip of the gutter is required. The gutter width should not be considered part of the rideable surface area, but this width provides useable clearance to the curb face. Drainage inlets, grates, and utility covers are potential problems for bicyclists. When a roadway is designed, all such grates and covers should be kept out of the bicyclists' expected path. If drainage inlets are located in the expected path of bicyclists, they should be flush with the pavement, well seated, and have bicycle compatible grates.

Where parking is present, the bicycle lane should be placed between the parking lane and the travel lane, and have a minimum width of 5 feet. Designers should consider increasing the bicycle lane to 6 feet in lieu of increasing parallel parking width from 7 to 8 feet. This helps encourage vehicles to park closer to the curb, and provides more room for door swing, potentially reducing conflict with bicyclists.

Shared lane markings, or "sharrows," can be used instead of bicycle lanes adjacent to on-street parking. The sharrow allows the bicyclist to occupy the lane and therefore avoids placing bicyclists in the "door zone", and does not require an increase in lane width or ROW width for the thoroughfare. Guidance for use of the shared lane marking is included in ***Chapter 9 – Bicycle Facilities*** and the ***MUTCD***. See Figure 9 –24 – Shared Lane Marking in ***Chapter 9*** for a detailed drawing of a shared lane marking.

E.8.b Shared Use Paths

Greenways, waterfront walks, and other civic spaces should include shared use paths, and provide for bicycle storage or parking. Bicycle storage or parking should also be included in areas near transit facilities to maximize connectivity between the modes.

E.9 Transit

See ***Accessing Transit, Design Handbook for Florida Bus Passenger Facilities, Version III, 2013*** for information.

E.10 Clear Zone

In urban areas, horizontal clearances, based on clear zone requirements for rural highways, are not practical because urban areas are characterized by lower speed, more dense abutting development, closer spaced intersections and accesses to property, higher traffic volumes, more bicyclists and pedestrians, and restricted right of way. The minimum horizontal clearance shall be 1.5 feet measured from the face of curb.

Streets with curb, or curb and gutter, in urban areas where right of way is restricted do not have roadsides of sufficient widths to provide clear zones; therefore, while there are specific horizontal clearance requirements for these streets, they are based on clearances for normal operation and not based on maintaining a clear roadside for errant vehicles. It should be noted that curb has essentially no redirectional capability; therefore, curb should not be considered effective in shielding a hazard.

F REFERENCES FOR IMFORMATIONAL PURPOSES

The following publications were either used in the preparation of this chapter, or may be helpful in designing TND Communities and understanding the flexibility in AASHTO design criteria:

- Designing Walkable Urban Thoroughfares: A Context Sensitive Approach: An ITE Recommended Practice, 2010

- http://www.ite.org/css/

- SmartCode 9.2
  http://www.smartcodecentral.org/

- A Guide for Achieving Flexibility in Highway Design, AASHTO, May, 2004 https://bookstore.transportation.org/

- Accessing Transit, Design Handbook for Florida Bus Passenger Facilities, 2008, FDOT Public Transit Office :
  http://www.dot.state.fl.us/transit/NewTransitPlanning.shtm

- Safe Routes to Schools Program, FDOT Safety Office:
  http://www.dot.state.fl.us/safety/2A-Programs/Programs.shtm

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

CHAPTER 20

DRAINAGE

TABLES

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

CHAPTER 20

DRAINAGE

A INTRODUCTION

This chapter recognizes that Florida is regularly affected by adverse weather conditions. As such, the proper design of a roadway's drainage system is critical to its function and to the safety of the motoring public as well as pedestrians, bicyclists and other users of these facilities. Standing water on a roadway can not only create a hazard but could also impede the flow of traffic.

This chapter represents the minimum standards that should be used when designing roadway drainage. As is the case for all elements in a facility's design, the designer must consider site specific conditions and determine the proper level of service the facility's drainage system should provide. The design of drainage facilities should not only consider the system's ability to handle the design storm, but also consider the system's recovery time during an event which exceed the design storm.

B OBJECTIVES

The objective of this chapter is to establish the minimum standards to which a roadway's drainage system is to be designed. In order for the drainage system to function properly, the below guidelines should be used in the design, construction and maintenance of these systems.

- Design and maintain drainage systems to quickly move water out of the travel lanes in order provide a safer environment for users of a facility during adverse weather conditions.
- Design drainage systems by taking into consideration the future maintenance of said system in order to avoid creating hazardous conditions to drivers and maintenance staff during routine servicing.

C OPEN CHANNEL

This section presents minimum standards for the design of natural or manmade open channels, including roadside ditches, swales, median ditches, interceptor ditches, outfalls, and canals.

C.1 Design Frequency

Open channels shall be designed to convey and to confine storm water within the ditch. Standard design frequencies for stormwater flow are shown in Table 20 – 1 Stormwater Flow Design Frequencies.

Table 20 – 1 Stormwater Flow Design Frequencies

Facility Types	Frequency
Major roadway	10-year
All other road types	5-year

Site-specific factors may warrant the use of an atypical design frequency. Any increase over pre-development stages shall not significantly change land use values, unless flood rights are acquired.

C.2 Hydrologic Analysis

Hydrologic data used for the design of open channels shall be based on one of the following methods as appropriate for the particular site:

1. A frequency analysis of observed (gage) data shall be used when available. If insufficient or no observed data is available, one of the procedures below shall be used as appropriate. However, the procedures below shall be calibrated to the extent practical with available observed data for the drainage basin, or nearby similar drainage basins.

    a. Regional or local regression equation developed by the United States Geological Survey (USGS).

b. Rational Equation for drainage areas up to 600 acres.

c. For outfalls from stormwater management facilities, the method used for the design of the stormwater management facility may be used.

2. For regulated or controlled canals, hydrologic data shall be requested from the controlling entity. Prior to use for design, this data shall be verified to the extent practical.

C.3 Hydraulic Analysis

The Manning's Equation shall be used for the design of open channels.

C.3.a Manning's "n" Values

Recommended Manning's n values for channels with bare soil, vegetative linings, and rigid linings are presented in the ***Department's Drainage Manual (2019)***, Table 2.2 Manning's "n" Values for Artificial Channels with Bare Soil and Vegetative Linings and Table 2.3 Manning's 'n" Values for Artificial Channels with Rigid Linings. The manual is incorporated by reference in ***Rule 14-86.003, F.A.C., Permit, Assurance Requirements, and Exceptions***.

The probable condition of the channel when the design event is anticipated shall be considered when a Manning's n value is selected.

C.3.b Slope

Roadside channels should be designed to have self-cleaning velocities, where possible. Channels should also be designed to avoid standing water in the roadway right-of-way.

C.3.c Channel Linings and Velocity

The design of open channels shall consider the need for channel linings. When design flow velocities do not exceed the maximum permissible for bare earth, the standard treatment of ditches may consist of grassing and mulching. For higher design velocities, sodding, ditch paving, or other form of lining shall be provided. Tables for maximum velocities for bare earth and the various forms of channel lining can be found in the ***Department's Drainage Manual (2019)***, Tables 2.4 Maximum Shear Stress Values and Allowable Velocities for Different Soils and Table 2.5 Maximum Velocities for Various Lining Types.

C.3.d Limitations on Use of Linings

Grassing or sodding should not be used under the following conditions:

1. Continuous standing or flowing water
2. Areas that do not receive the regular maintenance necessary to prevent overgrowth by taller vegetation
3. Lack of nutrients
4. Excessive soil drainage
5. Areas excessively shaded

To prevent cracking or failure, concrete lining must be placed on a firm, well-drained foundation. Concrete linings are not recommended where expansive clays are present.

When concrete linings are to be used where soils may become saturated, the potential for buoyancy shall be considered. Acceptable counter-measures may include:

1. Increasing the thickness of the lining to add additional weight.
2. For sub-critical flow conditions, specifying weep holes at appropriate intervals in the channel bottom to relieve the upward pressure on the channel.
3. For super-critical flow conditions, using subdrains in lieu of weep holes.

C.4 Construction and Maintenance Considerations

The type and frequency of maintenance that may be required during the life of drainage channels should be considered during their design, and allowances should be made for the access of maintenance equipment.

C.5 Safety

The design and location of open channels shall comply with roadside safety and clear zone requirements. See ***Chapter 3 – Geometric Design*** for clear zone requirements, including special clearance criteria for canals.

C.6 Documentation

For new construction, design documentation for open channels shall include the hydrologic and the hydraulic analyses, including analysis of channel lining requirements

.

D STORM DRAIN HYDROLOGY AND HYDRAULICS

This section presents minimum standards for the design of storm drain systems.

D.1 Pipe Materials

See Section G for pipe material requirements.

D.2 Design Frequency

The minimum design storm frequency for the design of storm drain systems shall be 3 years.

Site-specific factors may warrant the use of an atypical design frequency. Any increase over pre-development stages shall not significantly change land use values, unless flood rights are acquired.

D.3 Design Tailwater

For most design applications where the flow is subcritical, the tailwater will either be above the crown of the outlet or can be considered to be between the crown and critical depth. To determine the energy grade line (EGL), begin with either the tailwater elevation or $(d_c + D)/2$, whichever is higher, add the velocity head for full flow and proceed upstream, adding appropriate losses (e.g., exit, friction, junction, bend, entrance).

An exception to the above procedure is an outfall with low tailwater. In this case, a water surface profile calculation would be appropriate to determine the location where the water surface will either intersect the top or end of the barrel and full-flow calculations can begin. In this case, the downstream water surface elevation would be based on critical depth or the tailwater, whichever is higher.

D.4 Hydrologic Analysis

The Rational Method is the most common method in use for the design of storm drains when the momentary peak-flow rate is desired.

D.4.a Time of Concentration

Minimum time of concentration shall be 10 minutes.

D.5 Hydraulic Analysis

Hydraulic calculations for determining storm drain conduit sizes shall be based on open channel and pressure flow as appropriate. The Manning's equation shall be used.

D.5.a Pipe Slopes

The minimum physical slope should be that which will produce a velocity of 2.5 feet per second (fps) when the storm drain is flowing full.

D.5.b Hydraulic Gradient

If the hydraulic grade line (HGL) does not rise above the top of any manhole or above an inlet entrance, the storm drainage system is satisfactory. Standard practice is to ensure that the HGL is below the top of the inlet for the design discharge (some local agencies may add an additional safety factor which can be up to 12 inches).

D.5.c Outlet Velocity

When discharge exceeds 4 fps, consider special channel lining or energy dissipation. For computation of outlet velocity the lowest anticipated tailwater condition for the given storm event shall be assumed.

D.5.d Manning’s Roughness Coefficients

Standards Manning’s Roughness Coefficients can be found in the ***Department’s Drainage Manual (2019)*** Section 3.6.4.

D.6 Hydraulic Openings

If the hydraulic grade line does not rise above the top of any manhole or above an inlet entrance, the storm drainage system is satisfactory. Standard practice is to ensure that the HGL is below the top of the inlet for the design discharge.

D.6.a Entrance Location and Spacing

Drainage inlets and other hydraulic openings are sized and located to satisfy hydraulic capacity, structural capacity, safety (pedestrians, cyclists and motor vehicles), and durability requirements.

Grate inlets and the depression of curb opening inlets should be located outside the through traffic lanes to minimize the shifting of vehicles attempting to avoid them. All grate inlets shall be bicycle safe where used on roadways that allow bicycle travel.

The ***Department's Drainage Manual (2019), Section 3.7*** provides guidance on hydraulic openings and protective treatments. Table 3.3 Curb and Gutter Inlet Application Guidelines, Table 3.4 Ditch Inlet Application Guidelines and Table 3-5 Drainage End Treatment – Lateral Offset Criteria in the ***Drainage Manual (2019)*** provide guidance for inlet selection.

Inlet spacing shall consider the following:

- Regardless of the results of the hydraulic analysis, inlets on grade should be spaced at a maximum of 300 ft for 48 inches or smaller pipes.
- Inlets on grade should be spaced at a maximum of 600 ft for pipes larger than 48 inches.
- Inlets should be placed on the upstream side of bridge approaches.
- Inlets should be placed at all low points in the gutter grade.
- Inlets should be placed upstream of intersecting streets.
- Inlets should be placed on the upstream side of a driveway entrance, curb-cut ramp, or pedestrian crosswalk even if the hydraulic analysis places the inlet further down grade or within the feature.
- Inlets should be placed upstream of median breaks.

- Inlets should be placed to capture flow from intersecting streets before it reaches the major highway.
- Flanking inlets in sag vertical curves are standard practice.
- Inlets should be placed to prevent water from sheeting across the highway (i.e., place the inlet before the superelevation transition begins).
- Inlets should not be located in the path where pedestrians walk.

D.6.b Grades

D.6.b.1 Longitudinal Gutter Grade

The minimum longitudinal gutter grade shall be 0.3%. Minimum grades can be maintained in very flat terrain by use of a rolling profile.

D.7 Spread Standards

The spread, in both temporary and permanent conditions, resulting from a rainfall intensity of 4.0 inches per hour shall be limited as shown in Table 20 – 2 Spread Criteria.

Table 20 – 2 Spread Criteria

Design Speed (mph)	Spread Criteria*
Design Speed ≤ 30	Crown of Road
30 < Design speed ≤ 45	Keep ½ of lane clear
45 < Design Speed ≤ 55	Keep 8’ of lane clear
Design Speed > 55	No encroachment

* The criteria in this column apply to travel, turn, or auxiliary lanes adjacent to barrier wall or curb, in normal or super elevated sections.

In addition to the above standards, for sections with a shoulder gutter, the spread resulting from a 10-year frequency storm shall not exceed 1’ 3” outside the gutter in the direction toward the front slope. This distance limits the spread to the face of guardrail posts.

D.8 Construction and Maintenance Considerations

Proper design shall also consider maintenance concerns of adequate physical access for cleaning and repair.

D.8.a Pipe Size and Length

Consider using a minimum pipe size of 18” for trunk lines and laterals. 15” hubcaps commonly block smaller pipes resulting in roadway flooding. The minimum pipe diameter for all proposed exfiltration trench pipes (french drain systems) within a drainage system is 18”.

The maximum pipe lengths without maintenance access structures are as follows:

<u>Pipes without French Drains:</u>

18” - 42” pipe	300 feet
48” and larger and all box culverts	600 feet

French Drains that have access through only one end:

18” to 30” pipe	150 feet
36” and larger pipe	200 feet

French Drains that have access through both ends:

24” to 30” pipe	300 feet
36” and larger pipe	400 feet

D.8.b Minimum Clearances

A minimum cover of 1 ft should be provided between the top of pipe and the top of subgrade. A minimum clearance of 1 ft should be provided between storm drainage pipes and other underground facilities (e.g., sanitary sewers). Check with local utility companies, as their clearance requirements may vary from the 1’ minimum.

D.9 Protective Treatment

Drainage designs shall be reviewed to determine if some form of protective treatment will be required to prevent unauthorized entry to long or submerged storm drain systems, steep ditches, or water control facilities. If other modifications, such as landscaping or providing flat slopes, can eliminate the potential hazard and thus the need for protective treatment, they should be considered first. Areas provided for retention and detention, for example, can often be effectively integrated into parks or other green spaces.

Vehicular and pedestrian safety are attained by differing protective treatments, often requiring the designer to make a compromise in which one type of protection is more completely realized than the other. In such cases, an evaluation should be made of the relative risks and dangers involved to provide the design that gives the best balance. It must be remembered that the function of the drainage feature will be essentially in conflict with total safety, and that only a reduction rather than elimination of all risk is possible.

The three basic types of protective treatment are shown in Table 20 – 3 Protective Treatments.

Table 20 – 3 Protective Treatments

Feature	Typical Use
Grates	To prevent persons from being swept into long or submerged drainage systems.
Guards	To prevent entry into long sewer systems under no-storm conditions, to prevent persons from being trapped.
Fences	To prevent entry into areas of unexpected deep standing water or high velocity water flow, or in areas where grates or guards are warranted but are unsuitable for other reasons.

When determining the type and extent of protective treatment, the following considerations should be reviewed:

- The nature and frequency of the presence of children in the area, e.g., proximity to schools, school routes, and parks, should be established.
- Highway access status should be determined. Protective treatment is usually not warranted within a limited access highway; however, drainage facilities located outside the limited access area or adjacent to a limited access highway should be considered unlimited access facilities.
- Adequate debris and access control would be required on all inlet points if guards or grates are used at outlet ends.
- Hydraulic determinations such as depth and velocity should be based on a 25-year rainfall event.
- The hydraulic function of the drainage facility should be checked and adjusted so the protective treatment will not cause a reduction in its effectiveness.
- Use of a grate may cause debris or persons to be trapped against the hydraulic opening. Grates for major structures should be designed in a manner that allows items to be carried up by increasing flood stages.

- Use of a guard may result in a person being pinned against it. A guard is usually used on outlet ends.
- A fence may capture excessive amounts of debris, which could possibly result in its destruction and subsequent obstruction of the culvert. The location and construction of a fence shall reflect the effect of debris-induced force.

D.10 Documentation

For new construction, supporting calculations for storm sewer system design shall be documented and provided to facility owner.

E CROSS DRAIN HYDRAULICS

This section presents standards and procedures for the hydraulic design of cross drains including culverts, bridge-culverts[1], and bridges.

E.1 Design Frequency

The recommended minimum design flood frequency for culverts is shown in Table 20 – 4 Recommended Minimum Design Flood Frequency. The minimum flood frequency used to design the culvert can be adjusted based on:

- An analysis to justify the flood frequencies greater or lesser than the minimum flood frequencies listed below; and
- The culvert being located in a National Flood Insurance Program mapped floodplain.

Table 20 – 4 Recommended Minimum Design Flood Frequency

Roadway Classification	Exceedance Probability (%)	Return Period (Year)
Local Roads and Streets, ADT >3,000 VPD	4%	25
Local Roads and Streets, ADT ≤ 3,000 VPD*	20-10%	5-10

*At the discretion of the local agency

[1] A culvert qualifies as a bridge if it meets the requirements of Item 112 in the FDOT "***Bridge Management System (BMS) Coding Guide.***"

E.2 Backwater

Allowable headwater is the depth of water that can be ponded at the upstream end of the culvert during the design flood. The allowable headwater for the design frequency should:

- Have a level of inundation that is tolerable to upstream property and roadway for the design discharge;

- Consider a duration or inundation that is tolerable to the upstream vegetation to avoid crop damage; and

- Be lower than the upstream shoulder edge elevation at the lowest point of the roadway within the drainage basin.

If the allowable headwater depth to culvert height ratio (HW/D) is established to be greater than 1.5, the inlet of the culvert will be submerged. Under this condition, the hydraulics designer should provide an end treatment to mitigate buoyancy.

E.3 Tailwater

For the sizing of cross drains and the determination of headwater and backwater elevations, the highest tailwater elevation which can be reasonably expected to occur coincident with the design storm event shall be used.

E.4 Clearances

To permit the passage of debris, a minimum clearance of 2 ft should be provided between the design approach water surface elevation and the low chord of the bridge where practical. Where this is not practicable, the clearance should be established by the hydraulics engineer based on the type of stream and level of protection desired. Additional vertical clearance information can be found in ***Chapter 3 – Geometric Design***.

E.5 Bridges and Other Structures

See ***Chapter 17, Section C.3.e*** for Drainage Criteria.

F STORMWATER MANAGEMENT

F.1 Regulatory Requirements

F.1.a Chapter 62-25, Florida Administrative Code

***Chapter 62-25. F.A.C.*,** rules of the Florida Department of Environmental Protection specifies minimum water quality treatment standards for new development.

F.1.b Chapter 62-40, Florida Administrative Code

Chapter 62-40, F.A.C., rules of the Florida Department of Environmental Protection outlines basic goals and requirements for surface water protection and management to be implemented and enforced by the Florida Department of Environmental Protection and Water Management Districts.

F.1.c National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System

The ***National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System*** (***NPDES***) permit program is administered by the U. S. Environmental Protection Agency and delegated to the Florida Department of Environmental Protection in Florida. This program requires permits for stormwater discharges into waters of the United States from industrial activities; and from large and medium municipal separate storm sewer systems (MS4s). Construction projects are within the definition of an industrial activity.

G CULVERT MATERIALS

The evaluation of culvert materials shall consider functionally equivalent performance in three areas: durability, structural capacity, and hydraulic capacity.

G.1 Durability

Culverts shall be designed for a design service life (DSL) appropriate for the culvert function and highway type. The design service life should be based on factors such as:

- Projected service life of the facility
- Importance of the facility
- Economics
- Potential inconvenience and difficulties associated with repair or replacement, and projected future demands on the facility.

In estimating the projected service life of a material, consideration shall be given to actual performance of the material in nearby similar environmental conditions, its theoretical corrosion rate, potential for abrasion, and other appropriate site factors. Theoretical corrosion rates shall be based on the environmental conditions of both the soil and water. At a minimum, the following corrosion indicators shall be considered:

1. pH
2. Resistivity
3. Sulfates
4. Chlorides

The Department provides a program called ***Culvert Service Life Estimator*** for estimating the service life of culverts based on the above criteria

To avoid unnecessary site specific testing, generalized soil maps may be used to delete unsuitable materials from consideration. The potential for future land use changes which may change soil and water corrosion indicators shall also be considered to the extent practical.

G.2 Structural Capacity

AASHTO design guidelines and industry recommendations should be considered in pipe material selection.

G.3 Hydraulic Capacity

The hydraulic evaluation shall establish the hydraulic size for the particular culvert application. For storm drains and cross drains, the design shall use the Manning's roughness coefficient associated with the pipe material selected.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK